



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Edw 1 919.13.793  
Learn 148 151 155 157 162 164  
unp unp  
166 171 172

Thurs

Learn 170 171

**Harvard College Library**

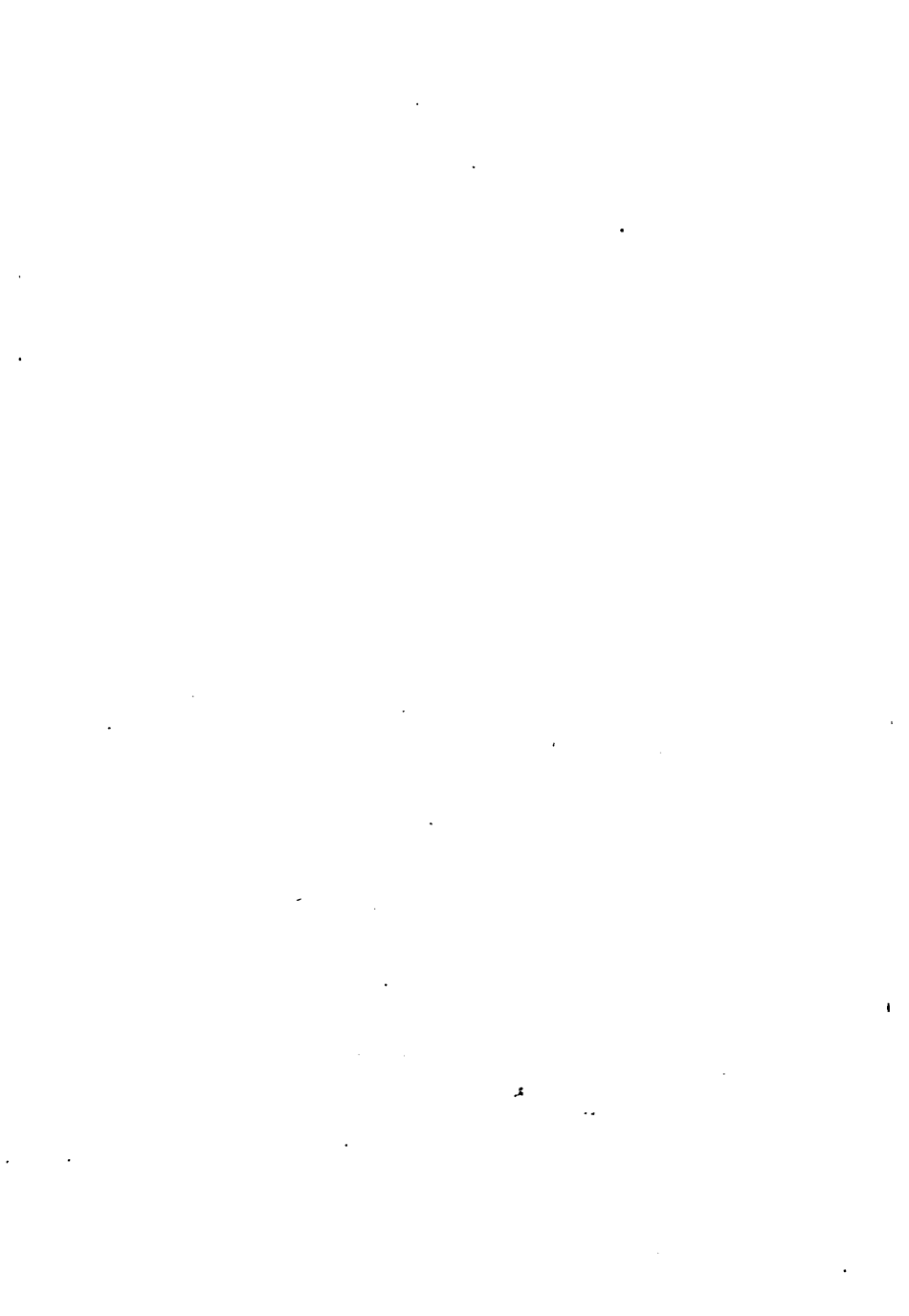
**THE GIFT OF**

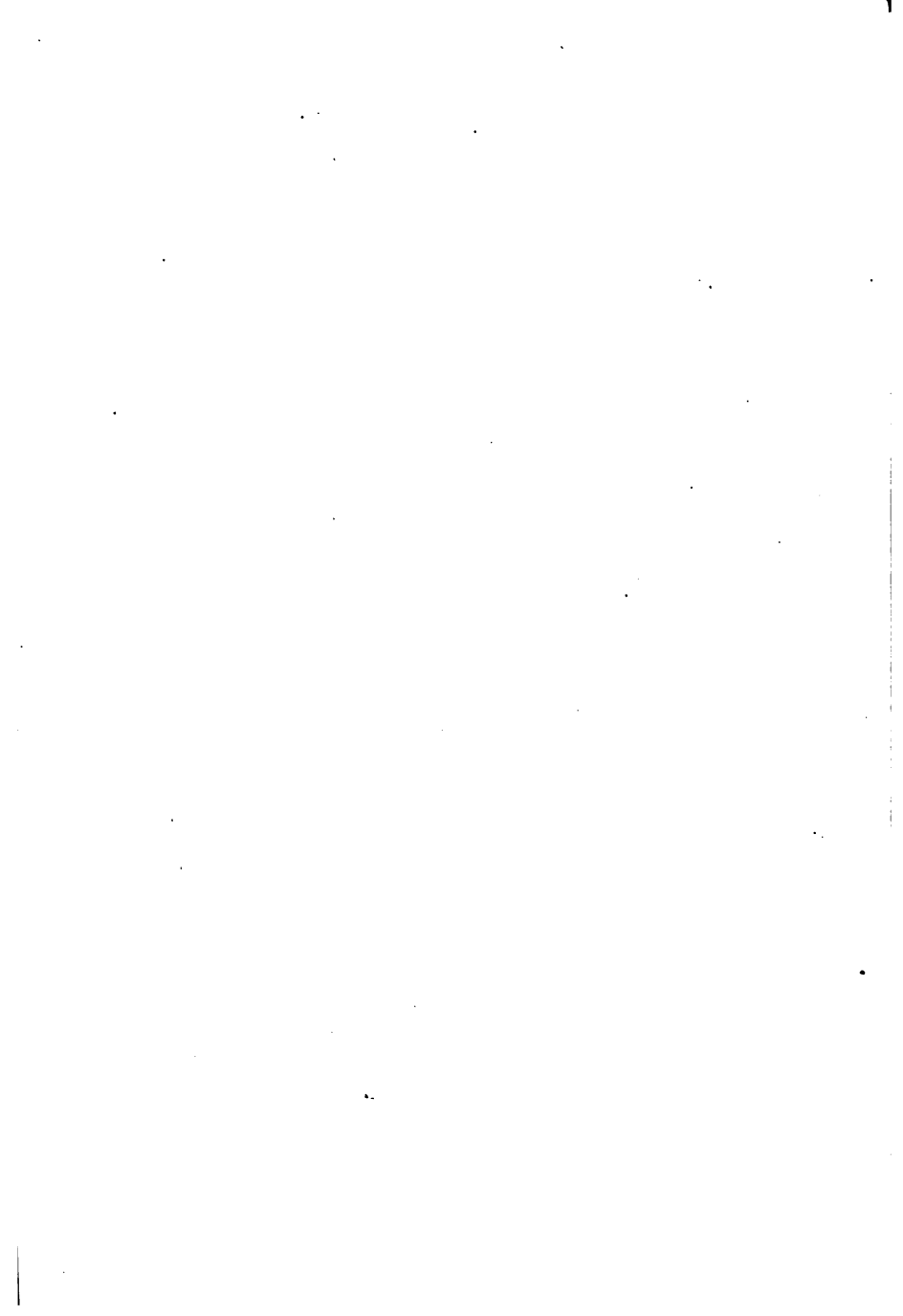
**GINN AND COMPANY**

**DECEMBER 26, 1923**



3 2044 097 074 231







The Appian Way.

# LATIN LESSONS

BY

M. L. SMITH

HIGH SCHOOL, GALESBURG, ILLINOIS

*Omne tulit punctum qui miscuit utile dulci.* — HORACE

ALLYN AND BACON

Boston and Chicago

Edue 7 919.13.793  
v

**HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
GIFT OF  
GINN AND COMPANY  
DEC. 26, 1923**

**COPYRIGHT, 1913,  
BY M. L. SMITH.**

**PDE**

**Norwood Press**  
J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.  
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.



## PREFACE

THE author has had four chief aims in the preparation of this book: to make the Latin language seem alive; to make the first year's study of value for general culture; to minimize the difficulties of beginning Latin; to prepare thoroughly for the second year's work.

### I. *To make Latin seem alive:*

Every lesson contains familiar quotations and special work on derivatives to show how much Latin still lives in our own language.

A host of familiar Latin phrases and sayings are introduced. Each chapter begins with a quotation.

A special appendix emphasizes the value of Latin in science, mathematics, and especially in English.

### II. *No effort has been spared to make the book of value for general culture to those who go no farther than the first year, as well as for those who continue the study of Latin.*

The commonest Latin quotations are given and fully explained.

Interesting stories of Rome bring out ideals of old Roman virtue.

Over sixty illustrations, and a number of descriptions, give an idea of the life of the people and of the City of Rome.

### III. *To minimize the difficulties of the first year:*

The number of constructions is small, but there are a great many sentences for drill.

The vocabularies of the lessons contain a total of only 569 words—an average of only eight words to a lesson.

The principles of English grammar are restated and referred to constantly in direct connection with the Latin rules.

Specific directions for translating are given in connection with the exercises.

The accent is marked in the vocabularies and paradigms.

Each rule is simply worded and is illustrated by English sentences followed by the Latin.

Not only the forms, but the rules of syntax, are summarized in the appendix.

IV. *To prepare thoroughly for the second year the following features have been made prominent:*

Practically all the words occur in Caesar.

Phrases used by Caesar are given for oral work.

Sentences from Caesar are frequent, and their number increases toward the end of the book.

The most interesting parts of the Gallic War are given in the appendix, together with notes and a map.

The learning of forms is a prominent feature of each chapter.

The Subjunctive is introduced gradually and with great care.

Reviews—fifteen in all—contain Derivative Work, Word Drill, Form Drill, Syntax Drill, Review Sentences, and Roman Stories for sight reading.

In the selection of vocabulary and syntax, Lodge's "Word List" and Byrne's "Syntax of High School Latin" have been closely followed.

The entire book is the outgrowth of classroom work. It has been thoroughly tested for several years in the author's classes.

M. L. SMITH.

GALESBURG, ILLINOIS,  
April, 1913.

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS . . . . .	ix
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	xi
 <b>LESSON</b>	
I. THE LATIN LANGUAGE . . . . .	1
II. FIRST DECLENSION . . . . .	3
III. PRESENT INDICATIVE . . . . .	5
IV. SECOND DECLENSION . . . . .	8
V. SECOND DECLENSION, NEUTER. ADJECTIVES . . . . .	11
VI. PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS. INDIRECT OBJECT . . . . .	16
VII. ADJECTIVES ( <i>Continued</i> ). ABLATIVE OF MEANS . . . . .	21
VIII. PERFECT TENSES. EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE . . . . .	25
IX. REVIEW . . . . .	30
X. THIRD DECLENSION . . . . .	32
XI. THIRD DECLENSION. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT . . . . .	35
XII. THIRD DECLENSION. SECOND CONJUGATION . . . . .	38
XIII. THIRD DECLENSION. I-STEMS . . . . .	43
XIV. REVIEW . . . . .	47
XV. PASSIVE VOICE. ABLATIVE OF AGENT . . . . .	50
XVI. THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES . . . . .	54
XVII. THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES ( <i>Continued</i> ) . . . . .	57
XVIII. SECOND CONJUGATION, PASSIVE . . . . .	59
XIX. REVIEW . . . . .	62
XX. <i>Possum</i> . COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE . . . . .	64
XXI. THIRD CONJUGATION. APPPOSITION . . . . .	66
XXII. THIRD CONJUGATION. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE . . . . .	70

LESSON	PAGE
XXIII. THIRD CONJUGATION, PASSIVE . . . . .	72
XXIV. REVIEW . . . . .	75
XXV. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES . . . . .	77
XXVI. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN <i>-et</i> AND <i>-lis</i> . . . . .	80
XXVII. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES . . . . .	83
XXVIII. FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS . . . . .	86
XXIX. REVIEW . . . . .	89
XXX. FOURTH DECLENSION. GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE . . . . .	91
XXXI. FIFTH DECLENSION. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES . . . . .	94
XXXII. FOURTH CONJUGATION . . . . .	97
XXXIII. FOURTH CONJUGATION, PASSIVE . . . . .	100
XXXIV. ADJECTIVES OF PECULIAR DECLENSION . . . . .	102
XXXV. REVIEW . . . . .	105
XXXVI. INFINITIVES, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE . . . . .	108
XXXVII. Duo AND Três . . . . .	112
XXXVIII. THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS IN <i>-is</i> . . . . .	115
XXXIX. NUMERALS . . . . .	117
XL. PREPOSITIONS . . . . .	119
XLI. REVIEW . . . . .	121
XLII. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE . . . . .	124
XLIII. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE ( <i>Continued</i> ) . . . . .	127
XLIV. SEQUENCE OF TENSES . . . . .	130
XLV. DEPONENT VERBS . . . . .	133
XLVI. SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT . . . . .	136
XLVII. REVIEW . . . . .	139
XLVIII. RELATIVE PRONOUN . . . . .	141
XLIX. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	144
L. PERSONAL PRONOUNS . . . . .	147
LI. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	150
LII. <i>Ferô</i> AND ITS COMPOUNDS . . . . .	153
LIII. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS . . . . .	155
LIV. DOUBLE QUESTIONS . . . . .	158

# CONTENTS

vii

LESSON	PAGE
LV. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS . . . . .	161
LVI. REVIEW . . . . .	164
LVII. PARTICIPLES . . . . .	166
LVIII. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE . . . . .	169
LIX. SUBJUNCTIVE WITH <i>cum</i> . . . . .	172
LX. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES . . . . .	175
LXI. REVIEW . . . . .	180
LXII. IMPERATIVES. COMMANDS . . . . .	182
LXIII. <i>Volō, nōlō, mālō</i> . DATIVE OF PURPOSE . . . . .	185
LXIV. SEMI-DEPONENTS. DATIVE OF POSSESSOR . . . . .	187
LXV. GERUND AND GERUNDIVE . . . . .	189
LXVI. PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS . . . . .	192
LXVII. IMPERSONAL VERBS . . . . .	195
LXVIII. REVIEW OF CASES . . . . .	198
LXIX. REVIEW OF CASES ( <i>Continued</i> ) . . . . .	200
LXX. REVIEW OF SUBJUNCTIVES . . . . .	203
LXXI. INDIRECT DISCOURSE. GENERAL RULES . . . . .	205

## APPENDIX

### ENGLISH AND LATIN

An English-Latin Letter . . . . .	207
Latin in Science . . . . .	208
State Mottoes . . . . .	209
Latin Words in the Constitution . . . . .	209
Latin Phrases . . . . .	210
Abbreviations from Latin Words . . . . .	211
Latin Quotations . . . . .	212

### SONGS

<i>Flevit Lepus Parvulus</i> . . . . .	215
<i>Dies Festus Hodie!</i> . . . . .	216
<i>Domine Salvam Fac</i> . . . . .	216
<i>Gaudeamus Igitur</i> . . . . .	217
<i>Integer Vitae</i> . . . . .	218

	PAGE
INFLECTIONS . . . . .	219
RULES OF SYNTAX . . . . .	249
ENGLISH GRAMMAR AS AN AID TO THE STUDY OF LATIN	254
SELECTIONS FROM CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR . . . .	262
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	275
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY . . . . .	299
INDEX . . . . .	311

## ILLUSTRATIONS

The Appian Way . . . . .	<i>Frontispiece</i>
	PAGE
1. A Roman Trumpet . . . . .	3
2. Roman Writing Materials . . . . .	4
3. Roman Manuscripts . . . . .	7
4. Legatus . . . . .	10
5. Storming a Town . . . . .	13
6. Via Appia . . . . .	14
7. The Appian Way farther from Rome . . . . .	15
8. Wall and Ditch . . . . .	18
9. Roman Standards and Standard Bearers . . . . .	20
10. Roman Sword and Javelin . . . . .	23
11. The Colosseum seen through the Arch of Titus . . . . .	24
12. A Roman Candelabrum . . . . .	28
13. A Roman Street Scene—(Barber Shop of Licinius) . . . . .	<i>facing</i> 30
14. Imperator . . . . .	34
15. Caesar . . . . .	37
16. Soldiers of the Legion . . . . .	41
17. The Roman Arena at Verona . . . . .	42
18. A Roman Gate . . . . .	45
19. The Temple of Vesta at Rome . . . . .	46
20. A Roman Aqueduct in Southern France . . . . .	49
21. Roman Centurion . . . . .	53
22. A Roman Ship . . . . .	55
23. A Roman Altar . . . . .	58
24. The Porta San Paolo . . . . .	61
25. A Street in Pompeii . . . . .	63
26. Roman Bow, Arrow, and Javelin . . . . .	68
27. Roman Boxers . . . . .	69
28. Roman Cavalry . . . . .	74
29. A Bridge near Rome . . . . .	76
30. A Roman Triumph . . . . .	<i>facing</i> 78

	PAGE
31. Caesar's Famous Bridge across the Rhine . . . . .	79
32. The Arch of Titus at Rome . . . . .	82
33. Light-armed Roman Soldier . . . . .	85
34. Cicero . . . . .	88
35. Cornelia and Her Jewels . . . . .	90
36. The Central Court of a House in Pompeii . . . . .	96
37. The Goddess Juno . . . . .	103
38. The Way of the Tombs, in Pompeii . . . . .	104
39. The Forum in Ancient Rome . . . . .	<i>facing</i> 106
40. A Roman in the Toga . . . . .	107
41. A Roman Altar . . . . .	118
42. The Tarpeian Rock at Rome . . . . .	123
43. Augustus Caesar . . . . .	125
44. The Roman Forum To-day . . . . .	128
45. The Arch of Constantine at Rome . . . . .	135
46. The Forum at Pompeii . . . . .	138
47. The Ruins of Trajan's Villa near Rome . . . . .	143
48. A Roman Sword . . . . .	146
49. A Roman Sword in its Sheath . . . . .	146
50. Spring—an Ancient Festival . . . . .	<i>facing</i> 152
51. The Roman Goddess Minerva . . . . .	157
52. A German Bodyguard . . . . .	159
53. A Roman Urn . . . . .	160
54. Roman Arms . . . . .	163
55. A Roman Chariot Race . . . . .	<i>facing</i> 166
56. The Colosseum . . . . .	<i>facing</i> 174
57. Cicero delivering the First of his Famous Orations against Catiline . . . . .	179
58. The Court of a Roman House . . . . .	<i>facing</i> 181
59. The Temple of Apollo in Pompeii . . . . .	194
60. A Vestal Virgin . . . . .	197
61. Julius Caesar. (From a Bust in Naples) . . . . .	202
62. The Tomb of Emperor Hadrian at Rome . . . . .	204
63. The Colosseum at Rome . . . . .	206
Map of Italy and Gaul . . . . .	<i>following</i> 262



# INTRODUCTION

## THE ALPHABET

The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no **j** and no **w**. **I** is generally a consonant between vowels, and at the beginning of a word before a vowel: **ei**us, **i**ubeō.

- (a) The vowels are **a, e, i, o, u, y**.
- (b) The diphthongs are **ae, au, oe, ei, eu, ui**.
- (c) The double consonants are **x** (= *cs* or *gs*) and **z** (= *ds*).

## PRONUNCIATION

### VOWELS

The *quantity* of a vowel refers to the length of time given to its pronunciation. A vowel is either long or short. Twice as much time should be given to the pronunciation of a long vowel as to a short one. A long vowel is marked **-**. The sounds are as follows:

#### LONG

**ā** as in *father*: **lātus**.  
**ē** as in *they*: **lātē**.  
**ī** as in *machine*: **dīcō**.  
**ō** as in *old*: **mōns**.  
**ū** as in *rude*: **mūrus**.

#### SHORT

**a** as in *idea*: **ab**.  
**e** as in *net*: **et**.  
**i** as in *cigar*: **in**.  
**o** as in *wholly*: **rosa**.  
**u** as in *put*: **sub**.

### DIPHTHONGS

**ae** like *ai* in *aisle*: **prae**.  
**au** like *ow* in *how*: **laudō**.  
**oe** like *oi* in *oil*: **proelium**.  
**ei** like *ei* in *reign*: **hei**.  
**eu** like *eu* in *feud*: **neuter**.  
**ui** like *we*: **cui** (*kwe*).

## CONSONANTS

**c** like *c* in *can* : **castra**.

**g** like *g* in *get* : **gerō**.

**s** like *s* in *yes* : **cōnsul**.

**t** like *t* in *tin* : **tertia**. (Never soft like *sh*.)

**v** like *w* in *went* : **ventus**.

**z** like *dz* in *adze*.

**i** (consonant) has the sound of *y* in *yet* : **iubeō**.

**ch** has the sound of *k* : **pulcher**.

**bs** and **bt** have the sound of *ps* and *pt* : **urbs**, **obtineō**.

## QUANTITY OF VOWELS

The quantity of vowels should be learned by observation. A few rules, however, are given :

- (a) A vowel is long before **nf**, **ns**, **nx**, and **nct**; also when it is the result of contraction.
- (b) A vowel is short before another vowel or **h**, and before **nd** or **nt**.

## SYLLABLES

There are as many syllables in Latin words as there are vowels or diphthongs, **mī'les**, **lau'dant**, **pu el'la**, **per suā'dō**.

In the division of words into syllables,

- (a) A single consonant goes with the following vowel ; as in **fe'rō**.
- (b) If two or more consonants are between two vowels, the division is generally made before the last consonant, as **ma gis'ter**.

## QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

A syllable is long or short, according to the time required in pronouncing it.

- (a) A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong.
- (b) A syllable is generally long if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants or by *x* or *z*.
- (c) Otherwise a syllable is short.

## ACCENT

- (a) Words of two syllables are always accented on the first, as **mēn'sa**.
- (b) Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult (the next to the last) if that is a long syllable, otherwise on the antepenult (the one before the penult): **Rō mā nō'rum**, **in'co lae**.

GENDER <sup>1</sup>

The gender of the great majority of Latin nouns is determined by the ending of the nominative singular. The rules for the gender of such nouns are given with the various declensions. The following general rules, however, may be a help to pupils in determining gender:

- (a) Names of males, rivers, winds, and months are masculine.
- (b) Names of females, countries, towns, islands, and trees are feminine.
- (c) Indeclinable nouns, infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are neuter.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 667, *a*.



# LATIN LESSONS

## LESSON I

### THE LATIN LANGUAGE

---

*Labor omnia vincit. — Work wins everything.\**

---

1. **Latin and English.** — Latin was the language of the people who inhabited ancient Latium. The chief city of Latium was Rome. The conquests of the Romans made Latin the principal language not only of Italy but of all Western Europe. The modern languages of Italy, France, Spain, and Portugal are directly derived from Latin.

About half our English words have a Latin origin, and many Latin terms are used in law, medicine, and the sciences. Aside from these terms many other Latin words come directly into English without any change of form whatever, as *labor* and *animal*. But most come indirectly into English; they are derived from the different forms which Latin words assume in various constructions. It is necessary to know these forms in order to read Latin, and it is of great practical value in English to know them, so that we may quickly recognize the spelling and meaning of words by comparing them with their Latin equivalents.

2. Latin nouns have six cases: the **nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, vocative, and ablative.** The table

---

\* Literally: *Labor conquers all things.* The motto of Oklahoma.

below shows their uses and their English equivalents.

Latin case	Use in the sentence	English case
Nominative	Subject	Nominative
Genitive	To denote possession and so on	Possessive or the objective with <i>of</i>
Dative	Indirect object	The objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i>
Accusative	Direct object	Objective
Vocative	Case of address	Nominative independent
Ablative	Adverbial phrases	The objective with <i>by</i> , <i>from</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>on</i> , <i>with</i> , etc.

3. Tell *what* case in Latin is used to express each noun in the following sentences :

1. Work wins everything. 2. The boy's books are on the table. 3. Mark gave his pencil to his sister. 4. Caesar was an enemy of the Gauls. 5. The girl gave her friend Julia a gift. 6. Lucius, give your sister that book on the table.

4. **Latin Forms. Declension.** — In English the form of a noun changes only in the possessive and the plural. The objective is like the nominative, and the same form is used with a preposition to show other relations.

In Latin a noun usually changes its form not only for the possessive and plural, but for the objective case as well. And many uses which in English are indicated by prepositions are shown in Latin by changing the form of the noun. These changes in the form are made by adding certain endings to a permanent part of the word which we call the **base**. To **decline** a noun is to give all its different forms in their regular order. These forms taken together are called the **declension** of a noun.

## LESSON II

### FIRST DECLENSION

*Experientia docet. — Experience is the best teacher.\**

5. Nouns of the **first declension** end in **-a** in the nominative and in **-ae** in the genitive. They are feminine, except a few which are obviously masculine from their meaning; as *agricola*, *farmer*.



#### 6. Tu'ba, fem., a trumpet. BASE, tub-

CASES	SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS	PLURAL	TERMINATIONS
Nom.	tu'ba, a trumpet	a	tu'bae, trumpets	ae
Gen.	tu'bae, of a trumpet	ae	tubā'rum, of trumpets	ārum
Dat.	tu'bae, to a trumpet	ae	tu'bīs, to trumpets	īs
Acc.	tu'bam, a trumpet	am	tu'bās, trumpets	ās
Abl.	tu'bā, by or with a trumpet	ā	tu'bīs, by or with trumpets	īs

(a) The vocative case is omitted in the paradigms, since it is generally like the nominative.

(b) The base is obtained by dropping the termination of the genitive singular: *tubae*, base *tub-*.

#### 7. VOCABULARY

*agri'cola*, -ae,<sup>1</sup> m., *farmer*.

*a'qua*, -ae, f., *water*.

*Gal'lia*, *Gal'liae*, f., *Gaul*.

*lit'tera*, -ae, f., *letter* (of the alphabet); pl., *letter, epistle*.

*pictū'ra*, -ae, f., *picture*.

*prōvin'cia*, *prōvin'ciae*, f., *province*.

*ter'ra*, -ae, f., *earth, land*.

*tu'ba*, -ae, f., *trumpet*.

\* Literally: *Experience teaches*.

<sup>1</sup> In the vocabularies the genitive singular ending is placed after the nominative to indicate the declension.

**8. What Latin words do the following suggest?**

aquatic      terrestrial      literature      agriculture

(a) Decline these nouns like *tuba*. Avoid accenting the last syllable.

**EXERCISES**

**9. Pronounce, give case and number, and translate:<sup>1</sup>**

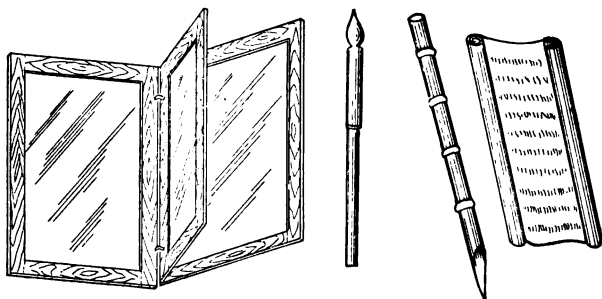
1. Galliā. 2. Litteris (two ways). 3. Terra. 4. Prōvinciā (three ways). 5. Agricolārum. 6. Galliam. 7. Terrā. 8. Tubārum. 9. Tubae (three ways). 10. Pictūrās.

**10. Translate; mark all long vowels in written work:**

1. With the farmers. 2. Of Gaul. 3. In the provinces. 4. The earth (acc.). 5. The farmers (acc.). 6. Of the water. 7. For the provinces. 8. With a trumpet. 9. By a letter. 10. Of the pictures.

---

<sup>1</sup> There is no word in Latin for *a*, *an*, or *the*. Translate *tuba*, *trumpet*, *a trumpet*, *the trumpet*, according to the sense.



Roman Writing Materials.



## LESSON III

### PRESENT INDICATIVE

*Excelsior. — Onward and upward.\**

11. The **person** of a Latin verb is shown by its ending, which is called the **personal ending**. On account of these personal endings, it is not necessary for a verb to have its pronoun subject expressed.

The following are the regular personal endings of the active voice :

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>First Person.</i>	<b>-ō</b> or <b>-m</b> , <i>I.</i>	<b>-mus</b> ,	<i>we.</i>
<i>Second Person.</i>	<b>-s</b> , <i>thou, you.</i>	<b>-tis</b> ,	<i>you.</i>
<i>Third Person.</i>	<b>-t</b> , <i>he, she, it.</i>	<b>-nt</b> ,	<i>they.</i>

12.

**Por'tō, I carry**

#### Present Indicative Active

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1. por'tō,	<i>I carry.</i>	1. portā'mus,	<i>we carry.</i>
2. por'tās,	<i>you carry.</i>	2. portā'tis,	<i>you carry.</i>
3. por'tat,	<i>he carries.</i>	3. por'tant,	<i>they carry.</i>

*Note.* — Latin has no progressive or emphatic forms. **Portō** means *I carry, I am carrying, I do carry.*

13.

#### VOCABULARY

fā'bula, -ae, f., <i>story.</i>	a'mō, <i>I love.</i>
lin'gua, -ae, f., <i>tongue, language.</i>	lau'dō, <i>I praise.</i>
memo'ria, memo'riae, f., <i>memory.</i>	nār'rō, <i>I tell.</i>
pa'tria, pa'triae, f., <i>country, native land.</i>	oc'cupō, <i>I seize.</i>
puel'la, -ae, f., <i>girl.</i>	pa'rō, <i>I prepare.</i>
sil'va, -ae, f., <i>forest, woods.</i>	por'tō, <i>I carry.</i>
	pug'nō, <i>I fight.</i>

(a) Decline each of these nouns like *tuba*.

(b) Conjugate each of the verbs like **portō**.

---

\* The motto of New York State and the title of a poem by Longfellow.  
Literally: *Higher*.

**14. What Latin words do the following suggest?**

fable	linguist	patriot	silvan
laud	narrate	portable	pugnacious

**RULES**

**15. Subject.**—The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.

*The girl loves. Puella amat.*

*The farmers are fighting. Agricolaë pugnânt.*

**16. Direct Object.**—The direct object is in the accusative case.

*I am telling a story. Fâbulam nârro.*

*We love our native land. Patriam amâmus.*

**17. Agreement of Verb.**—A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

*The girls are telling the story. Puellae fâbulam nârrent.*

*The farmer is carrying the letters. Agricola litterâs portat.*

**EXERCISES**

**18. Translate,<sup>1</sup> and give the construction<sup>2</sup> of each noun:**

(a) 1. Agricola patriam amat. 2. Galliam occupat. 3. Laudâmus. 4. Silvîs. 5. Fâbulâs nârâtis.

(b) 1. Linguîs. 2. Pugnô. 3. Pictûram portat. 4. Prôvinciam occupâtis. 5. Parâmus litterâs.

**19. Translate, marking all long vowels:**

(a) 1. You (*plural*) fight. 2. They praise (their)<sup>3</sup> native land. 3. We love. 4. I am carrying the trumpets. 5. The farmers carry water.

<sup>1</sup> Notice that the regular Latin order is subject, object, verb.

<sup>2</sup> By construction we mean the case and rule.

<sup>3</sup> Words in parenthesis are not to be translated.

(b) 1. A girl is telling the story. 2. They seize the province. 3. We are seizing Gaul. 4. She carries the pictures. 5. You (*singular*) are preparing a letter.

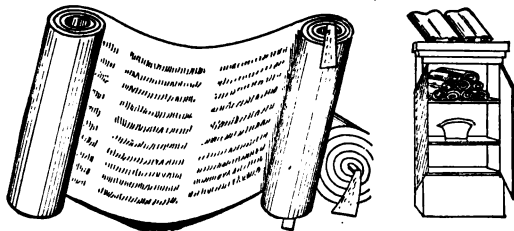
**20. Latin Questions.** — When asking a question which may be answered either by *yes* or by *no*, append *-ne* to the emphatic word, usually the first word.

The answer *yes* or *no* may be expressed by repeating the sentence to express an affirmative answer, or by repeating it with the negative word *nōn*, *not*, to express a negative answer.

#### ORAL EXERCISE

**21.** *Answer these questions in Latin, taking care to change the person of the verb when necessary:*

1. Portāsne litterās? 2. Fābulāsne nārrat? 3. Amāsne patriam? 4. Puellāsne laudātis? 5. Portōne litterās?



Roman Manuscripts.

## LESSON IV

### SECOND DECLENSION

*Errare humanum est. — To err is human.*

22. There are **five declensions** of Latin nouns. They are distinguished by the ending of the *genitive singular*. Nouns of the second declension end in **-i** in the genitive singular. They are *masculine* if they end in **-us**, **-er**, or **-ir** in the nominative singular.

23. **Amī'cus**, m., *friend*. **Pu'er**, m., *boy*. **A'ger**, m., *field*.

	BASE, amīc-	BASE, puer-	BASE, agr-	
		SINGULAR		TERMINA- TIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	amī'cus	pu'er	a'ger	<b>us</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	amī'cī	pu'erī	a'grī	<b>i</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	amī'cō	pu'erō	a'grō	<b>ō</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	amī'cum	pu'erum	a'grum	<b>um</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	amī'cō	pu'erō	a'grō	<b>ō</b>
		PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i>	amī'cī	pu'erī	a'grī	<b>i</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	amīcō'rum	puerō'rum	agrō'rum	<b>ōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	amī'cīs	pu'erīs	a'grīs	<b>īs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	amī'cōs	pu'erōs	a'grōs	<b>ōs</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	amī'cīs	pu'erīs	a'grīs	<b>īs</b>

(a) Nouns of the second declension ending in **us** like **amīcus** have the vocative singular in **-e**, as **amīce**, *O friend!*

(b) Proper nouns ending in **-ius** form the vocative singular in **i**. The vocative of **filius** is **fī'i**, the final **-i** being long since it is the result of contraction. In such nouns the genitive singular ends in **i** instead of **ī**.

24. Conjugation of *sum*, *I am*. An irregular verb.

## Present Indicative Active

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. <i>sum</i> , <i>I am</i> .	<i>sumus</i> , <i>we are</i> .
2. <i>es</i> , <i>thou art (you are)</i> .	<i>estis</i> , <i>you are</i> .
3. <i>est</i> , <i>he, she, it is</i> .	<i>sunt</i> , <i>they are</i> .

## 25.

## VOCABULARY

<i>a'ger</i> , <i>a'grī</i> , m., <i>field</i> .	<i>nūn'tius</i> , <i>nūn'tī</i> , m., <i>messenger</i> .
<i>amī'cus</i> , -ī, m., <i>friend</i> .	<i>pu'er</i> , -ī, m., <i>boy</i> .
<i>e'quus</i> , <i>e'quī</i> , m., <i>horse</i> .	<i>vir</i> , -ī, m., <i>man</i> .
<i>lēgā'tus</i> , -ī, m., <i>lieutenant, ambas-</i> <i>sador</i> .	<i>sum</i> , <i>I am</i> . <i>et</i> , <i>conjunction, and</i> .

## 26. What Latin words do the following suggest?

legate	puerile	amicable
equine	virile	agrarian

## RULES

27. **Possession.** — Possession is denoted by the genitive case.

*The man's horse.* **Equus virī.**

*A friend of the ambassador.* **Amīcus lēgātī.**

28. **Predicate Nominative.** — A noun used in the predicate after an intransitive verb is in the nominative case. This is called the *predicate nominative*.<sup>1</sup> Adjectives and pronouns are used in this construction the same as nouns, and are called *predicate adjectives* and *predicate pronouns*.

*The boy is a messenger.* **Puer est nūntius.**

*The girl's friend is a lieutenant.* **Amīcus puellae lēgātus est.**

<sup>1</sup> Compare the English, § 670.

## EXERCISES

## 29. Read the Latin and translate:

- (a) 1. Sumus amīci. 2. Nūntiī sunt agricolae. 3. Amīcus puerī est lēgātus. 4. Agricola et lēgātus amīci sunt.<sup>1</sup>  
5. Narrās fabulās.



Legatus.

- (b) 1. Virī sunt lēgātī. 2. Amīcus puellae agricola est. 3. Lēgātī pugnāt et Galliam occupant. 4. Lēgātus nūntium laudat. 5. Puer litterās lēgātī portat.

## 30. Translate, giving special attention to noun and verb endings:

- (a) 1. You are farmers. 2. The boy and the girl are friends. 3. The farmer's native land is Gaul. 4. I am a messenger. 5. We seize the provinces.

- (b) 1. The boys carry trumpets. 2. The girl praises the boy's memory. 3. The farmers are carrying the lieutenants' letters. 4. The boy and the girl

praise the farmer's horses. 5. The messenger is the man's friend.

## ORAL EXERCISE

## 31. Answer these questions in Latin, taking care to change the person of the verb when necessary:

1. Estne vir lēgātus? 2. Amīcīne sumus? 3. Laudāsne equum amīci? 4. Lēgātīne estis? 5. Amīcusne virī sum?

---

<sup>1</sup> Why plural? Compare § 701, a.

## LESSON V

### SECOND DECLENSION, NEUTER. ADJECTIVES

---

*Multum in parvo. — Much in little.*

---

**32.** Nouns of the **second declension** which end in **-um** in the nominative singular are *neuter*.

**33.** Neuter nouns of all declensions have the *nominative and accusative cases alike*, and in the plural these cases always end in **-a**.

**34.** **Bel'lum, n., war. BASE, bell-**

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i>	bel'lum	um	bel'la	a
<i>Gen.</i>	bel'I	I	bellō'rum	ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bel'lō	ō	bel'Iis	Iis
<i>Acc.</i>	bel'lum	um	bel'la	a
<i>Abl.</i>	bel'lō	ō	bel'Iis	Iis

**35. Latin Adjectives.**— Latin adjectives are declined like nouns and, in order to agree with their nouns in gender, they have a masculine, a feminine, and a neuter form.

**36.** Adjectives of the first and second declensions have their feminine forms like nouns of the first declension, and their masculine and neuter forms like masculine and neuter nouns of the second declension.

37. **Mag'nus**,<sup>1</sup> *great, large.* BASE, **magn-**

## SINGULAR

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i>	mag'nus	mag'na	mag'num
<i>Gen.</i>	mag'nī	mag'nae	mag'nī
<i>Dat.</i>	mag'nō	mag'nae	mag'nō
<i>Acc.</i>	mag'num	mag'nam	mag'num
<i>Abl.</i>	mag'nō	mag'nā	mag'nō

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	mag'nī	mag'nae	mag'na
<i>Gen.</i>	magnō'rum	magnā'rum	magnō'rum
<i>Dat.</i>	mag'nīs	mag'nīs	mag'nīs
<i>Acc.</i>	mag'nōs	mag'nās	mag'na
<i>Abl.</i>	mag'nīs	mag'nīs	mag'nīs

What is the vocative singular of **magnus**? See §§ 6, *a*, and 23, *a*.

## 38.

## VOCABULARY

al'bus, al'ba, al'bum, <i>white.</i>	- mul'tus, mul'ta, mul'tum, <i>much;</i>
bo'nus, bo'na, bo'num, <i>good,</i>	plural, <i>many.</i>
kind.	bel'lum, -ī, n., <i>war.</i>
lon'gus, lon'ga, lon'gum, <i>long,</i>	dō'num, -ī, n., <i>gift, present.</i>
tall.	frūmen'tum, -ī, n., <i>grain.</i>
mag'nus, mag'na, mag'num,	op'pidum, -ī, n., <i>town.</i>
<i>great, large.</i>	ro'sa, -ae, f., <i>rose.</i>
par'vus, par'va, par'vum, <i>small,</i>	vi'a, vi'ae, f., <i>way, road.</i>
<i>little.</i>	vo'cō, <i>I call.</i>

39. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

magnify      multiply      donate      vocation

---

<sup>1</sup> No other forms are used so constantly and in so many different ways as those in this section. They should be learned so that they "say themselves."



## RULE

**40. Agreement of Adjectives with Nouns.** — An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.<sup>1</sup>

*The boy is small.* **Puer parvus est.**

*The farmers are good.* **Agricolae boni sunt.**

Notice that the adjective does not always end like the noun. **Agricolae**, although of the first declension, is masculine from its meaning, so **boni** is masculine, nominative, plural, to agree with it.



Storming a Town.

## EXERCISES

**41. Translate, giving the reason for the ending of each adjective:**

- (a) 1. Tuba magna est. 2. Multa bella longa sunt.  
3. Multum frumentum portamus. 4. Memoria pueri bona est.  
5. Puer parvus fabulas multas narrat.

---

<sup>1</sup> This is true whether the adjective is in the predicate or directly attached to the noun.

(b) 1. Vir bonās litterās puerī parvī laudat. 2. Nūntius puerōs bonōs vocat. 3. Puellae rosās albās amant. 4. Vir agrōs agricolārum laudat. 5. Multa oppida magna sunt.



Via Appia.

**42.** Review carefully §§ 15, 16, 17, 27, 28, and 40, and translate, marking all long vowels:

(a) 1. The gifts are large. 2. The men seize the town. 3. The man's trumpet is large. 4. The good farmers are preparing (their) fields. 5. You are a good friend.

(b) 1. The towns are large. 2. The messenger's horse is small. 3. Gaul is large. 4. The small boy is (my) friend. 5. The roses are white. 6. The lieutenant loves (his) country.

#### ORAL EXERCISE

**43.** Answer these questions in Latin:

1. Equusne puerī magnus est? 2. Bellane longa sunt?

3. Bonīne virī pugnant? 4. Estne ager agricolae parvus?  
5. Lēgātīne multa oppida occupant?

## VIA APPIA

44. Pictūra est pulchra. Est Via Appia.<sup>1</sup> Via Appia antiqua via est. Longa et alba est. Aquaeductus aquam nōn portat. Aquaeductus ruīna est.



The Appian Way farther from Rome.

The paving blocks in the foreground were laid by the Romans twenty-two centuries ago and are still in good condition.

Arborēs in agrō sunt. Frūmentum in agrīs est. Vir frūmentum in (to) oppidum portat. Via Appia pulchra est.

---

<sup>1</sup> For new words refer to the general vocabulary at the back of the book.

## LESSON VI

### PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS. INDIRECT OBJECT

---

*Da dextram misero. — Lend a hand.\**

---

45. The **Principal Parts** of a Latin verb are the *Present Indicative*, *Present Infinitive*, *Perfect Indicative*, and *Perfect Participle*. These are called principal parts because when they are known all forms of the verb may readily be found.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
por'tō	portā're	portā'vī	portā'tus

(a) Form the principal parts of *amō*, *laudō*, *occupō*, *parō*, *portō*, *nārrō*.

46. **Verb Stems.** — The fixed parts of a verb, to which the different endings are added, are called **stems**. Every regular verb has three stems: *present*, *perfect*, and *participial*, corresponding to its principal parts.

47. To find the *present stem* of a verb drop *re* from the present infinitive active: **portāre**; stem, **portā-**.

48. Verbs are said to be of the *first conjugation* when the present infinitive ends in *-āre*. The stem ends in *ā-*.

49. Each form of the **present indicative** is composed of the *present stem* plus the proper *personal ending*.

#### Present Indicative

por'tō, <i>I carry.</i>	portā'mus, <i>we carry.</i>
por'tās, <i>you carry.</i>	portā'tis, <i>you carry.</i>
por'tat, <i>he carries.</i>	por'tant, <i>they carry.</i>

(a) Notice that *ā* of the stem is dropped before *-ō* in the first person singular and that *ā* becomes short before *-t* and *-nt*.

---

\* Virgil. Literally: *Give the right hand to the unfortunate.*

50. The **imperfect**<sup>1</sup> indicative is formed by the *present stem* plus the *tense sign* -ba- plus the *personal endings*.

### Imperfect Indicative

portā'bam, *I was carrying.*

portā'bās, *you were carrying.*

portā'bat, *he was carrying.*

portābā'mus, *we were carrying.*

portābā'tis, *you were carrying.*

portā'bant, *they were carrying.*

(a) The personal ending -m is always used for the first person singular of the imperfect tense in the active voice.

51. The **future indicative** is formed by the *present stem* plus the *tense sign* -bi- plus the *personal endings*. The *i* of the tense sign is dropped before the personal ending -ō in the first person singular, and appears as *u* before the ending -nt in the third person plural.

### Future Indicative

portā'bō, *I shall carry.*

portā'bis, *you will carry.*

portā'bit, *he will carry.*

portā'bimus, *we shall carry.*

portā'bitis, *you will carry.*

portā'bunt, *they will carry.*

## 52.

### VOCABULARY

dīlīgen'tia, -ae, f., *diligence, care.*

fos'sa, -ae, f., *ditch.*

Gal'li, -ō'rum, m., *Gauls.*

mū'rus, -i, m., *wall.*

ser'va, -ae, f., *female servant, slave.*

ser'vus, -i, m., *male servant, slave.*

sig'num, -i, n., *signal, standard.*

altus, -a, -um, *high, deep, tall.*

sum, esse, fui, *I am.*

cē'lō, cēlā're, cēlā'vī, cēlā'tus, *I conceal.*

dō, da're, de'dī, da'tus,<sup>2</sup> *I give.*

vul'nerō, vulnerā're, vulnerā'vī, vulnerā'tus, *I wound.*

in, prep. with abl., *in, on.*

sed, conjunction, *but.*

(a) Compare **Gallia** and **Galli**; **serva** and **servus**.

<sup>1</sup> The imperfect indicative represents an act as going on in past time or as repeated in past time.

<sup>2</sup> This verb has short *a* in the present stem, except in the forms **dās**, the imperative **dā**, and the participle **dāns**.

53. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

mural  
servant

vulnerable  
altitude

sign  
diligent

dative  
viaduct



Wall and Ditch.

DRILL ON VERB FORMS

54. *Analyze<sup>1</sup> each form and translate:*

(a) 1. *Vulnerābam, vocābis, amātis.* 2. *Parat, portāmus, occupābunt.* 3. *Damus, laudābat, vocābunt.* 4. *Pugnābis, nārrābant, amāmus.* 5. *Vulnerābit, occupābimus, dabunt.*

(b) 1. *Parābās, laudābātis, cēlābimus.* 2. *Occupant, vulnerābit, dabit.* 3. *Portō, laudābit, amābunt.* 4. *Vulnerābāmus, vulnerābitis, dās.* 5. *Nārrābam, cēlābō, vulnerātis.*

55. *Translate:*

(a) 1. We are calling, he will call, I am calling. 2. They will fight, I was fighting, we shall fight. 3. They are, they are concealing, they were concealing. 4. You were praising,

<sup>1</sup> To analyze a verb form divide it into *stem, tense sign, and personal ending*. Notice that the verb is translated from right to left.

*portā ba m* } *I was carrying.*  
*carrying was I* }

*I* shows the person and number, *was* the tense, and *carrying* the meaning of the simple verb.

we shall praise, they praise. 5. I shall give, you (*plur.*) are giving, they will give.

(b) 1. You (*sing.*) were telling, we shall tell, he tells. 2. We are, we are carrying, they will carry. 3. We shall prepare, you are preparing, we were preparing. 4. I am, I call, I shall call. 5. We were seizing, they seize, he gives. .

# RULE

56. **Indirect Object.** — The indirect object is expressed by the dative case.<sup>1</sup>

*The farmer gives a horse to the boy. Agricola puerō equum dat.*

*The lieutenant is giving the messenger a signal. Lēgātus nūntiō signum dat.*

# EXERCISES

57. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Vir servō signa dabit. 2. Lēgātō fābulās nārrātis. 3. Agricolae bonī equīs frūmentum dabunt. 4. Virī amicīs dōna dabant. 5. Virīs fābulam longam nārrābō.

(b) 1. Diligentia puerī est magna. 2. Sumus bonī servī. 3. Mūrus oppidī est altus. 4. Agricolae in silvīs equōs cēlābant. 5. Gallī in Galliā pugnābant.

*Note.* — The indirect object is generally placed before the direct object.

58. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The friends of the Gauls are many. 2. The wall is high, but the ditch is small. 3. The wars in Gaul are long. 4. The boy will give a present to his friend. 5. The girls were telling stories to the boys.

(b) 1. We shall seize the towns in the province. 2. The man will praise the diligence of the boys and girls. 3. We were wounding the Gauls. 4. The walls of many towns are high. 5. The slaves conceal the standards.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 714, a.

## ORAL EXERCISE

59. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Dabisne bonō puerō dōnum ?    2. Servusne equōs celābit ?  
3. Puerīne in agrō magnō sunt ?    4. Nūntiusne Gallīs signum  
dabat ?    5. Gallīne in multis bellīs pugnābant ?



Roman Standards and Standard Bearers.



## LESSON VII

### ADJECTIVES. ABLATIVE OF MEANS

*Alis volat propriis. — She flies with her own wings.\**

#### 60. **Miser, wretched. BASE, miser-**

	SINGULAR		
	MASOULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER
Nom.	mi'ser	mi'sera	mi'serum
Gen.	mi'serī	mi'serae	mi'serī
Dat.	mi'serō	mi'serae	mi'serō
Acc.	mi'serum	mi'seram	mi'serum
Abl.	mi'serō	mi'serā	mi'serō
PLURAL			
Nom.	mi'serī	mi'serae	mi'sera
Gen.	miserō'rum	miserā'rum	miserō'rum
Dat.	mi'serīs	mi'serīs	mi'serīs
Acc.	mi'serōs	mi'serās	mi'sera
Abl.	mi'serīs	mi'serīs	mi'serīs

#### 61. **Pulcher, beautiful. BASE, pulchr-**

	SINGULAR		
Nom.	pul'cher	pul'chra	pul'chrum
Gen.	pul'chrī	pul'chrae	pul'chrī
Dat.	pul'chrō	pul'chrae	pul'chrō
Acc.	pul'chrum	pul'chram	pul'chrum
Abl.	pul'chrō	pul'chrā	pul'chrō
PLURAL			
Nom.	pul'chrī	pul'chrae	pul'chra
Gen.	pulchrō'rum	pulchrā'rum	pulchrō'rum
Dat.	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs
Acc.	pul'chrōs	pul'chrās	pul'chra
Abl.	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs

---

\* The motto of Oregon. Used for to stand on one's own feet.

62. Conjugation of *sum, I am*. An irregular verb.

## Imperfect

e'ram, *I was*.  
e'rās, *you were*.  
e'rat, *he was*.

erā'mus, *we were*.  
erā'tis, *you were*.  
e'rant, *they were*.

## Future

e rō, *I shall be*.  
e'ris, *you will be*.  
e'rit, *he will be*.

e'rimus, *we shall be*.  
e'ritis, *you will be*.  
e'runt, *they will be*.

## 63.

## VOCABULARY

do'mina, -ae, f., *mistress, lady*.  
do'minus, -i, m., *master, lord*.  
gladi'us, gladi, m., *sword*.  
li'ber, li'brī, m., *book*.  
magis'ter, -tri, m., *teacher*.  
Mār'cus, -i, m., *Marcus*.  
nu'merus, -i, m., *number*.  
pi'lum, -i, n., *javelin*.

cā'rus, -a, -um, *dear*.  
fi'dus, -a, -um, *faithful*.  
li'ber, -era, -erum, *free*.  
ma'lus, -a, -um, *bad*.  
mi'ser, -a, -um, *wretched, unhappy*.  
ni'ger, -gra, -grum, *black*.  
pul'cher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful*.  
nōn, *adverb, not*.

nōne, interrogative particle expecting the answer *yes*.

num, interrogative particle expecting the answer *no*.

(a) Compare *domina* and *dominus*; *liber* and *liber*.

## 64. What Latin words do the following suggest?

gladiator	library	liberty	miserable
dominant	numerous	magistrate	fidelity

## RULE

65. Ablative of Means or Instrument. — Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

*They fight with javelins.* Pili pignant.

*The servant wounds the master with a sword.* Servus gladiō domi num vulnerat.

## EXERCISES

**66.** *Translate, naming the case of each noun and giving the reason for the use of that case:*

- (a) 1. Mārcus gladiō longō pugnābit. 2. Galli tubā lēgātō signum dabunt. 3. Gladiō Mārcum vulnerābimus. 4. Libērī virī erāmus. 5. Servī pilīs et gladiīs pugnābant.



Roman Sword and Javelin.

- (b) 1. Malus dominus eris. 2. Equus niger virī in silvā est. 3. Librī magistrī erant pulchrī. 4. Servī miserī dominōs malōs nōn amant. 5. Servae fidae dominam cāram amābant.

**67.** *Translate, marking all long vowels:*

- (a) 1. I shall be a faithful teacher. 2. Many Gauls are free. 3. The black slaves were wretched. 4. The bad master fights with a javelin. 5. With the trumpet we shall give the signals to the men.

- (b) 1. I shall conceal the black horse in the forest. 2. The books were beautiful. 3. The faithful messenger was giving the signal to the lieutenant. 4. You (*plur.*) will tell the story to (your) friends. 5. (There) was a large number of boys and girls in the town.

**68. Interrogative Particles.** — When a negative answer is expected, the question is introduced by *nūm*; when an affirmative answer is expected, the question is introduced by *nōnne*.<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> In Latin *nōn* in *nōnne*, just as *not* in English, is used to show that an affirmative answer is expected. *Are not the slaves faithful? Nōnne servī fidi sunt?*

## ORAL EXERCISES

69. *Answer these questions in Latin.*

1. Nōne lēgātī pīlīs pugnānt? 2. Num servī miserī erant? 3. Estne numerus Gallōrum in oppidō magnus? 4. Eratne pilum virī longum? 5. Nōne virī gladiīs pugnābunt?



The Colosseum seen through the Arch of Titus.

Compare this with the pictures on pages 82 and 206.

## LESSON VIII

### PERFECT TENSES.<sup>1</sup> EXPRESSIONS OF PLACE

---

*E pluribus unum. — Out of many, one.\**

---

70. To find the **perfect stem**, drop **i** from the perfect indicative active — **portāvi**; stem, **portāv-**.

The *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* tenses indicative active are formed from the perfect stem.

71. The perfect tense, indicative in the active voice, has **characteristic personal endings**.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
First Person	-i	-imus
Second Person	-isti	-istis
Third Person	-it	-erunt (-ere)

72. Perfect tense = *perfect stem* + *the characteristic personal endings*.

Pluperfect tense = *perfect stem* + *tense sign* **era** + *regular personal endings*.

Future perfect tense = *perfect stem* + *tense sign* **eri** + *regular personal endings*.

#### Perfect Indicative Active

73. *I have carried, I carried, I did carry*<sup>2</sup>

(a) portā'vī	portā'vimus
portāvis'tī	portāvis'tis
portā'vit	portāvē'runt (-ē're)

---

\* The motto of the United States.

<sup>1</sup> Compare §§ 695-700.

<sup>2</sup> The perfect indicative represents an act as completed at the time of speaking (*has carried*), or merely as having occurred in past time (*carried*).

**Pluperfect Indicative Active***I had carried*

(b) portā'veram	portāverā'mus
portā'verās	portāverā'tis
portā'verat	portā'verant

**Future Perfect Indicative Active***I shall have carried*

(c) portā'verō	portāve'rīmus
portā'verīs	portāve'rītis
portā'verit	portā'verint

(d) Following the same laws, conjugate *sum* through the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative tenses, § 591.

**EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS****74. Analyze each form:**

(a) 1. Pugnāverat, pugnābunt, pugnāvistī. 2. Parābat, parat, parāverint. 3. Occupāvi, occupābam, occupāverit. 4. Dedimus, dant, dederās. 5. Cēlābit, cēlāvistī, cēlāverunt.

(b) 1. Vocābāmus, vocāveritis, vocāvistis. 2. Laudāverat, laudāmus, laudāverō. 3. Erāmus, fuerint, fuērunt. 4. Fuistī, fuerās, fuerit. 5. Parābant, dedēre, vocābō.

**75. Translate:**

(a) 1. I have called, you were calling, you will call. 2. We shall have given, he gave, they had given. 3. You had wounded, they will have wounded, we are wounding. 4. They have seized, we shall seize, he seizes. 5. They will have prepared, I shall prepare, we prepare.

(b) 1. You have told, I had told, they told. 2. They have been, he was, you will have been. 3. They had been, we shall be, I have been. 4. You have been, he had been, we shall have been. 5. You are, we had been, I am.

RULE

**76. Place.** — In general, place is expressed as follows :

Place *in* or *on* which — **in** with the *ablative* case.

Place *from* which — **ā** or **ab** with the *ablative* case.

Place *out of* which — **ē** or **ex** with the *ablative* case.

Place *into* which — **in** with the *accusative* case.

Place *to* which — **ad** with the *accusative* case.

*Note.* — **Ab** and **ex** must be used before a vowel or *h*; before consonants **ab** or **ā**, **ex** or **ē** may be used.

EXERCISES ON PREPOSITIONS

**77. Translate:**

1. Ad mūrum.    2. In fossīs.    3. In bellum.    4. Ex oppidō.
5. In agrīs.    6. Ab nūntiō.    7. In memoriā.
8. Ad silvās.    9. In Galliā.    10. Ex prōvinciā.

**78. Translate, marking all long vowels:**

1. To the field.    2. In the towns.    3. To Gaul.    4. From the town.
5. On land.    6. From the fields.    7. Into the ditch.
8. Out of the woods.    9. From the walls.    10. Into Gaul.

**79.**

VOCABULARY

cas'tra, -ōrum, n., *camp*.

oō'pia, -ae, f., *abundance, plenty*; plural, *forces*.

fil'ia, -ae, f., *daughter* (-ābus in dat. and abl. plur.).

fil'ius, filii or filii, m., *son*.

con'vocō, -ā're, -ā'vi, -ā'tus, *call together, call*.

hi'emō, -ā're, -ā'vi, -ā'tus, *pass the winter, winter*.

ser'vō, -ā're, -ā'vi, -ā'tus, *save, guard*.

su'perō, -ā're, -ā'vi, -ā'tus, *surpass, conquer, defeat, overcome*.

ā or ab, prep. with abl., *from*.

ad, prep. with acc., *to, toward*.

in, prep. with abl., *in, on*; with acc., *into, against*.

ē or ex, prep. with abl., *out of, from*.

80. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

filial    copious    convoke    conserve    insuperable



A Roman Candelabrum.



## EXERCISES

**81. Translate and give the construction of each noun:**

(a) 1. Fuerant castra in Galliā. 2. Dominus servās ā prōvinciis convocāverit. 3. In castris virōs servāverās. 4. Galli ex oppidō in castra cōpiam frūmentī portāverant. 5. Vir filiis et filiabus cōpiam librōrum dedit.

(b) 1. Cōpiās Gallōrum gladiis superāverint. 2. In Galliā hiemāvimus. 3. In mūrō gladiōs et pila celāvistis. 4. Filia agricolae ad magistrum librōs multōs et magnōs portāvit. 5. Servus dominō cārō numerum magnum pilōrum et gladiōrum dederat.

**82. Translate, marking all long vowels:**

(a) 1. The free men passed the winter in Gaul. 2. The faithful messenger calls the boys out of the field into the forest. 3. The Gauls gave beautiful presents to (their) sons and daughters. 4. The forces will have carried grain from the small town to the camp. 5. The black slave was concealing the grain in the forest.

(b) 1. Marcus had not been a friend of the Gauls. 2. The good farmer's sons and daughters had concealed (their) books. 3. The signal of the messenger saved the men. 4. You had wounded (your) friends with javelins. 5. You will give a book to (your) daughter, but a sword to (your) son.

## ORAL EXERCISE

**83. Answer these questions in Latin:**

1. Puerine<sup>1</sup> ex agrō equum vocāverunt? 2. Nōnne in Galliā hiemābātis? 3. Portāverāsne frūmentum ad castra? 4. Nōnne servus est miser? 5. Num filia puella mala fuit?

---

<sup>1</sup> Pronounce and think of the words in groups: Puerine ex agrō equum vocāverunt?

## LESSON IX

### REVIEW

---

*Festina lente. — Make haste slowly.\**

---

**84. Derivatives.** — Write all the English words you can, that seem to be derived from the following :

aqua	portō	pugnō	terra
magnus	longus	multus	dōnum
vocō	liber	signum	dominus
fidus	malus	numerus	filius

**85. Word Drill.** — Give the nominative and genitive singular and the gender of the Latin words for the following :

mistress	javelin	Gaul	lieutenant
master	sword	signal	native land
book	war	gift	friend
farmer	number	letter	man
son	rose	grain	story
daughter	diligence	horse	messenger
forest	ditch	town	language
teacher	trumpet	field	boy

**86. Form Drill.** — 1. Decline *agricola*, *lĕgātus*, *signum*, *bonus*, *liber*. 2. Name the principal parts of a verb. 3. Name the six tenses in order. 4. Give the formula for making each. 5. Conjugate *sum* through the indicative. 6. Give the principal parts of *ad* and conjugate it through the indicative.

---

\* A saying of Emperor Augustus, as quoted by the Latin author Suetonius.



A Roman Street Scene.



**87. Questions.** — 1. What cases are alike in the neuter gender? What is the ending of these cases in the plural? 2. What case denotes possession? the indirect object? the direct object? means or instrument? 3. What case and what preposition are used to express place *in* which, *into* which, *to* which, *from* which, *out of* which? 4. How is the present stem of a verb found? the perfect stem? 5. What tenses are formed from the present stem? from the perfect stem? 6. In what three ways may the present tense *dat* be translated?

**88. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING**

1. Es amicus nuntiorum. 2. Puellae donum dabis. 3. Viri diligentiam servarum laudabunt. 4. Muri oppidi alti erunt et fossa longa erit. 5. Equus albus est in agro agricolae. 6. Diligentia servae fidae magna erat. 7. Erimus boni amici magistri. 8. Numerus servorum in Gallia magnus erat. 9. Vir malus in silva equum domini celabat. 10. Legati a muro copias vocaverunt.

**CAROLUS ET POMA<sup>1</sup>**

**89.** Carolus agricolae filius erat et bonus puer sed malos amicos habebat. Agricola filio calathum pomorum magnorum plenum dedit. Multa poma in calathō bona erant sed pauca mala.

Puer poma celabat, sed mala poma maculant bona, et mox nulla bona erant. Tum agricola filium monuit: "Pauca mala poma maculant multa bona. Sic mali amici bonos pueros maculabunt."

---

<sup>1</sup> Refer to the general vocabulary for new words.

## LESSON X

### THIRD DECLENSION

---

*Ad astra per aspera. — "To the stars through bolts and bars."\**

---

**90.** The third declension consists of all words whose genitive singular ends in **-is**. They may be masculine, feminine, or neuter.

**91.** Many nouns of the third declension have their nominative just like the base, except in the quantity of the last vowel. Note that masculines and feminines are declined alike.

**Cōnsul**, m., *consul*

BASE, cōnsul-

**Soror**, f., *sister*

BASE, sorōr-

SINGULAR		TERMINA- TIONS
<i>Nom.</i> cōn'sul	<i>Nom.</i> sor'ror	—
<i>Gen.</i> cōn'sul <b>is</b>	<i>Gen.</i> sorō'r <b>is</b>	<b>is</b>
<i>Dat.</i> cōn'sul <b>i</b>	<i>Dat.</i> sorō'r <b>i</b>	<b>i</b>
<i>Acc.</i> cōn'sule <b>m</b>	<i>Acc.</i> sorō're <b>m</b>	<b>em</b>
<i>Abl.</i> cōn'sule	<i>Abl.</i> sorō're	<b>e</b>
PLURAL		
<i>Nom.</i> cōn'sul <b>ēs</b>	<i>Nom.</i> sorō'r <b>ēs</b>	<b>ēs</b>
<i>Gen.</i> cōn'sul <b>um</b>	<i>Gen.</i> sorō'r <b>um</b>	<b>um</b>
<i>Dat.</i> cōnsu'lib <b>us</b>	<i>Dat.</i> sorō'rib <b>us</b>	<b>ibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i> cōn'sul <b>ēs</b>	<i>Acc.</i> sorō'r <b>ēs</b>	<b>ēs</b>
<i>Abl.</i> cōnsu'lib <b>us</b>	<i>Abl.</i> sorō'rib <b>us</b>	<b>ibus</b>

---

\* The motto of Kansas and an appropriate one for school classes.  
Literally: *To the stars through difficulties.*

*Note.* — Compare the following case endings :

Declension	I	II	III
Accusative singular :	-am	-um	-em
Genitive plural :	-arum	-orum	-um
Accusative plural :	-as	-os	-es

## 92.

## VOCABULARY

ar'bor, -oris, f., <i>tree</i> .	l'berō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>set free</i> .
oōn'sul, -ulis, m., <i>consul</i> .	mōns'trō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>show</i> .
explōrā'tor, -ō'ris, m., <i>scout</i> .	nūn'tiō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>announce</i> .
fē'mina, -ae, f., <i>woman</i> .	vās'tō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>lay waste</i> .
imperā'tor, -ō'ris, m., <i>commander-in-chief, general</i> .	lā'tus, -a, -um, <i>broad, wide</i> .
mercā'tor, -ō'ris, m., <i>merchant</i> .	ubi, adv., <i>where (place), when (time)</i> .
so'ror, -ō'ris, f., <i>sister</i> .	quis, <i>interrogative pronoun, who?</i>
ti'mor, -ō'ris, m., <i>fear, dread</i> .	
vic'tor, -ō'ris, m., <i>victor</i> .	
victō'ria, -ae, f., <i>victory</i> .	
aedi'ficio, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>build</i> .	

93. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

arbor	feminine	explorer	timorous
sorority	edifice	demonstrate	devastate

## RULE

94. **Parsing.** — To parse a noun give (1) declension, (2) nominative and genitive singular, (3) gender, (4) number, (5) case, (6) rule.

In 95, 1, **mūrum** would be parsed as follows : **mūrum** : *second declension, mūrus, mūri* ; *masculine gender ; singular number ; accusative case, direct object of the verb aedificābunt*.

## EXERCISES

95. *Translate, parsing the nouns :*

(a) 1. Victōrēs mūrum altum aedificābunt. 2. Timor explōrātōris magnus est. 3. Amicī mercātorum agrōs multōs

et lātōs vāstābant. 4. Magister sorōrī parvae pulchrum librum mōnstrāvit. 5. Imperātor tubā cōsulī victōriam magnam nūntiat.

(b) 1. Es filia cāra. 2. Ad fēminam bonam dōna pulchra portāverāmus. 3. Dominus bonus servōs fidēs liberāverat. 4. Fuērunt in silvā multae et magnae arborēs. 5. Explōrātōrēs ex oppidō in castra lēgātōs convocāverunt.



Imperator.

#### 96. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

(a) 1. The merchant's fear was great. 2. The scout's sister had been in the victor's field. 3. The faithful consul has set free many slaves in (his) native land. 4. The woman will praise (her) son's victory. 5. The lieutenants have not conquered the Gauls.

(b) 1. The victors gave many large gifts to (their) sons, but will not give the boys swords. 2. You are a good man, but you are not free. 3. The commander-in-chief will announce the victory to the faithful consul. 4. The man called (his) sons and daughters out of the forest into the town. 5. We had shown the beautiful trees to (our) friends.

97. **Questions.** — Questions which cannot be answered by *yes* or *no* are introduced by an interrogative pronoun or adverb. In such questions *ne* is not used.

#### ORAL EXERCISE

98. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Ubi soror puerī erat? 2. Quis es? 3. Nōne magna victōria fuit? 4. Esne amīcus imperātōris? 5. Aedificāvitne altum mūrū?



## LESSON XI

### THIRD DECLENSION. ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

*Cum grano salis.*— *With a grain of salt.\**

99. In many nouns of the third declension the nominative differs very little from the base.

<b>Mī'les</b> , m., <i>soldier</i>	<b>Iū'dex</b> , m., <i>judge</i>	<b>Frā'ter</b> , m., <i>brother</i>
BASE, mī'lit-	BASE, iū'dic-	BASE, frā'tr-

#### SINGULAR

Nom. mī'les	iū'dex	frā'ter
Gen. mī'litis	iū'dicis	frā'tris
Dat. mī'litī	iū'dicī	frā'trī
Acc. mī'litem	iū'dicem	frā'trem
Abl. mī'lite	iū'dice	frā'tre

#### PLURAL

Nom. mī'litēs	iū'dicēs	frā'trēs
Gen. mī'litum	iū'dicum	frā'trum
Dat. mili'tibus	iūdi'cibus	frā'tribus
Acc. mī'litēs	iū'dicēs	frā'trēs
Abl. mili'tibus	iūdi'cibus	frā'tribus

## 100.

### VOCABULARY

Cae'sar, -aris, m., <i>Caesar</i> .	le'giō, -ō'nis, f., <i>legion</i> .
dux, du'cis, m., <i>leader</i> .	lī'berī, -ō'rum, m., <i>children</i> .
frā'ter, -tris, m., <i>brother</i> .	mā'ter, -tris, f., <i>mother</i> .
iū'dex, -icis, m., <i>judge</i> .	mī'les, -itis, m., <i>soldier</i> .
la'pis, -idis, m., <i>stone</i> .	pa'ter, -tris, m., <i>father</i> .
de'cimus, -a, -um, <i>tenth</i> .	tē'lum, -ī, n., <i>weapon</i> .
oppug'nō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>attack, storm</i> .	
cir'cum, preposition with accusative, <i>around</i> .	
cum, preposition with ablative, <i>with</i> .	

---

\* This expression is used to imply an exaggeration.

(a) Note carefully :

<b>liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus,</b>	<i>to set free.</i>	{ Compare the English liberate, liberty. library.
<b>liber, -era, -erum,</b>	<i>free.</i>	
<b>liberī, -ōrum,</b>	<i>freeborn children.</i>	
<b>liber, librī,</b>	<i>book.</i>	

101. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

fraternity      decimal      judicial      paternal

### RULE

102. **Ablative of Accompaniment.** — Accompaniment (in company with or in conflict with) is expressed by the ablative with *cum*.

*The boy is with his father. Puer cum patre est.*

*Caesar fought with the Gauls. Caesar cum Gallis pugnāvit.*

### EXERCISES

103. *Translate, and give construction of each noun :*

- (a) 1. Dux cum fratre erat.    2. Liberī cum iudice erunt.  
3. Galli cum Caesare pugnābant.    4. Pater cum filiabus est.  
5. Caesar cum decimā legiōne oppidum Gallōrum oppugnāvit.  
(b) 1. Caesar tubā decimae legiōni victōriam nūntiāvit.  
2. Malus vir lapide militem vulnerāverit.    3. Lata fossa  
circum mūrum fuerat.    4. Liberī iudicis patrī tela mōnstrā-  
bunt.    5. Ducēs cum multis militibus oppida magna oppugnā-  
verant.

104. *Translate:*

- (a) 1. The leader fought with the tenth legion.    2. The  
men saved the town of (their) fathers.    3. They will storm  
the wall around the camp.    4. The girl was with (her)  
brother in the native land of the Gauls.    5. Caesar gives a  
signal to (his) faithful legions.

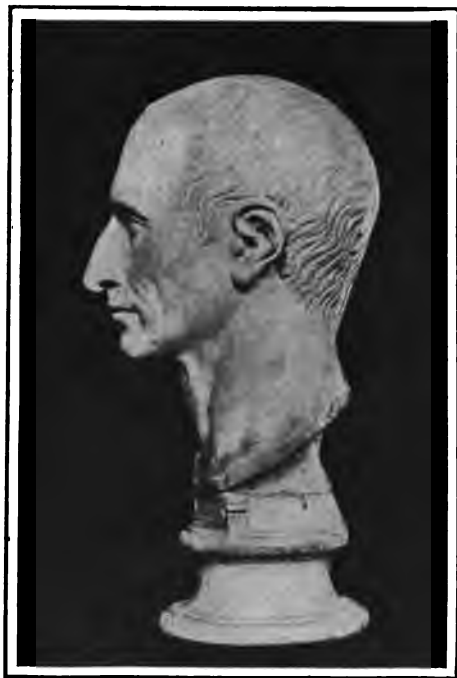
- (b) 1. The general and (his) children are good friends.

2. The judge's mother and sister were unhappy. 3. The messenger carried a letter from the merchant to the farmer. 4. The lieutenants have announced the victories of the soldiers. 5. The leader's forces passed the winter in camp and (there) was great fear.

## ORAL EXERCISES

105. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quis iudex erit? 2. Pugnāvistine tēlis? 3. Quis cum Gallis pugnābat? 4. Militēsne oppidum oppugnāverunt? 5. Ubi erant boni liberi?



Caesar.

## LESSON XII

### THIRD DECLENSION. SECOND CONJUGATION

*Mens sana in corpore sano. — A sound mind in a sound body.\**

**106.** The terminations of **neuters** of the third declension differ from masculines and feminines in the nominative and accusative, singular and plural.

	<b>Ca'put, n., head</b> BASE, ca'pit-	<b>Flūmen, n., river</b> BASE, flū'min-	<b>Cor'pus, n., body</b> BASE, cor'por-	
	SINGULAR			TERMINA- TIONS
<i>Nom.</i>	ca'put	flū'men	cor'pus	—
<i>Gen.</i>	ca'pitis	flū'minis	cor'poris	is
<i>Dat.</i>	ca'pitī	flū'minī	cor'porī	ī
<i>Acc.</i>	ca'put	flū'men	cor'pus	—
<i>Abl.</i>	ca'pite	flū'mine	cor'pore	e
	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	ca'pita	flū'mina	cor'pora	a
<i>Gen.</i>	ca'pitum	flū minum	cor'porum	um
<i>Dat.</i>	capi'tibus	flūmi'nibus	corpo'ribus	ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	ca'pita	flū'mina	cor'pora	a
<i>Abl.</i>	capi'tibus	flūmi'nibus	corpo'ribus	ibus

**107. The Four Conjugations.** — There are four regular conjugations of verbs. They are distinguished by the vowel before **-re** in the present infinitive active. Their stems are all found in the same way as those of **portō**. See §§ 47 and 70.

---

\* Juvenal.

	<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>Stem</i> <i>Vowel</i>
1st	por'tō	portā're	portā'vī	portā'tus	ā
2d	mo'neō	monē're	mo'nuī	mo'nitus	ē
3d	dū'cō	dū'cere	dū'xī	duo'tus	e
4th	au'diō	audī're	audī'vī	audī'tus	ī

**108. The Second Conjugation.** — The same rules as to stem, tense sign, and personal ending are followed for forming the various indicative tenses in the second conjugation as in the first. The *present stem* is **monē-**; the *perfect stem*, **monu-**.

In the first person singular of the present tense **e** of the stem is retained before the personal ending **-ō**, **moneō**.

### 109. Conjugation of **mo'neō**, *I advise, warn*.

#### Indicative Active

PRESENT		PERFECT	
<i>I advise, warn</i>		<i>I have advised, warned</i>	
mo'neō	monē'mus	mo'nuī	monu'imus
mo'nēs	monē'tis	monuī'stī	monuī'stis
mo'net <sup>1</sup>	mo'nent	mo'nuit	monuē'runt (-ē're)
IMPERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
<i>I was advising, warning</i>		<i>I had advised, warned</i>	
monē'bam	monēbā'mus	monu'eram	monuerā'mus
monē'bās	monēbā'tis	monu'erās	monuerā'tis
monē'bat	monē'bant	monu'erat	monu'erant
FUTURE		FUTURE PERFECT	
<i>I shall advise, warn</i>		<i>I shall have advised, warned</i>	
monē'bō	monē'bimus	monu'erō	monue'rimus
monē'bis	monē'bitis	monu'eris	monue'ritis
monē'bit	monē'bunt	monu'erit	monu'erint

<sup>1</sup> Note that the quantity of **e** corresponds to that of **a** in the first conjugation. See § 49, a.

## 110.

## VOCABULARY

ca'put, ca'pitis, n., *head*.clāmor, clāmō'ris, m., *shout*,  
*noise*.co'mes, co'mitis, m. and f.,  
*companion*.cor'pus, cor'poris, n., *body*.flū'men, flū'minis, n., *river*.ho'mō, ho'minis, m. and f., *man*,  
*human being*.pēs, pe'dis, m., *foot*.rēx, rē'gis, m., *king*.ha'beō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, *have*,  
*consider, hold*.mo'neō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, *advise*,  
*warn*.mo'veō, -ē're, mō'vī, mō'tus,  
*move, break up (with castra)*.te'neō, -ē're, -uī, —, *hold*.ti'meō, -ē're, -uī, —, *fear, be*  
*afraid of*.vī'deō, -ē're, vī'dī, vī'sus, *see*.quid, interrog. pron., *what?*111. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*capital  
pedestaladmonish  
corporalregal  
tenacioushomicide  
timid

## EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

112. *Analyze each form:*

(a) 1. Habēbam, habuit, habēbunt, habuerātis. 2. Vidēmus,<sup>1</sup> vidimus, videt, vidit. 3. Timēbō, timuērunt, timuerint, timuit. 4. Movēbunt, mōvimus, movent, mōverātis. 5. Tenēbant, tenuistī, tenuit, tenuerint.

(b) 1. Portat, laudāvi, timui, nūntiāvit. 2. Parāvistis, vidistis, dedistis, mōnstrābāmus. 3. Timēs, tenuerō, habēbat, vidērunt. 4. Vidēbant, vāstās, monet, mōvit. 5. Portāvit, monuit, dedit, fuit.

113. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

(a) 1. We were moving, they had moved, he will move. 2. I shall warn, you had warned. 3. We have feared, they have seen, I shall have. 4. You have stormed, we were having. 5. They gave, they had been, they were seeing.

(b) 1. He warned, he gave, he saw. 2. He will have

<sup>1</sup> Compare vidēmus, vidimus; videt, vidit.

seen, he had held, you (*plur.*) are fearing. 3. You (*sing.*) were seeing, I had moved, you will have held. 4. They warn, we seized, he carries. 5. They had called, I am seeing, you moved.

## RULE

**114. Ablative of Manner.** — Manner is expressed by the ablative with a limiting adjective or *cum*, or both.

*He writes with great care. Magnā cum diligentia scribit. Magnā diligentia scribit.*

*He writes with care. Cum diligentia scribit.*

## EXERCISES

**115. Translate, and give principal parts of each verb:**

(a) 1. *Homō cum clamōre comitem vocābat.* 2. *Militēs cum diligentia oppidum servāverunt.* 3. *Magistrī magnis cum clamōribus equos vocāverunt.* 4. *Caesar magnā cum diligentia decimam legionem in castris tenuerit.* 5. *Arborēs silvae vidēmus.*

(b) 1. *Filius rēgis bonos comitēs habēbit.* 2. *Hominēs decimam legionem timuerant.* 3. *Rēx magnum flūmen in silvā vidit.* 4. *Hominēs castra mōverint.* 5. *Niger equus corpus magnum sed caput parvum habet.*

**116. Translate, marking long vowels:**

(a) 1. The good teacher will advise the brother and sister.



Soldiers of the Legion.

2. With many shouts the

soldiers seized the town. 3. The children feared the man's companion. 4. We fought with bad men, but were not victors. 5. The woman's fear was great.

(b) 1. The men wounded the horse's head with large stones. 2. Gaul had many large rivers. 3. The judge and the king had been in the small town. 4. The Gauls have walls around (their) towns. 5. With great fear the merchants had seen the soldiers.



The Roman Arena at Verona

Compare this with the Colosseum on page 206.

#### ORAL EXERCISE.

117. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid vidisti?
2. Suntne magni lapides in flumine?
3. Timēsne clamōrem hominum?
4. Num ducēs castra mōvērunt?
5. Quis habet magnum caput?



## LESSON XIII

### THIRD DECLENSION. I-STEMS

---

*Ars longa, vita brevis.*—“*Art is long and time is fleeting.*”\*

---

118. Some third declension nouns have **i** before, or in place of, the vowel of certain endings. These are called **i-Stems**.

(a) In the first declension we noticed that **a** seemed the predominant vowel; in the second, **o**. So we speak of them as the **a-declension** and the **o-declension** and we say their *stems* end in **ā** and **o**. Similarly we speak of the third declension as the **consonant or i-declension**, because its stems end in a consonant or in **i**. In the consonant stems which we have been studying so far the *stem* is just like the *base*. We are now to study **i-stems**. Their *stem* is made by adding **i** to the *base*.

119. The following nouns regularly have **i-stems** :

1. Masculine and feminine nouns ending in **-ēs** and **-īs**, not increasing<sup>1</sup> in the genitive; nouns ending in **-ns**, **-rs**, and monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** following a consonant.

These all end in **-ī** or **-e** in the ablative singular, **-ium** in the genitive plural, and **-īs** or **-ēs** in the accusative plural.<sup>2</sup>

---

\* Literally: *Art is long, life short.*

<sup>1</sup> The expression “not increasing in the genitive” is used to distinguish nouns like **hostis**, whose genitive has the same number of syllables as the nominative, from nouns like **miles**, **militis**, whose genitive has more syllables than the nominative.

<sup>2</sup> Originally the accusative singular ended in **-im**, the ablative singular in **-ī**, and the accusative plural in **-īs**; but these endings have been largely displaced by **-em**, **-e**, and **-ēs**.

## 2. Neuter nouns ending in -e, -al, or -ar.

These end in -I in the ablative singular, -ium in the genitive plural, and in -ia in the nominative and accusative plural.

## 120.

**Ig'nis**, m., *fire*.    **Hos'tis**, m., *enemy*.    **Ma're**, n., *sea*.

BASE, ign-

BASE, host-

BASE, mar-

STEM, igni-

STEM, hosti-

STEM, mari-

	SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS	
				M. and F.	Neut.
Nom.	ig'nis	hos'tis	ma're	is	e
Gen.	ig'nis	hos'tis	ma'ris	is	is
Dat.	ig'nī	hos'tī	ma'rī	ī	ī
Acc.	ig'nem	hos'tem	ma're	em (im)	e
Abl.	ig'nī or e	hos'te	ma'rī	e (ī)	ī

## PLURAL

Nom.	ig'nēs	hos'tēs	ma'ria	ēs	ia
Gen.	ig'nium	hos'tium	ma'rium	ium	ium
Dat.	ig'nibus	hos'tibus	ma'ribus	ibus	ibus
Acc.	ig'nīs, ēs	hos'tīs, ēs	ma'ria	īs, ēs	ia
Abl.	ig'nibus	hos'tibus	ma'ribus	ibus	ibus

## 121.

## VOCABULARY

a'nimal, -ā'lis, (-ium <sup>1</sup> ), n., <i>animal</i> .	mōns, mon'tis, (-ium), m., <i>mountain</i> .
cae'dēs, -is, (-ium), f., <i>slaughter</i> .	nox, noc'tis, (-ium), f., <i>night</i> .
hos'tis, hos'tis, m., <i>an enemy</i> — hos'tēs, hos'tium, <i>the enemy</i> .	pars, par'tis, (-ium), f., <i>part</i> .
ig'nis, -is, (-ium), m., <i>fire</i> .	por'ta, -ae, f., <i>gate</i> .
ma're, -is, (-ium <sup>2</sup> ), n., <i>sea</i> .	rī'pa, -ae, f., <i>bank (of a river)</i> .
	urbs, ur'bis, (-ium), f., <i>city</i> .
	sae'pe, <i>adverb, often</i> .

## 122. What Latin words do the following suggest?

hostile	ignite	marine	nocturnal
partial	riparian	portal	urban

<sup>1</sup> Genitive Plural.

<sup>2</sup> The genitive plural is not used.

## EXERCISES

123. *Translate, and decline the nouns:*

(a) 1. Multa animālia fuērunt in mari. 2. In Galliā noctēs sunt longae. 3. Agrōs hostium ignī vāstābimus. 4. Caput pars corporis est. 5. Caesar cum hostibus saepe pugnāvit et caedēs fuit magna.

(b) 1. Rīpae flūminis altae erant. 2. Dux mīlītēs in castrīs tenuit. 3. Agrōs ab urbe ad montem vāstāvit. 4. Mīlītēs ā portīs urbis tēla portābunt. 5. Patrēs filiōs magnā cum diligentīā monuerant.



A Roman Gate.

124. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

(a) 1. Caesar had been victor. 2. (There) have been many fires on the mountain. 3. The enemy will pass the winter in the city. 4. (There) was a great slaughter of the enemy on the bank of the river. 5. The general's brother and sister see the large rivers.

(b) 1. The stones in the river are often beautiful. 2. They broke camp and stormed the gates of the enemy's

town. 3. The lieutenants had seen the fires of the enemy's camp from the city. 4. The men announced (their) victory to Caesar with great shouts. 5. The little children had feared the large animals.



The so-called Temple of Vesta at Rome.

**125.** *State in Latin five facts.* One pupil may state a fact to another and he in turn tell it to the class in English.

## LESSON XIV

### REVIEW

---

*Consensus facit legem.*— *General consent makes the law.*

---

**126. Derivatives.**— Write all the English words you can, that seem to be derived from the following :

arbor	lātus	victōria	fēmina
dux	frāter	pater	mīles
decimus	caput	corpus	homō
pēs	moveō	teneō	videō
hostis	ignis	pars	urbs

**127. Word Drill.**— (a) Give the nominative and genitive singular and the gender of the Latin nouns for the following :

gate	victory	foot	mother
man	slaughter	head	river
body	tree	brother	father
mountain	soldier	sister	enemy
city	children	sea	legion
weapon	fire	night	king
judge	stone	bank	leader

(b) Give the principal parts of the Latin verbs for the following :

advise	lay waste	show	hold
set free	have	see	storm
build	announce	give	conquer
move	fear	seize	warn

**128. Form Drill.** — 1. Decline *iūdex, imperātor, flūmen, hostis, mare*. 2. Conjugate *videō* through the indicative active. 3. Give the genitive singular ending of nouns of the first, second, and third declensions; also the accusative singular, genitive plural, and accusative plural endings. 4. Make a statement in Latin containing an ablative of means and an ablative of accompaniment. 5. Make a statement in Latin containing an ablative of manner.

**129. Questions.** — 1. Of what gender are nouns of the first declension? of the second? of the third? 2. What are the nominative endings of masculine nouns of the second declension? of neuter nouns of the second declension? 3. How do *i*-stems differ from consonant stems in declension? 4. How are the conjugations of verbs distinguished? 5. How does the present stem of the first conjugation always end? the present stem of the second conjugation?

#### EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

**130.** 1. Puella fēminae librum dedit. 2. Multa aqua in agrō fuit. 3. Tela explorātōris multa et magna erant. 4. Iūdex filiābus librōs pulchrōs dedit sed filiis pila. 5. Multi ducēs magnam militum dīligentiam laudant. 6. Virī malum cōsulem nōn amāverant. 7. Comes rēgis urbēs et flūmina vidēbit. 8. Hominēs decimam legiōnem timuerant. 9. Serva ā dominā ad mātrem dōna pulchra portābat. 10. Multī mercātōrēs montēs et mare vidēbunt.

#### EQUUS MĀRCI

**131.** Mārcus et Iūlia erant frāter et soror. Pater liberōrum multa animālia in agrō habēbat. Liberī equum nigrum amābant quem (*which*) pater Mārcō dederat.

Equus dominum parvum circum agrum et in silvam saepe portābat. Soror Mārcei magna animālia timuit sed Mārcus ad equum frūmentum portāvit et ei (*to him*) aquam dedit.

Mali pueri lapidibus animal pulchrum vulnerāverant et māter liberōrum magnā cum dīligentiā equum cēlābat.



A Roman Aqueduct in Southern France.

## LESSON XV

### PASSIVE VOICE. ABLATIVE OF AGENT

---

*Tempora mutantur. — Times are changed.*

---

132. The personal endings in the **passive voice**<sup>1</sup> are :

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st	-r	-mur
2d	-ris (re)	-mini
3d	-tur	-ntur

133. The rules for forming the *present, imperfect, and future* indicative are the same as in the active voice, the passive personal endings taking the place of the active ones.

### 134. PASSIVE VOICE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<b>Present Indicative</b>	
portā'tor, <i>I am carried.</i>	portā'mur, <i>we are carried.</i>
portā'ris (re), <i>you are carried.</i>	portā'mini, <i>you are carried.</i>
portā'tur, <i>he is carried.</i>	portan'tur, <i>they are carried.</i>
<b>Imperfect Indicative</b>	
portā'bar, <i>I was carried.</i>	portābā'mur, <i>we were carried.</i>
portābā'ris (-re), <i>you were carried.</i>	portābā'mini, <i>you were carried.</i>
portābā'tur, <i>he was carried.</i>	portāban'tur, <i>they were carried.</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare §§ 687 and 688.



## Future Indicative

portā'bor, <i>I shall be carried.</i>	portā'bimur, <i>we shall be carried.</i>
portā'beris (-re), <i>you will be carried.</i>	portābi'minī, <i>you will be carried.</i>
portā'bitur, <i>he will be carried.</i>	portābun'tur, <i>they will be carried.</i>

(a) Note the change in the vowel of the tense sign in the first and second person singular and third person plural of the future passive.

(b) Compare carefully the English translation of the active and passive of each tense.

**135. Perfect Tenses.** — The perfect stem is not used in the passive voice. The participial stem is found by dropping -us from the perfect passive participle (the last one of the principal parts). The *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* tenses in the passive are made by combining the participial stem, plus the endings seen in *magnus*, -a, -um, to agree with the subject, with *sum* for the perfect, *eram* for the pluperfect, and *erō* for the future perfect.

## THIRD SINGULAR

## THIRD PLURAL

portātus est, <i>he has been carried.</i>	portātī sunt, <i>they — (mas.)</i>
portāta est, <i>she has been carried.</i>	portātae sunt, <i>they — (fem.)</i>
portātum est, <i>it has been carried.</i>	portāta sunt, <i>they — (neut.)</i>

(a) According to the rule in § 135 conjugate *portō* through the perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect tenses in the passive voice. Compare with § 586.

## EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

## 136. Analyze each Latin form:

(a) 1. Laudābantur, laudātī sumus, laudāvī. 2. Portāberis, portātum erat, portor. 3. Pugnāvimus, pugnābunt, pugnāverāmus. 4. Occupāta sunt, occupāta est, occupātur. 5. Amābiminī, amātī erimus, amātae erant.

(b) 1. Vulnerātus es, vulnerābāminī, vulnerāberis. 2. Dantur, dabuntur, dedimus. 3. Data erunt, cēlāberis, amābuntur. 4. Vocābāmur, vocāvistis, vocātum erat. 5. Aedificāvit, nūntiābitur, liberāta est.

137. *Translate, marking long vowels :*

- (a) 1. You will be wounded. 2. They had been concealed. 3. I shall be praised. 4. It will be announced. 5. They (*neut.*) have been seized.
- (b) 1. It had been carried. 2. They were conquered. 3. They have passed the winter. 4. We have been called together. 5. It was saved.

## 138.

## VOCABULARY

centu'riō, -ō'nis, m., centurion.	vir'tūs, -ū'tis, f., virtue, valor, courage.
Iū'lia, -ae, f., Julia.	dēfēs'sus, -a, -um, tired, weary.
proe'lium, -ī, n., battle.	cul'pō, -ā're, -ā'vi, -ā'tus, blame, censure.
stel'la, -ae, f., star.	nā'vigō, -ā're, -ā'vi, -ā'tus, sail.
vī'cus, -ī, m., village.	
sem'per, adv., always, ever.	

(a) Compare **vīcus**, **oppidum**, **urbs** ; **saepe** and **semper** ; **bellum** and **proellum**.

139. *What Latin words do the following suggest ?*

virtue          culpable          navigate          constellation

## RULE

**140. Ablative of Agent.** — The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **a** or **ab**.

*The good boy is praised by his father. Puer bonus a patre laudatur.*  
*The book was carried by the teacher. Liber a magistrō portabatur.*

## EXERCISES

**141.** *Translate, and give the rule for each noun in the ablative case :*

- (a) 1. Puer bonus a matre nōn saepe culpābitur. 2. Dominus in mari nāvigāvit. 3. Libērī a Iuliā amantur. 4. Agrī a militibus vāstābuntur. 5. Vici parvī hostium a cōpiis Caesaris occupāti sunt.

(b) 1. In Galliā proelia ā fidō centuriōne semper nūntiāta erant. 2. Militēs ā portīs tubā ā dēfessō lēgātō vocābuntur. 3. Corpus equī multīs lapidibus vulnerābātur. 4. Agrī Galliæ ignī et gladiō vāstātī erunt. 5. Centuriōnēs urbēs magnās cum virtūte oppugnāverant.

**142. Translate:**

(a) 1. The number of stars is great. 2. The teacher has been blamed by the boy's friend. 3. The centurions sailed with the soldiers. 4. Julia and (her) companion will have been loved by many friends. 5. The signals had always been given by the leader with a trumpet.

(b) 1. The valor of the faithful soldiers will always be praised by the leaders. 2. The sons and daughters of the king are in the city with (their) dear friends. 3. The leader breaks camp and the tired soldiers are called into the village. 4. We see a part of the battle from the bank of the river. 5. The soldiers attacked the city with great valor.



Roman Centurion.

**ORAL EXERCISES**

**143. Answer these questions in Latin:**

1. Puernē ā mātrem culpābātur? 2. Quis fidō militī tēlum dedit? 3. Lēgātusne militēs vocābit? 4. Frūmentumne in oppidum portātum est? 5. Quis amīcus puerōrum erit?

## LESSON XVI

### THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

---

*Jacta alea est. — The die is cast.\**

---

**144.** Adjectives having the same endings as nouns of the third declension are called **adjectives of the third declension**. Almost all adjectives of the third declension, except comparatives, follow the inflection of *i*-stems; that is, they have *-i* in the ablative singular, *-ium* in the genitive plural, *-is* or *-es* in the accusative plural, masculine and feminine, and *-ia* in the nominative and accusative plural neuter.

(a) Adjectives of the third declension ending in *-er* have a different form for each gender in the nominative singular and are called adjectives of three endings: *acer, acris, acre*. Learn the declension of *acer*, § 570.

#### 145.

#### VOCABULARY

*ae/stās, -tās, f., summer.*

*an'nus, -i, m., year.*

*celer'itās, -tās, f., swiftness.*

*ci'vis, ci'vis, (-ium), m. and f.,*  
*citizen.*

*hō'ra, -ae, f., hour.*

*mēn'sa, -ae, f., table.*

*nau'ta, -ae, m., sailor.*

*nā'vis, nā'vis, (-ium), f., ship.*

*ā'cer, ā'cris, ā'cre, sharp, keen,*  
*active.*

*ce'ler, ce'leris, ce'lere, quick,*  
*swift.*

*ter'tius, -a, -um, third.*

**146.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

civic

nautical

navy

accelerate

---

\* Said by Caesar when he crossed the Rubicon. Quoted by Suetonius.

## RULE

**147. Ablative of Time.** — Time when, or within which, is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

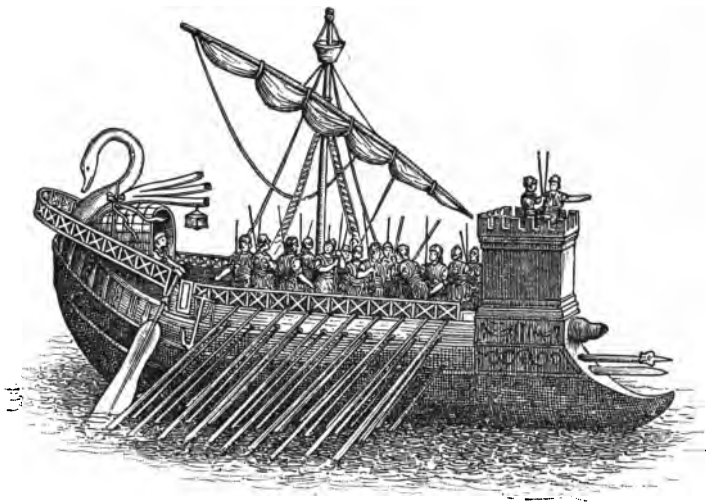
*They were fighting at the tenth hour. Decimā hōrā pugnābant.*

*Many battles were fought in a year. Multa proelia annō pugnāta sunt.*

## EXERCISES

**148. Translate, and give the construction of each noun:**

(a) 1. Aestāte militēs Caesaris saepe pugnābant. 2. Dux dēfessus nocte castra movet. 3. Tertiā hōrā frūmentum ex



A Roman Ship.

nāvibus in oppidum ab nautis portātum erat. 4. Centuriō cum decimā legiōne annō tertiō oppidum magnā cum virtūte occupāvit. 5. Virtūs civium magna erat.

(b) 1. Nautae nāvibus nāvigant. 2. Hominēs magnā cum celeritāte in vicum portātī sunt. 3. Nāvēs celerēs ad Iūliam

litterās portāverant. 4. Librī in mēnsā magnā sunt.  
5. Gladii & filiis iudicis portāti erunt.

**149. Translate:**

(a) 1. The good king was loved by the faithful citizens.  
2. In the third year of the war Caesar built many ships and he was not blamed by the citizens. 3. Good sailors see the stars, the sea, and ships. 4. The man's companion was a swift messenger. 5. At nine o'clock<sup>1</sup> the tired soldiers had been overcome by the swiftness of the enemy.

(b) 1. A high wall has been built around the village.  
2. (There) are always many battles in a long war. 3. Weapons will be shown to the active soldier by the good leader.  
4. The consul's native land had broad fields. 5. Many villages had been laid waste with fire and sword.

**150. Composition.** — State in Latin three facts about the table or the things upon it. When one pupil has stated a fact, another should translate it.

**PHRASES FROM CAESAR**

**151. Commit to memory with the translation:**

1. Aestāte. 2. Tertiā hōrā. 3. Magnā cum celeritāte.  
4. Cum decimā legiōne. 5. Memōriā tenēre.

---

<sup>1</sup> The third hour.

## LESSON XVII

### THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

*Fortes fortuna juvat. — Fortune favors the brave.\**

152. Adjectives of the third declension which end in *-is* have the masculine and feminine alike in the nominative singular and are called adjectives of *two endings*: *fortis*, *forte*. Learn the declension of *fortis*, § 571.

#### 153.

#### VOCABULARY

peril'culum, -i, n., <i>danger</i> .	le'vis, -e, <i>light</i> (in weight).
tem'pus, tem'poris, n., <i>time</i> .	om'nis, -e, <i>all, every</i> .
vig'ilia, -ae, f., <i>watch</i> (part of the night).	liben'ter, adv., <i>gladly</i> .
bre'vis, -e, <i>short</i> .	labō'rō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>labor, work</i> .
for'tis, -e, <i>brave</i> .	pro'perō, -ā're, ā'vī, -ā'tus, <i>hurry, hasten</i> .
gra'vis, -e, <i>heavy, severe</i> .	

154. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

temporary	brevity	grave	fortitude
levity	omnibus	peril	vigil

#### EXERCISES

155. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Brevi tempore servi régis liberābuntur. 2. Pars civium ā forti nautā laudābatur. 3. Cives gravibus lapidibus vulnerāti erant. 4. Omnēs nautae ex urbē in nāvēs properā-  
vērunt et in marī nāvīgābant. 5. Centuriō levī gladiō pug-  
nāverit.

---

\* From the Roman dramatic poet, Terence.

(b) 1. Tertiā vigiliā noctis militēs in magnō periculō erant. 2. Virī in agrīs libenter labōrāverant. 3. Militēs fortēs in castrīs saepe hiemāvērunt. 4. Decima legiō ā Gallīs nōn

saepe superāta erat. 5. Pictūrās multās et magnās in mēnsā vidēbāmus.



A Roman Altar.  
Showing the sacrifice of a bull.

### 156. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The nights in the summer were short. 2. The book will be light, but the stone will be heavy. 3. The good citizens always love a good king and do not fear (him). 4. The brave citizen had always been praised by the consul. 5. In the third watch of the night part of the soldiers were in camp.

(b) 1. Good children are often glad to work (gladly work). 2. The tired citizens had often been censured by the brave leader. 3. In the summer all the sailors hastened to the ships with great swiftness. 4. A watch is a part of the night. 5. The boy had a heavy stone and wounded a large animal in (his) father's field.

### PHRASES FROM CAESAR

#### 157. *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Brevi tempore. 2. Tertiā vigiliā. 3. Cum militibus decimae legiōnis.



## LESSON XVIII

### SECOND CONJUGATION, PASSIVE

---

*Fas est et ab hoste doceri. — It is right to learn even from a foe.\**

---

158. Adjectives of the third declension not ending in **-er** or **-is** and not of the comparative degree have one ending. Learn the declension of **potēns**, § 572.

159. The **passive of the second conjugation** is formed according to the same rules as that of the first conjugation. See Lesson XV.

(a) Conjugate **moneō** according to the rules before consulting the book. Compare with § 587.

#### 160.

#### VOQABULARY

**Rō'ma**, -ae, f., *Rome*.

**de'cem**, adj., *ten*.

**po'tēns**, **poten'tis**, adj., *powerful*,  
*mighty*.

**vē'lōx**, **vēlō'cis**, adj., *swift*.

**prōmo'veō**, -ē're, -mō'vī, -mō'-  
**tus**, *move forward*.

**reti'neō**, -ē're, -uī, **reten'tus**,  
*restrain, detain, retain*.

**dē'leō**, -ē're, -ē'vī, -ē'tus, *destroy*.

161. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

velocity

potential

promote

retain

#### EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

162. *Translate and analyze each form:*

(a) 1. **Labōrat**, **monēmur**, **datur**. 2. **Visae sunt**, **vidērun**t, **videntur**. 3. **Tenētur**, **tenēbātur**, **tenuerant**. 4. **Mōvi**, **mōtus est**, **movēbitur**. 5. **Habēbit**, **vidēbāris**, **culpāberis**.

---

\* Literally: *To be taught even by a foe.*

(b) 1. Delēvit, properāvit, dedit. 2. Monuerāmus, vīsi erāmus, tenuerint. 3. Delēbantur, datum est, monitī sumus. 4. Vulnerātī erātis, celābitur, vocāta eris. 5. Fuerant, erātis, fuimus.

**163. Translate, marking long vowels:**

(a) 1. We had, you were seen, they have been restrained. 2. He had been, he had been wounded, I am seen. 3. They will have been warned, it was given, we are. 4. They (*neut.*) had been destroyed, we have destroyed, it is destroyed. 5. It has been moved, they will be seen, I have seen.

(b) 1. He had held, he had been seen, he will be ~~held~~ <sup>restrained</sup>. 2. You (*sing.*) will be warned, you will warn, he had been warned. 3. You (*plur.*) hasten, you (*plur.*) are seen, they had given. 4. We shall have been blamed, you had moved, they will be seen, it had been given. 5. We shall be destroyed, they have been destroyed, you (*sing.*) will be destroyed.

**EXERCISES**

**164. Translate, and conjugate each passive verb through the tense in which it is used:**

(a) 1. Cīvēs malī ab imperātōre bonō culpātī sunt. 2. Decem celerēs nūntiī ab hostibus vidēbantur. 3. Urbs magna ā duce fortī delēta erat. 4. Rōma erat urbs potēns et virī Rōmae Gallōs multōs superāverunt. 5. Lēgātus magnum numerum nāvium velōcium habuit.

(b) 1. Tertiā hōrā noctis militēs ex castrīs magnīs cum celeritatē properābunt. 2. Decimā hōrā ab explōrātōre celerī monēberis. 3. Dēfessae legiōnēs in castrīs retinēbantur. 4. Signa brevī tempore prōmōta erunt. 5. Filii agricolārum cum patribus in agrīs saepe libenter labōrāverant.

**165. Translate:**

(a) 1. Many are wounded in a short time. 2. The brave lieutenants have not been detained in camp. 3. Many large

cities had been destroyed by the powerful general. 4. The tenth legion had been moved forward with great swiftness. 5. Ten swift-ships were destroyed by the enemy.

(b) 1. The signals were seen by the Gauls at the third watch. 2. The lieutenant had been warned by all the scouts.



The Porta San Paolo.

One of the gates of modern Rome.

3. The mountains are high and the rivers are deep. 4. The fires of the enemy's camp were seen at night by the tired soldiers. 5. (There) had been a great slaughter of the enemy by the brave soldiers.

#### ORAL EXERCISE

166. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

- |                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Ubi castra Caesaris erant? | 2. Pugnābisne libenter?    |
| 3. Nōne civēs erunt potentēs? | 4. Num noctēs brevēs sunt? |
| 5. Quid in mēnsā est?         |                            |

## LESSON XIX

### REVIEW

---

*Esse quam videri. — To be rather than to seem to be.\**

---

**167. Derivatives.** — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following :

culpō	vēlōx	annus	cīvis
hōra	nauta	celer	tempus
brevis	fortis	gravis	omnis

**168. Form Drill.** — 1. Name the passive personal endings. 2. Give the formula for making each tense in the indicative mood, passive voice. 3. Conjugate **ad** and **adileō** through the indicative mood, active and passive voices. 4. Decline **celer**, **brevis**, **vēlōx**.

**169. Syntax Drill.** — 1. Name three uses for the ablative without a preposition. 2. Name two uses for the ablative with **a** or **ab**. 3. How is an ablative of means distinguished from an ablative of agent? 4. Into what three classes are adjectives of the third declension divided? 5. How do we determine to which one of these classes an adjective belongs?

**170. Composition.** — Write in Latin five or more connected sentences, telling something about the general and his soldiers. (The best papers may be written on the board and read at sight by the class.)

### 171. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Erat magna caedēs hostium. 2. Tēlum fidō mīliti ā duce dabātur. 3. Aqua ad equōs albōs ā servīs portāta est.

---

\* The motto of North Carolina.

4. Hominēs sunt miserī, sed nōn malī. 5. Multī et bonī civēs  
 ā Caesare amāti erant. 6. Lēgātī magnā virtūte pugnābunt.  
 7. Pulchrī librī liberis ā mātribus datī sunt. 8. Periculum  
 semper timuimus. 9. Imperātor bonus civēs malōs culpāvit.  
 10. Tertiā vigiliā dux oppidum hostium dēlēvit.



A Street in Pompeii.

Showing ruts worn in the stone pavement by wagon wheels, and the stepping stones by which pedestrians crossed the street.

### CINCINNĀTUS

172. Cincinnātus agricola Rōmānus fuit et in agrō labōrāvit. Miles nōn fuit sed patriam amāvit. Rōma in magnō periculō erat et nūntiī ad Cincinnātum mittēbantur. Bonum virum arantem (*plowing*) in agrō vidēbant. Cincinnātō periculum patriae nārrābant et eum (*him*) ad bellum vocābant. Erat dictātor et potēns imperātor. Brevi tempore hostēs superābantur et victor ad agrōs properāvit. Agricola fortis ab omnibus amātus et laudātus est.

## LESSON XX

### POSSUM. COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

---

*Possunt quia posse videntur.*—*They can because they think they can.\**

---

173. Conjugation of **possum**, *I am able* or *I can* (= **potis**, *able* + **sum**, *I am*). Principal parts: **possum**, **posse**, **potui**. It has no passive voice.

(a) **Possum** = **pot sum**; the **t** becomes **s** before those forms of the verb **sum** which begin with **s**. The perfect stem tenses are formed according to the formula given for those tenses. See § 72.

Conjugate the indicative mood of **possum**, according to the above. Compare with § 591.

### 174.

#### VOCABULARY

<b>moe'nia</b> , -ium, n., <i>fortifications</i> (walls of a city).	<i>ought, must</i> (followed by infinitive).
<b>pa'lūs</b> , -ū'dis, f., <i>swamp, marsh</i> .	<b>pos'sum</b> , <b>pos'se</b> , <b>po'tui</b> , <i>can, be able</i> (followed by infinitive).
<b>po'pulus</b> , -ī, m., <i>people, nation</i> .	<b>com'pleō</b> , -ē're, -ē'vi, -ē'tus, <i>fill, cover</i> .
<b>cotidīā'nus</b> , <sup>1</sup> -a, -um, <i>daily</i> .	<b>fe'rē</b> , adv., <i>almost</i> .
<b>Rōmā'nus</b> , -ī, m., <i>a Roman</i> .	<b>cotī'diē</b> , <sup>1</sup> adv., <i>daily, every day</i> .
<b>Rōmā'nus</b> , -a, -um, <i>Roman</i> .	
<b>dē'beō</b> , -ē're, -ui, -itus, <i>owe</i> ;	

175. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*  
possible      complementary      debit      population

---

\* Virgil. Literally: *Because they seem to be able*.

<sup>1</sup> Spelled also with two t's.

## RULE

**176. Complementary Infinitive.** — **Possum** and some other verbs require an infinitive to complete their meaning; this is called a *complementary infinitive*.

*Caesar could fight.* **Caesar pugnāre potuit.**

*We ought to love our country.* **Patriam amāre debemus.**

## EXERCISES

**177. Translate:**

(a) 1. Urbēs dēlere potuerant. 2. Potuistīne monēre liberos? 3. Omnēs hostēs superāre potuimus. 4. Tempore proeli periculum timēre nōn debemus. 5. Ā palūde ad ripam flūminis castra movēre possumus.

(b) 1. Cum populō Rōmānō labōrāre nōn potuerunt. 2. Omnia moenia ab hostibus cotīdiē vidēbantur. 3. Mōns cōpiīs hostium complētus erat. 4. Tertiā vigiliā noctis imperātor magnō cum clāmōre mīlitibus signum dedit. 5. Rōmānī cum hostibus ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs pugnāvērunt.

**178. Translate:**

(a) 1. Caesar ought not to fear danger. 2. The Romans cannot defeat all (their) enemies in the swamp. 3. We could not overcome the Roman forces with swords and javelins. 4. The good soldiers were able to fight daily with great courage. 5. The Roman people could not love the enemies of (their) native land.

(b) 1. The banks of the broad river were high. 2. The swords had been retained with care. 3. Ten powerful cities have been seized by the enemy and filled with soldiers. 4. The boy's books are heavy, (his) sister's light. 5. Almost all the fortifications of the enemy were attacked in the third year of the war.

**179. Composition.** — Make five statements in Latin about things that are or have been possible.

## LESSON XXI

### THIRD CONJUGATION. APPPOSITION

*Montani semper liberi. — Mountaineers are always free.\**

180. Verbs of the **third conjugation** end in **-ere** in the present infinitive. Principal parts of **dūcō**, *I lead*: **dū'cō**, **dū'cere**, **dū'xi**, **duc'tus**. Present stem, **dūce-**; perfect stem, **dūx-**; participial stem, **duct-**.

181. **Present tense** = *present stem* (with **e** changed to **i**) + *personal endings*. The vowel of the ending in the first person singular is simply **ō**, in the third person plural **u**.

**Imperfect tense** = *present stem* (with **e** lengthened) + *tense sign ba* + *personal endings*.

**Future tense** = *present stem* + *personal endings*. The vowel of the ending in the first person singular is **a** instead of **e**, in the second person singular and the first and second persons plural long **ē**.

182.		Present Indicative	
SINGULAR		<i>I lead.</i>	PLURAL
	dū'cō		dū'cim <u>us</u>
	dū'cis		dū'cit <u>is</u>
	dū'cit		dū'cunt
		Imperfect Indicative	
		<i>I was leading.</i>	
	dūcē'bam		dūcēbā'm <u>us</u>
	dūcē'bās		dūcēbā't <u>is</u>
	dūcē'bat		dūcē'bant
		Future Indicative	
		<i>I shall lead.</i>	
	dū'cam		dūcē'm <u>us</u>
	dū'cēs		dūcē't <u>is</u>
	dū'cet		dū'cent

---

\* The motto of West Virginia.



## 183.

## VOCABULARY

dū'cō, -ere, dū'xī, duc'tus, lead.	āmit'tō, -ere, āmī'sī, āmis'sus, send away, lose.
ēdū'cō, -ere, ēdū'xī, ēduc'tus, lead out.	remit'tō, -ere, remī'sī, remis'-sus, send back.
redū'cō, -ere, redū'xī, reduc'tus, lead back, withdraw.	pō'nō, -ere, po'suī, po'situs, put, place, (with castra) pitch.
mit'tō, -ere, mī'sī, mis'sus, send.	

184. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

position

mission

reduce

remit

## EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

185. *Analyze each Latin form :*

(a) 1. *Ēdūcent, ēdūcēbat, redūcimus.* 2. *Mittēs, mittētis, mittunt.* 3. *Pōnēbant, pōnimus, castra pōnent.* 4. *Āmittis, āmittitis, āmittō.* 5. *Amat, timet, dūcam.*

(b) 1. *Mittēbās, pōnēbāmus, remittō.* 2. *Redūcam, mittit, āmittent.* 3. *Dūcet, dūcit, dūcēs.* 4. *Prōmovet, ēdūcēbātis, pōnēmus.* 5. *Redūcēs, redūcimus, redūcunt.*

186. *Translate :*

(a) 1. They were losing, you lose, you will lose. 2. You will send back, you are sending back, you send back. 3. I shall lead out, they will lead out, you will lead out. 4. We shall fight, we shall move, we shall send. 5. We are leading, they were pitching camp.

(b) 1. He will lead out, we were placing, you are sending. 2. I lose, we shall place, we were leading. 3. They will lead, we shall lose, I am sending. 4. He is sending away, we place, they lead. 5. We were sending, I shall send, you were leading.

## RULES

187. **Apposition.** — A noun or pronoun in apposition with another noun or pronoun agrees with it in case.

*We saw the city of Rome. Vidimus urbem Rōmam.*

*The boy loves his sister Julia. Puer sorōrem Iūliam amat.*

**188. Parsing.** — To parse a verb, give :

(1) Conjugation, (2) principal parts, (3) voice, (4) mood, (5) tense, (6) person, (7) number, (8) rule.

In § 189, *a*, 1, *remittit* would be parsed as follows: *remittit*: *third conjugation*; *principal parts*, *remittō, remittere, remisī, remissus*; *active voice*; *indicative mood*; *present tense*; *third person*; *singular number*; agreeing with the subject *nauta*. *Rule*: A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

### EXERCISES

**189. Translate,<sup>1</sup> and parse each indicative verb form:**

(*a*) 1. *Nauta, potēns vir, nāvēs remittit.* 2. *Caesar, bonus dux, castra pōnet.* 3. *Pater bonus ad filiam Iūliam multa dōna mittit.* 4. *Viri omnia tēla amittent.* 5. *Caesar, imperātor magnus, ad proelium milītēs Rōmānōs saepe ēdūcit.*



Roman Bow, Arrow, and Javelin.

(*b*) 1. *Animālia in vicum reducere nōn potuērunt.* 2. *Viri frūmentō decem vëlōcēs nāvēs complēverant.* 3. *Tertiā vigiliā fidus cīvis ad oppidum nūntium mittet.* 4. *Dux circum mārū virōs ferē cotidiē dūcet et portās urbis vidēbit.* 5. *Viri semper fortēs fuērunt et patriam amāvērunt.*

**190. Translate:**

(*a*) 1. Boys often lose (their) books. 2. The citizens will place heavy stones on the wall. 3. The children are leading the horses to the river and will give the animals water. 4. We had not been able to destroy the cities of the enemy. 5. In the summer of the third year of the war Caesar will

---

<sup>1</sup> Pronounce the Latin words in groups and translate in groups.

break camp and will send the soldiers back into the city of Rome.

(b) 1. Many (persons) have been wounded with swords by (their) companions. 2. We could not pitch the camp in a swamp. 3. We were glad to send (gladly sent) the women and children back to the fortifications. 4. The Gauls ought to send (their) weapons with great care. 5. The large ships will have been seized by Caesar.

#### ORAL EXERCISE

191. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid nauta videt? 2. Estne nauta in mari? 3. Ubi Cæsar castra pōnet? 4. Duxne virōs ēdūcit? 5. Labōrāsne cum dīligentiā cotīdiē?



Roman Boxers.

This is commonly called Dares and Entellus, from a famous encounter described in Virgil's *Aeneid*, Book V, lines 362-484.

## LESSON XXII

### THIRD CONJUGATION. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

*Lux et veritas. — Light and truth.\**

192. Following the rules in § 72 conjugate *ducō* through the *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect active*. Compare with § 588.

193.

#### VOCABULARY

<i>auxi'lium</i> , -i, n., <i>aid, help</i> ; pl., <i>auxiliary forces, troops</i> .	<i>scrī'bō</i> , <i>scrī'bere</i> , <i>scrīp'si</i> , <i>scrīp'tus</i> , <i>write</i> .
<i>finis</i> , -is, (-ium), m., <i>end</i> ; pl., <i>territory</i> .	<i>ōñscrī'bō</i> , -ere, -p'si, -p'tus, <i>enroll, enlist, levy</i> .
<i>i'ter</i> , <i>iti'neris</i> , n., <i>journey, road, march</i> .	<i>cur'rō</i> , <i>cur'rere</i> , <i>cucur'ri</i> , <i>cur'sus</i> , <i>run</i> .
<i>lūx</i> , <i>lū'cis</i> , f., <i>light</i> .	<i>relin'quō</i> , <i>relin'quere</i> , <i>reli'qui</i> , <i>relic'tus</i> , <i>leave</i> .
<i>prīn'ceps</i> , -cipis, m., <i>chief</i> .	<i>trāns</i> , prep. with acc., <i>across</i> .
<i>prī'mus</i> , -a, -um, <i>first</i> ; <i>primā lūce</i> , <i>at daybreak</i> .	<i>cūr</i> , interrog. adv., <i>why?</i>

194. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

· scripture      current      primary      relinquish

#### RULE

195. **Ablative of Cause.** — Cause may be expressed by the ablative usually without a preposition.

*The man ran from fear. Vir timōre cucurrit.*

*Caesar praised the soldiers on account of their victories. Caesar victōriis mīlitēs laudāvit.*

---

\*The motto of Yale University.

## EXERCISES

196. *Translate, and explain the use of each ablative and accusative:*

(a) 1. Dux diligentia fidum militem laudavit. 2. Liberi periculo cucurrerunt. 3. Princeps victoria magna viris laudabit. 4. Caesar auxilia trans flumen duxerit. 5. Rex multas et longas litteras ad centurionem scripsit.

(b) 1. Iter non longum erat. 2. Ad castra auxilia remittere debemus. 3. In finibus Gallorum multos milites conscripserit. 4. Ex finibus hostium in urbem regis cucurristi. 5. Prima luce princeps in castris auxilia reliquit.

197. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The end of the journey will be in a swamp. 2. The soldiers ran because of (their) great fear. 3. The Romans cannot send back aid to the town on account of the great danger. 4. The journey into the territory of the enemy was short. 5. The mothers will praise the children for (their) diligence.

(b) 1. I shall write letters and send (them) to (my) friends. 2. In time of war the men leave the women and children in the town. 3. The horse ran with great swiftness. 4. At daybreak we had led the soldiers out of camp. 5. Ten weary men left the battle and were blamed by the chief.

## ORAL EXERCISE

198. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Cur dux laudabitur? 2. Ubi (place) prima legio fuerat?
3. Ubi (time) hostes superabantur? 4. Cur viri currunt?
5. Quid rex scripsit?

## LESSON XXIII

### THIRD CONJUGATION, PASSIVE

---

*Nec pluribus impar. — A match for many.\**

---

199. Following the rules in Lesson XV, conjugate *duco* through the *indicative passive*. Compare with § 588. Note the only peculiarity in the passive.

#### 200.

#### VOCABULARY

*ci'vitas, -tā'tis, f., state.*

*co'hors, cohor'tis, f., cohort* (the tenth part of a legion).

*e'ques, equitis, m., horseman;*  
pl., *cavalry.*

*lēx, lē'gis, f., law.*

*nō'men, -inis, n., name.*

*ob'ses, obsidis, m. and f., hos-*  
tage, *pledge, security.*

*ōrā'tiō, ō'nis, f., speech, oration.*

*pe'des, peditis, m., foot soldier,*  
pl., *infantry.*

*vul'nus, vul'neris, n., wound.*

*pār, (gen.) paris, adj., equal.*

201. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

legal

equestrian

nominate

pedestrian

#### EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

202. *Analyze each form:*

1. *Ducti erant, misit, curram, conscripti sumus.* 2. *Videt, ducet, visae erimus, eduxit.* 3. *Positum erat, relinquer, scriberetur, missa est.* 4. *Duceris, ducēris, amittēbantur, dabitur.* 5. *Habebit, amāberis, remittentur, educimini.*

---

\* The motto of Louis XIV. Literally: *Not unequal to more.*

**203. Translate:**

1. They have led out, we shall be sent. 2. The letter will be written, had been written. 3. They had run, you (*plur.*) will run, I run. 4. We had been led back, it was placed, I led. 5. It has been moved, we shall move, I was seeing.

**RULE**

**204. Ablative of Specification.**—The ablative of specification may be used with a verb, noun, or adjective to define its application. It answers the question "In what respect?"

*He was king in name. Rēx nōmine erat.*

*The boy was small in body. Puer corpore parvus erat.*

*He was not surpassed in courage. Virtūte nōn superābātur.*

**EXERCISES**

**205. Translate, and parse all the nouns in the ablative case:**

(a) 1. Principēs virtūte ab obsidibus superāti sunt. 2. Equi ducum celeritāte parēs erunt. 3. Lēgēs cīvitātis bonae erant. 4. Equus celeritāte superābātur. 5. Auxilia virtūte equitēs superāvērunt.

(b) 1. Ōrātiō longa scribētur. 2. Centuriō decimae legiōnis in castris relictus erat. 3. Nōmina centuriōnum in librō scribuntur. 4. Pār numerus peditum et auxiliōrum a Caesare cōnscribētur. 5. Dux fortis magnā celeritāte currit, et tertiam cohortem legiōnis reliquit.

**206. Translate:**

(a) 1. (There) was a city, Rome by name. 2. The cavalry and infantry will be equal in courage. 3. The state was destroyed by bad citizens. 4. At daybreak the hostages were sent into the city. 5. The chief's friend has written many orations.

(b) 1. They blamed the king on account of the severe laws. 2. Many cohorts had been enlisted across the river, and Caesar pitched his camp in the territory of the enemy.



Roman Cavalry.

3. The town has many gates, and in time of war many soldiers are left on the wall. 4. They sent the horseman into camp on account of his wounds. 5. In the first watch we can see the camp of the Gauls.

#### ORAL EXERCISE

**207.** *Answer these questions in Latin, using the passive voice in 1, 3, and 4:*

- |                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Quis litterās scribet?   | 2. Ubi castra movēbis?     |
| 3. Ubi tela relinquēbantur? | 4. Quis orationēs scribit? |
| 5. Cūr pedes cucurrit?      |                            |



## LESSON XXIV

### REVIEW

*Justitia omnibus. — Justice for all.\**

**208. Derivatives.** — Write all the English words you can, which seem to be derived from the following:

populus	dēbeō	possum	compleō
dūcō	mittō	pōnō	auxilium
finis	iter	lūx	prīnceps
prīmus	scribō	currō	relinquō
lēx	nōmen	ōrātiō	pedes

**209. Form Drill.** — 1. Name each of the three stems of *laudō*, *moveō*, *mittō*. 2. In the third conjugation of what tenses are the following the signs: *e*, *i*, *ba*, *era*, *eri*? 3. Conjugate *possum* through the indicative mood.

**210. Syntax Drill.** — 1. What is a *complementary infinitive*? 2. Give the rule for *apposition*, *cause*, *specification*, and illustrate each with a Latin sentence. 3. Give the principal parts and the stems of the following verbs: *dūcō*, *pōnō*, *scribō*, *currō*, *relinquō*.

### 211. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

1. Agricola bonus in agris equos multos et veloces habebit. 2. Partem hostium superare potueramus. 3. Copiae Romanae in ripa fluminis castra ponebant. 4. Hostes ex oppido mittere non possumus. 5. Equi trans agrum in silvas cucurrerunt. 6. Prima luce milites castra reliquerunt. 7. In Gallia imperator milites fortes conscripserat. 8. Victoria ducis civitati nuntiabitur. 9. Obsides in vicum parvum remittentur.

---

\* The motto of the District of Columbia.

10. Litterae multae à rēge scriptae sunt et trāns flūmen in finēs hostium missae sunt.

### MAGNUS IMPERĀTOR

212. Caesar erat magnus imperātor Rōmānus. Multōs milītēs habēbat. Omnēs milītēs fortēs erant sed Caesar decimae legiōnis milītēs amābat. Erant multa et longa itinera et viri dēfessi saepe erant. Tertiā vigiliā noctis imperātor in ripā flūminis hostēs vīdit et ex castris cōpiās vocāvit.



A Bridge near Rome.

Erat parva palūs inter cōpiās Caesaris et Gallōrum sed virtūs legiōnum magna erat et milītēs pericula timēre nōn poterant. Brevi tempore Rōmāni gladiis et pilis Gallōs superāvērunt. Multōs agrōs vāstābant et multa et magna oppida hostium dēlēbantur. Signum tubā dabātur et milītēs ad imperātōrem vocābantur. Caesar militibus fortibus et lēgātis dōna magna dabat.

## LESSON XXV

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

*Magna est vis consuetudinis. — Great is the force of habit.*

**213.** Adjectives expressing quality are compared,<sup>1</sup> in Latin as in English, in three ways, *regularly, irregularly, and by the use of the Latin words for "more" and "most."*

**214. Regular Comparisons.** — The comparative is formed by adding *-ior, neut., -ius*, and the superlative by adding *-issimus, -a, -um* to the base of the positive.

*Long, longus; longer, longior; longest, longissimus.*

*Swift, vĕlōx; swifter, vĕlōcior; swiftest, vĕlōcissimus.*

(a) The comparative may be translated *swifter, more swift, too swift, or rather swift*; the superlative, *swiftest, most swift, or very swift*.

**215. Compare the following:**

brevis                      fortis                      altus                      potēns

**216.** The *comparative* is declined like adjectives of the third declension, two endings, the neuter ending in *-ius*. They are *not* *i*-stems.

**217. Longior, longer. BASE, longior-**

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Mas. and Fem.	NEUTER	Mas. and Fem.	NEUTER
<i>Nom.</i> lon'gior	lon'gius	longiō'rēs	longiō'ra
<i>Gen.</i> longiō'ris	longiō'ris	longiō'rum	longiō'rum
<i>Dat.</i> longiō'rī	longiō'rī	longiō'ribus	longiō'ribus
<i>Acc.</i> longiō'rem	lon'gius	longiō'rēs	longiō'ra
<i>Abl.</i> longiō're	longiō're	longiō'ribus	longiō'ribus

<sup>1</sup> Compare §§ 677 and 678.

218. The *superlative* is declined like *magnus*, -a, -um.

219.

# VOCABULARY

altitū'dō, altitū'dinis, f., height, depth.	pāx, pā'cis, f., peace.
Germā'nia, -ae, f., Germany.	pōns, pon'tis, m., bridge.
Germā'nus, -i, m., a German.	vīs, —, —, vim, vī, f., force; pl., vīrēs, vīrium, etc., strength (usually bodily strength).
Germā'nus, -a, -um, German.	vōx, vō'cis, f., voice, word, ex- pression.
magnitū'dō, magnitū'dinis, f., greatness, size.	quam, adv., than.
multitū'dō, multitū'dinis, f., great number, multitude.	aut, conj., or.

220. What Latin words do the following suggest?

multitude      vim      vocal      magnitude

# RULE

221. Ablative with the Comparative. — The comparative is followed by the ablative<sup>1</sup> when *quam* (*than*) is omitted.

*The boy is braver than his sister.* *Puer fortior est sorore.*

*The javelin is longer than the sword.* *Pilum longius gladio est.*

# EXERCISES

222. Translate, and decline each adjective:

(a) 1. Germānī fortiōrēs fuērunt Gallis. 2. Iter brevius erit. 3. Rēgēs Germānī semper civibus potentiōrēs erant. 4. Virī vīribus fēminās superant. 5. Hominēs in pāce saepe fortiōrēs sunt quam in bellō.

(b) 1. Multitūdō tēlōrum gravissimōrum in ponte relicta est. 2. Cohors in finibus Germānōrum cotidie cōscripta erat. 3. Imperātor vōce cōsulis vocābātur. 4. Altitūdō mūri est magna. 5. Patrēs magnitūdine corporum filiōs superābunt.

<sup>1</sup> This ablative can be used only instead of the nominative or accusative.



A Roman Triumph.



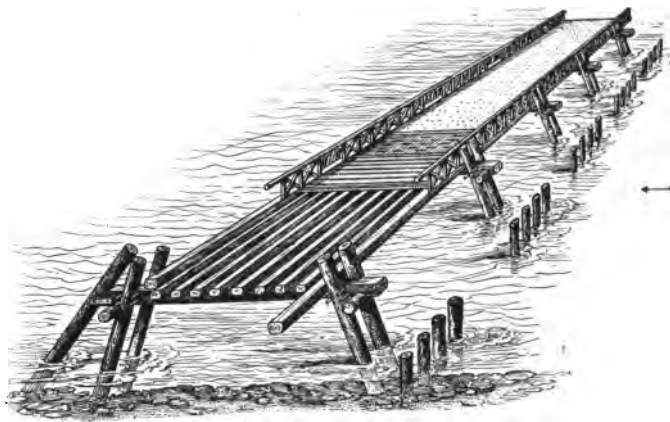
**223. Translate:**

(a) 1. Seas are deeper and wider than rivers. 2. Nights are very short in summer. 3. The infantry are often braver than the cavalry. 4. The consul's speeches are longer than (those) of the citizens. 5. Caesar with his powerful cavalry excelled the Germans in strength.

(b) 1. He was king of the Germans in name. 2. The mountain surpassed the wall in height. 3. The bravest men love peace. 4. The weary infantry could not pitch camp in Germany. 5. The Roman cohorts surpassed the Gauls in the great number of their men.

**ORAL EXERCISE****224. Answer these questions in Latin:**

1. Eratne Caesar fortior Mārcō? 2. Ubi hominēs fortissimī sunt? 3. Estne iter breve? 4. Cūr liberī laudābantur? 5. Nōne decem cohortēs in legiōne sunt?



Caesar's Famous Bridge across the Rhine.

## LESSON XXVI

### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN *-ER* AND *-LIS*

*Similia similibus curantur. — Like cures like.\**

**225.** Adjectives ending in *-er* form their superlatives by adding *-rimus*, *-a*, *-um*, to the nominative singular masculine of the positive.

mi'ser	mise'rior	miser'rimus
ā'cer	ā'crior <sup>1</sup>	ācer'rimus

**226.** Five adjectives in *-lis* form their superlatives by adding *-limus*, *-a*, *-um* to the base of the positive.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
fa'cilis, <i>easy</i>	faci'lior	facil'limus
diffi'cilis, <i>difficult</i>	diffici'lior	difficil'limus
si'milis, <i>like</i>	simi'lior	simil'limus
dissi'milis, <i>unlike</i>	dissimi'lior	dissimil'limus
hu'milis, <i>low</i>	humi'lior	humil'limus

**227.** Compare the following:

celer	pulcher	liber	facilis
-------	---------	-------	---------

**228.**

#### VOCABULARY

disci'pulus, <i>-i</i> , m., <i>pupil</i> .	si'milis, <i>-e</i> , <i>like, similar</i> .
mōs, mō'ris, m., <i>custom</i> ; pl., <i>character, manners</i> .	dissi'milis, <i>-e</i> , <i>unlike, dissimilar</i> .
diffi'cilis, <i>-e</i> , <i>difficult</i> .	ni'hil (or nil), n., <i>indeclinable noun, nothing</i> .
fa'cilis, <i>-e</i> , <i>easy</i> .	privā'tus, <i>-a, -um, private</i> .

\* Literally: *Like things are cared for by like*.

<sup>1</sup> The comparative is formed regularly, i.e. by adding *-ior* to the base of the positive.



**229. What Latin words do the following suggest?**

disciple                  similar                  morals                  facility

**RULE**

**230. Dative with Adjectives.** — The dative is used to complete the meaning of adjectives meaning *like*,<sup>1</sup> *unlike*, *equal*, *unequal*, and *near*.

*A sword is not like a javelin. Gladius pīlō nōn similis est.*

*The boys are not equal to their fathers in courage. Puerī virtūte patribus nōn parēs sunt.*

**EXERCISES****231. Translate:**

(a) 1. Iter facillimum erit. 2. Bellum pācī dissimillimum semper fuit. 3. Discipulus mōribus patris similis erat. 4. Nihil bonīs amīcīs pār esse potest. 5. Itinera difficiliōra fuērunt.

(b) 1. Privātus cīvis pār vīribus equitī erat. 2. Oppidum pulchrius urbe vīsum erat. 3. Dux multa tēla ad militēs mīsit. 4. Multa et pulcherrima animālia in marī vīsa sunt. 5. Caesar in flūmine Galliae pontem aedificāvit.

**232. Translate:**

(a) 1. The soldiers were very active. 2. The book is not difficult, but very easy. 3. Javelins are unlike swords. 4. Nothing had been more difficult than a journey on the sea. 5. The character of the Romans was very unlike that of the Germans.

(b) 1. The soldiers had been led out of the camp at day-break. 2. Marcus had been more active than his brother. 3. The ditch around the wall was very deep and wide. 4. The river is rather long and very deep. 5. Many bridges have been built across<sup>2</sup> very wide rivers.

<sup>1</sup> With *similis*, use the genitive when the reference is to a person.

<sup>2</sup> *Across* (on, as in this sentence), *in* with the ablative; *across* (on the other side of), *trāns* with the accusative.

## ORAL EXERCISE

**233.** *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Estne liber difficilior? 2. Nōne puer discipulus bonus est? 3. Erantne servi parēs dominis? 4. Quid potest pulchrius esse rosā? 5. Estne urbs similis oppidō?



The Arch of Titus at Rome.

Compare this with the picture on page 24.

## LESSON XXVII

### IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

---

*Salus populi suprema lex esto.* — *Let the safety of the people be the highest law.\**

---

234. The following adjectives are irregularly compared:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bo'nus, <i>good</i>	me'llor, <i>better</i>	op'timus, <i>best</i>
ma'lus, <i>bad</i>	pe'ior, <i>worse</i>	pes'simus, <i>worst</i>
mag'nus, <i>great</i>	ma'ior, <i>greater</i>	max'imus, <i>greatest</i>
par'vus, <i>small</i>	mi'nor (minus), <i>smaller</i>	mi'nimus, <i>smallest</i>
mul'tus, <i>much</i>		plū'rimus, <i>most</i>
mul'tum (neut.)	plūs, <i>more</i>	plū'rimum, <i>most</i>
mul'ti, <i>many</i>	plū'rēs, <i>more</i>	plū'rimi, <i>most</i>
se'nex, <i>old</i>	se'nior (ma'ior nā'tū <sup>1</sup> ), <i>older, elder</i>	max'imus nātū, <i>oldest,</i> <i>eldest</i>
iu'venis, <i>young</i>	iū'nior (mi'nor nā'tū), <i>younger</i>	mi'nimus nātū, <i>youngest</i>

235. Four adjectives with regular comparatives have two irregular superlatives:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
ex'terus, <i>outward</i>	exte'rior, <i>outer</i>	extrē'mus or ex'timus, <i>outermost, last</i>
In'ferus, <i>low</i>	Infe'rior, <i>lower</i>	In'fimus or imus, <i>lowest</i>
pos'terus, <i>following</i>	poste'rior, <i>later</i>	postre'mus or pos'tumus, <i>last, next</i>
su'perus, <i>above</i>	supe'rior, <i>higher</i>	supre'mus or sum'mus, <i>highest, last</i>

---

\* The motto of Missouri.

<sup>1</sup> Nātū, *in age*, is ablative of specification and does not change its form as do *maior*, *maximus*, *minor*, and *minimus* to agree with their nouns.

**236.** The following adjectives have no positive, but are formed from prepositions :

PREP.	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
(cis, citrā)	—	cite'rior, <i>hither</i>	ci'timus, <i>hithermost</i>
(in, intrā)	—	inte'rior, <i>inner</i>	in'timus, <i>innermost</i>
(prae, prō)	—	pri'or, <i>former</i>	prī'mus, <i>first</i>
(prope)	—	pro'pior, <i>nearer</i>	prox'imus, <i>nearest, next</i>
(ultrā)	—	ulte'rior, <i>farther</i>	ul'timus, <i>last</i>

**237.** Adjectives which have a vowel before the ending *-us* usually form the comparative and superlative by the use of the adverbs *magis*, *more* and *maximē*, *most*; *idō'neus*, *magis idō'neus*, *maximē idō'neus*.

**238.****VOCABULARY**

cite'rior, cite'rius, <i>hither</i> .	pos'terus, -a, -um, <i>following</i> .
ex'terus, -a, -um, <i>outward</i> .	pro'pior, pro'pius, <i>nearer, next</i> .
in'ferus, -a, -um, <i>low</i> .	se'nex, gen., se'nis, <i>old</i> .
iu'venis, -e, <i>young</i> .	su'perus, -a, -um, <i>above</i> .
idō'neus, -a, -um, <i>fit, suitable</i> .	ulte'rior, -ius, <i>farther</i> .
pri'or, pri'us, <i>former</i> .	Helvē'tii, -ōrum, m., <i>Helvetians</i> .

**239.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

exterior                      priority                      juvenile                      senior

**EXERCISES**

**240.** *Translate, and compare all the adjectives:*

(a) 1. Virtūs Helvētiōrum maxima erat. 2. Vidimus minus oppidum. 3. Puer maior nātū est sorōre. 4. Summus<sup>1</sup> mōns ab hostibus vīsus est. 5. Sumus<sup>2</sup> in inferiōre parte flūminis.

(b) 1. Nihil melius est quam bonī mōrēs. 2. Caesar in citeriōre Galliā obsidēs retinuit. 3. Propiōrēs Rōmae quam

<sup>1</sup> Top of the mountain.

<sup>2</sup> Compare summus and sumus.

castris fueramus. 4. Proximā nocte in ulteriorem Galliam  
cōpiās mīsimus. 5. Prīma pars  
librī facilior extrēmā habita est.

**241. Translate:**

(a) 1. Small animals are often rather beautiful. 2. The boy's companion can be very good. 3. Very many wars were very long. 4. The youngest soldiers are often the most active. 5. The citizens are very bad.

(b) 1. Hither Gaul is nearer to Rome than farther Gaul. 2. The centurion's wounds had been very severe. 3. (There) are forests on the top of the mountain. 4. The smaller ships were better than the larger (ones). 5. We are hastening into the territory of the enemy and shall destroy the smaller towns.



Light-armed Roman Soldier.

**PHRASES FROM CAESAR**

**242. Commit to memory with the translations:**

1. In citeriōre Galliā. 2. In ulteriōre Galliā. 3. Proximā nocte. 4. Castra mōvit. 5. Castra posuit.

## LESSON XXVIII

### FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

*Cedant arma togae.* — "Peace hath her victories no less renowned than war."\*

**243. Adverbs<sup>1</sup>** are derived from adjectives. They are formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding **-s** to the base: *wide*, *lātus*; *widely*, *lātē*. From adjectives of the third declension they are formed by adding **-ter** or **-iter** to the base:<sup>2</sup> *sharp*, *ācer*; *sharply*, *ācriter*.

**244. The comparison of adverbs** is like that of the adjectives from which they are derived, except that the comparative ends in **-ius**, and the superlative in **-s**.

Adj. <i>lātus</i> , wide	<i>lātior</i> , wider	<i>lātissimus</i> , widest
Adv. <i>lātē</i> , widely	<i>lātius</i> , more widely	<i>lātissimē</i> , most widely
Adj. <i>ācer</i> , sharp	<i>ācrior</i> , sharper	<i>ācerrimus</i> , sharpest
Adv. <i>ācriter</i> , sharply	<i>ācius</i> , more sharply	<i>ācerrimē</i> , most sharply

### 245.

#### VOCABULARY

<i>Ci'cerō</i> , -ō'nīs, m., <i>Cicero</i> .	<i>dīlīgen'ter</i> , carefully, diligently.
<i>col'lis</i> , -is, m., <i>hill</i> .	<i>fa'cile</i> , easily.
<i>ge'rō</i> , <i>ge'rere</i> , <i>ges'si</i> , <i>ges'tus</i> ,	<i>for'titer</i> , bravely.
carry on; with bellum, wage war.	<i>pa'rum</i> , adv., little.
<i>ā'criter</i> , sharply, fiercely.	<i>quam</i> , followed by the superlative, as possible.
<i>cele'riter</i> , quickly.	<i>quōmo'dō</i> , interrog. adv., how.
<i>dī'ū</i> , <i>dīū'tius</i> , <i>dīū'tis'simē</i> , long,	<i>at'que</i> , conj., and also, and.
for a long time.	<i>sex</i> , indeclinable adj., six.

\* Cicero. The motto of Wyoming. Literally: *Let arms give way to the toga*.

<sup>1</sup> Compare §§ 703-706.

<sup>2</sup> Except *facile*, easily. When the base ends in **-nt** (potent-), it drops the **t** before adding **-ter**.

**246. What Latin words do the following suggest?**

facile

celerity

sextette

acid

**RULE**

**247. Ablative of Degree of Difference.** — Degree of difference is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

*Six feet higher. Sex pedibus altior.*

*The boy is a year older than his sister. Puer annō senior est quam soror.*

(a) The ablative **annō** denotes the degree of difference in age.

**EXERCISES****248. Translate; compare each adjective and adverb:**

(a) 1. Diū atque ācriter pugnāvērunt. 2. Pater multīs annīs senior quam fīlius est. 3. Lēgātī quam diligētissimē laborāverant. 4. Mōns plurimīs pedibus altior colle erat. 5. Cicerō sex annīs maior nātū quam Caesar fuit.

(b) 1. Bella in extrēmīs finibus Helvētiōrum gesta sunt. 2. Fēmina minus facile atque minus celeriter cucūrrit quam fīlia. 3. Rōmānī cum Germānīs bellum saepissimē gerēbant. 4. Rōma citiōrī Gālliae quam ulteriōrī propior est. 5. Milītēs fortēs magna oppida hostium facillimē dēlēre possunt.

*Note.* — An adverb generally stands before the word which it modifies.

**249. Translate:**

(a) 1. Peace is better than war. 2. The trees were six feet higher than the wall. 3. The tired men could not fight longer. 4. The farmer labored more diligently than the sailor. 5. The enemy led out their forces as quickly as possible.

(b) 1. They will hasten by forced (very great) marches into the farthest territory of the Gauls. 2. The ships were very

small. 3. The commander-in-chief will wage war as fiercely as possible. 4. On the following night we seized the top of the mountain. 5. The old Roman fought more fiercely than his son.



Cicero.

#### PHRASES FROM CAESAR

**250.** *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Minus facile. 2. Diū atque ācriter. 3. Quam fortissimē. 4. Primā lūce. 5. Primā aestāte.



## LESSON XXIX

### REVIEW

---

*Nil sine numine. — Nothing without divine guidance.\**

---

**251. Derivatives.** — Write all the English words you can, that seem to be derived from the following :

pāx	vīs	vōx	facilis
similis	humilis	senex	iuvenis
prior	superus	diligenter	celeriter

**252. Form and Word Drill.** — 1. How are adjectives regularly compared? 2. How are adjectives ending in **-er** compared? 3. Give the list of five adjectives in **-ilis** having peculiar superlatives. 4. How are comparatives declined? Decline **melior**. 5. How are superlatives declined? Decline **optimus**. 6. Compare **prior**, **facilis**, **propior**, **senex**, **citerior**, **nōbilis**, **superus**, **idōneus**, **inferus**. 7. Compare the Latin adjectives for the following, and form and compare the adverbs made from these adjectives:

sharp	short	good <sup>1</sup>	quick	dear
difficult	faithful	brave	heavy	wide
free	bad	beautiful	small <sup>2</sup>	swift

**253. Syntax Drill.** — Review all the rules learned thus far.

---

\* The motto of Colorado. Literally: *Nothing without divinity.*

<sup>1</sup> Adv. **bene**.

<sup>2</sup> Adv. **parum**.

## EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

254. 1. Lēgēs civitātis ā civibus bonis laudātae sunt.  
 2. Obsidēs multī ad Caesarem ā Germānis missī sunt.  
 3. Filius magnitudīne corporis patrem superat. 4. Galli et  
 Germāni dissimillimī erant. 5. Primā lūce discipuli trāns  
 agrum cucurrerunt.



Cornelia and Her Jewels.

6. Militēs Germāni brevissimō itinere et magnā cum celeritāte ad urbem properāverant et mūrōs dēlēverant. 7. Cōsulēs rēgibus meliōrēs saepe sunt. 8. Obsidēs trāns mare nāvibus portātī erant. 9. Iūlia iūnior est quam frāter Mārcus. 10. Germāni fortius pugnāvērunt quam pugnābunt.

CORNĒLIA ET  
 ŌRNĀMENTA

255. Cornēlia clāra domina Rōmāna et optima māter erat. Filiī eius (*her*) erant Tiberius et Gaius Gracchus. Māter et filii in maximā urbe incoluērunt.

Diligentiā Cornēliae mātis frātres Graecās litterās atque bonōs mōrēs docēbantur.

Campāna, amīca Cornēliae, sua ōrnāmenta, quae (*which*) pulcherrima erant, mōnstrābat, et laudābat. Cornēliae dixit, "Habēsne nullā ōrnāmenta?"

Cornēlia respondit, "Puerī mei mea ōrnāmenta sunt."

## LESSON XXX

### FOURTH DECLENSION. GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE

*Quorum magna pars fui. — In which I was a chief actor.\**

**256.** The fourth declension consists of those nouns whose genitive singular ends in *-ūs*. Those ending in *-us* in the nominative singular are masculine, with a few exceptions. Those whose nominative ends in *ū* are neuter.

**257.** *Exer'citus, m., army.* BASE, *exercit-*

SINGULAR	TERMINA- TIONS	PLURAL	TERMINA- TIONS
<i>Nom.</i> exer'citus	us	exer'citūs	ūs
<i>Gen.</i> exer'citūs	ūs	exerci'tuum	uum
<i>Dat.</i> exerci'tui	ui	exerci'tibus	ibus
<i>Acc.</i> exer'citum	um	exer'citūs	ūs
<i>Abl.</i> exer'citū	ū	exerci'tibus	ibus

*Cornū, n., horn.* BASE, *corn-*

<i>Nom.</i> cor'nū	ū	cor'nua	ua
<i>Gen.</i> cor'nūs	ūs	cor'nuum	uum
<i>Dat.</i> cor'nū	ū	cor'nibus	ibus
<i>Acc.</i> cor'nū	ū	cor'nua	ua
<i>Abl.</i> cor'nū	ū	cor'nibus	ibus

*Domus, f., house, home*, sometimes has the endings of the second declension in the genitive, dative, and ablative singular, and in the genitive and accusative plural. Learn the declension of *domus*, § 568.

---

\* Virgil. Literally: *Of which I was a large part.*

## 258.

## VOCABULARY

cor'nū, -ūs, n., horn, wing (of an army).	dex'ter, -tra, trum. right, right-hand.
do'mus, -ūs, f., house, home.	sinis'ter, -tra, -trum, left-hand.
exer'citus, -ūs, m., army.	susti'neō, -ē're, -uī, -ten'tus, check, withstand.
im'petus, -ūs, m., attack.	bene, adv., well.
ma'nus, -ūs, f., hand, band (of soldiers).	vēlō'citer, adv., swiftly.
occā'sus, ūs, m., setting.	inter, prep. with acc., between, among.
sōl, sō'lis, m., sun.	

259. *What Latin words do the following suggest :*

cornucopia      manual      solar      domestic

## RULES

**260. Genitive of the Whole.** — The genitive denoting the whole of which a part is taken, is called the Genitive of the Whole.<sup>1</sup>

*Part of the soldiers. Pars militum.*

*The bravest of the men were in the army. Fortissimī virōrum in exercitū erant.*

*Note.* — Virōrum denotes the whole of which fortissimī is a part. The ablative with **dē** or **ex** is sometimes used instead of the genitive of the whole, especially after cardinal numbers. *One of the boys. Ūnus ex pueris. Ten of the horses were seen in the field. Decem ex equis in agrō vidēbantur.*

## EXERCISES

261. *Translate, and parse all the verbs :*

(a) 1. Fortissimus omnium Rōmānōrum erat Caesar.  
2. Decem ex militibus quam fortissimī fuerant. 3. Multī Helvētiōrum vulnerātī erant. 4. Pars manūs & dextrō cornū<sup>2</sup> vidēbātur. 5. Sōlis occāsū Caesar summō in colle castra posuit.

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes called the Partitive Genitive.

<sup>2</sup> On the right wing.

(b) 1. Domus Caesaris pulcherrima erat. 2. Imperator sinistrō cornū exercitūs propior quam dextrō erat. 3. Militēs velōcissimē cucurrērunt et bellum bene gessērunt. 4. Impetūs dextrī cornūs facile sustinēbimus. 5. Multae et maximae arborēs inter domum et flūmen vidēbantur.

**262. Translate:**

(a) 1. We saw the houses of the enemy on the top of the hill. 2. Nothing could be equal to Caesar's armies. 3. Six of the attacks have been withstood very bravely. 4. War was waged long and fiercely in the territory of the Gauls. 5. Part of the bands of the enemy withstood the Roman army as well as possible.

(b) 1. At sunset the soldiers fought less easily. 2. Very many attacks of the enemy have been withstood by Caesar's forces. 3. Good laws are praised by the best citizens, but not by bad men. 4. The left wing of Caesar's army was not like the right (wing). 5. The soldiers on the left wing fought six hours longer than (those) on the right (wing).

**PHRASES FROM CAESAR**

**263. Commit to memory with the translations:**

1. Sōlis occāsū. 2.  $\overline{A}$  dextrō cornū. 3.  $\overline{A}$  sinistrō cornū. 4. Ab summō colle. 5. Ab superiōre parte.

## LESSON XXXI

### FIFTH DECLENSION. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

*Carpe diem. — Seize the opportunity.\**

**264.** The **fifth declension** consists of nouns whose genitive singular ends in **-ŕi**.<sup>1</sup> They are feminine, with a few exceptions.

**265.** **di'ŕes, m., day.** BASE, **di-**    **rŕes, f., thing.** BASE, **r-**

	SINGULAR	TERMINA- TIONS
<i>Nom.</i> di'ŕes	rŕes	ŕes
<i>Gen.</i> diŕ'i	re'i	ŕi
<i>Dat.</i> diŕ'i	re'i	ŕi
<i>Acc.</i> di'em	rem	em
<i>Abl.</i> di'ŕe	rŕe	ŕe

	PLURAL	
<i>Nom.</i> di'ŕes	rŕes	ŕes
<i>Gen.</i> diŕ'rum	rŕ'rum	ŕrum
<i>Dat.</i> diŕ'bus	rŕ'bus	ŕbus
<i>Acc.</i> di'ŕes	rŕes	ŕes
<i>Abl.</i> diŕ'bus	rŕ'bus	ŕbus

**266.** **Rŕespŕb'lica** and **iŕsiŕran'dum** are compound nouns.

(a) **Rŕespŕblica** = **rŕes** + fem. adj. **pŕblica**, meaning the *public affair*; that is, the *state*. Both parts of the word are declined.

(b) **iŕsiŕrandum** = **iŕs** + neuter gerundive **iŕrandum**. **iŕs** is a neuter noun of the third declension, and **iŕrandum** is declined like the neuter of **magnus**. Both parts of the word are declined.

---

\* Horace. Literally: *Grasp the day*.

<sup>1</sup> Genitive and dative singular end in **-ŕi** when a vowel precedes, in **-ŕi** when a consonant precedes.

## 267.

## VOCABULARY

aciēs, aciēs'ī, f., line of battle.

ami'cus, -a -um, friendly.

inim'icus, -a, -um, unfriendly.

inimicus, -ī, m., a personal enemy.

(Compare hostis, a public enemy.)

di'ēs, diēs'ī, m., day.

iūsiūran'dum, iū'risiūran'dī, n., oath.

iūs, iū'ris, n., right, law.

lo'cus, -ī, m. (pl., loca, n.), place, location.

rēs, re'ī, f., thing, affair.

rēspū'blica, reīpū'blicae, f., state, republic.

pau'ci, -ae, -a, few.

ū'tilis, -e, useful.

inū'tilis, -e, useless.

## 268. What Latin words do the following suggest?

location

utility

republic

paucity

## RULE

269. Dative with Adjectives. — Adjectives meaning *dear*, *faithful*, *friendly*, *suitable*, *useful*, and their opposites take the dative.

The place is suitable for a camp. *Locus castris idōneus est.*

The slaves are faithful to their masters. *Servi dominis fidī sunt.*

## EXERCISES

270. Translate, and compare the adjectives and adverbs:

(a) 1. Libērī mātrī cārissimī erant. 2. Bonī civēs reīpūblicae fidī semper fuērunt. 3. Rōmānī locum idōneum castris vidērunt. 4. Tēla mīlitibus sunt ūtilissima. 5. Iūsiūran'dum duci ā mīlitibus datum est.

(b) 1. Aestāte diēs noctibus longiōrēs sunt. 2. Pau'ci amīcōrum mīlitum ad collem missī erunt. 3. Hostēs prīmam aciem fortiter oppugnābant. 4. Iūre bellī obsidēs victōrī dabuntur. 5. Locus castris idōneus fuit, sed aciēs inūtilis.

## 271. Translate:

(a) 1. Part of the army was unfriendly to the general.  
2. A faithful son can be useful to his old father. 3. We are

friendly to our friends and faithful to our chief. 4. The hostages will be held by an oath. 5. A few places suitable for a line of battle have been seen.



The Central Court of a House in Pompeii.

(b) 1. The attack at sunset was useless. 2. At the lower part of the river (there) had been a bridge. 3. The day was a few hours longer than the night. 4. The house had been on the right bank of the river. 5. The line of battle was very long and had been seen on the top of the hill.

#### ORAL EXERCISES

**272.** *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quis rempūblicam amāvit? 2. Quis cārus māt̄rī est?  
3. Esne magistrō amīcus? 4. Ubi est parva palūs? 5. Quid est in superiōre parte mūrī?



## LESSON XXXII

### FOURTH CONJUGATION

*Veni, vidi, vici. — I came, saw, conquered.\**

**273.** Verbs of the fourth conjugation end in *-ire* in the present infinitive: *au'diō, audī're, audī'vī, audī'tus, hear*. The present stem is *audī-*, perfect stem *audīv-*, participial stem *audīt-*.

(a) Learn the indicative active of *audiō*, § 589, noting the peculiarity of the imperfect and the future.

#### 274.

#### VOCABULARY

<i>au'diō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tus, hear,</i> <i>hear of.</i>	<i>oc'tō, eight.</i>
<i>mū'niō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tus, fortify.</i>	<i>mul'tō di'ē, late in the day.</i>
<i>ve'niō, -ī're, vē'nī, ven'tus, come.</i>	<i>pos'terō di'ē, on the day follow-</i> <i>ing.</i>
<i>incrēdi'bilis, -e, incredible.</i>	<i>plūs pos'se, to be more powerful.</i>

**275.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

audience

incredible

convene

octave

#### EXERCISES ON VERB FORMS

**276.** *Analyze each form:*

1. *Audīs, audīvimus, audīverat, audiēmus.* 2. *Veniēbat, venit, vēnit, vēnerimus, veniunt.* 3. *Mūniēbāmus, mūnīvērunt, mūnīvī, mūniam.* 4. *Mittet, mūniet, dabit, laudāberis, vīsa est.* 5. *Potuerat, fuerat, vēnerat, dederat, miserat.*

---

\* Caesar's famous message to the Roman Senate. Quoted by Suetonius.

277. *Translate, marking long vowels:*

1. We shall have heard, they will hear, we hear, I heard.
2. He comes, we shall come, they had come, you came.
3. They will fortify, he has fortified, I shall fortify.
4. We shall seize, we shall destroy, we shall send, we shall come.
5. They saw, we lead, he can, it had been stormed.

## RULE

**278. Expressions of Place. Locative Case.** — With names of cities and towns, with *domus*, *home*, and with *rūs*, *country*, the preposition is not used in *expressions of place*.

These words express *place at which* by a case called the *Locative*. Its form is like the genitive in the singular of nouns of the first and second declensions, otherwise like the ablative.

## PLACE FROM WHICH

He comes { *from the city, ab urbe venit.*  
                   *from Rome, Rōmā venit.*  
                   *from home, domō venit.*

## PLACE TO WHICH

He runs { *to the city, ad urbem currit.*  
                   *to Rome, Rōmam currit.*  
                   *home, domum currit.*

## PLACE AT WHICH

He is { *in the city, in urbe est.*  
                   *at Rome, Rōmae est.*  
                   *at home, domī est.*

## EXERCISES

279. *Translate:*

- (a) 1. Fēminae domī<sup>1</sup> erant.    2. Multō diē lēgātus Rōmam

---

<sup>1</sup> Locative.

vēnit. 3. Rēgēs plūs possunt quam cīvēs. 4. Liberī domum quam celerrimē vēnerant. 5. Posterō diē equitēs Rōmā in castra quam vėlōcissimē venient.

(b) 1. Bonī cīvēs reipublicae inimicī nōn erunt. 2. Amīcus explorātōris multās rēs audiet. 3. Octō ex oppidīs ā legiōnibus fortibus oppugnāta erant. 4. Nautae ex nāvibus vēnērunt sed in ripā tēla reliquērunt. 5. Castra ex omnibus partibus<sup>1</sup> lātissimā fossā et altissimō mūrō mūnīvimus.

### 280. *Translate:*

(a) 1. On the next day we heard the signal at Rome. 2. The camp was fortified on all sides. 3. At sunset the children came home. 4. Cicero was very friendly to the republic. 5. The infantry came to Rome with incredible swiftness.

(b) 1. Courage is often more useful to a man than weapons. 2. The place was more suitable in all respects for a line of battle than for a camp. 3. Eight of the legions could not come to Rome in the early part of summer. 4. Late in the day Caesar led his forces back into camp. 5. The soldiers of the first legion carried on war less bravely than (those) of the tenth.

### PHRASES FROM CAESAR

#### 281. *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Domī. 2. Magnā cum celeritāte. 3. Multō diē.  
4. Posterō diē. 5. Omnibus rēbus.

---

<sup>1</sup> On all sides.

## LESSON XXXIII

### FOURTH CONJUGATION, PASSIVE

---

*Dum spiro, spero. — While there is life there is hope.\**

---

282. According to the rules in Lesson XV, conjugate **audiō** in the indicative passive. Compare § 589.

283. **Mille**, *thousand*, is an indeclinable adjective in the singular. In the plural it is a substantive declined like the plural of **mare**, and is followed by the genitive of the objects enumerated. *A thousand men*, **mille hominēs**, but *eight thousand men*, **millia hominum octō**.

(a) There is no single word in Latin for *mile*. A mile was one thousand paces, **mille passūs**. Plural, **millia passuum**. A Roman *pace* was the distance from where one foot touched the ground to where the same foot touched again, that is, two of our paces or about five feet.

#### 284.

#### VOCABULARY

**lātītūdō**, -inis, f., *width*.

**longitūdō**, -inis, f., *length*.

**mī'lia**, **mī'lium**, n., *thousands*.

**mī'le**, adj., *thousand*.

**pas'sus**, -ūs, m., *pace*.

**ma'neō**, -ē're, **mān'sī**, **mān'sus**,  
*remain*.

**pa'teō**, -ē're, -uī, —, *lie open*,  
*extend*.

**lon'gē**, adv., *far*.

**quam lon'gē**, *how far?*

**quam dī'ū**, *how long?*

**quīn'que**, num. adj., indeclinable,  
*five*.

285. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

latitude

millennium

remain

quintette

---

\* Part of the motto of South Carolina. Literally: *While I breathe, I hope*.

## RULE

**286. Duration of Time. Extent of Space.** — Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

*They came six miles. Milia passuum sex vēnērunt.*

*They fought five hours. Quīque hōrās pugnāvērunt.*

## EXERCISES

**287. Translate; parse all the nouns:**

(a) 1. Quīque diēs Rōmāe mānsit. 2. Octō hōrās quam fortissimē pugnāverant. 3. Flūmen in lātitudinem mīlle passūs patuit. 4. Multōs annōs bellum gessērunt. 5. Equi milia passuum quīque incrēdibilī celeritāte cucurrērunt.

(b) 1. Mūrum decem pedēs altum aedificābit. 2. Multae rēs ā prīncipe et ā paucīs militum audiēbantur. 3. Aestāte ad urbem Rōmam veniētis. 4. Agrī Helvētiōrum in longitudinem milia passuum multa patēbant. 5. Multō diē victōriam Rōmānōrum audīvimus.

**288. Translate:**

(a) 1. We shall remain in the city eight days. 2. They ran a few miles and came home late in the day. 3. The bank of the river was ten feet high. 4. The territory of the Gauls extended many miles. 5. The attack was checked by a thousand soldiers on the left wing.

(b) 1. The line of battle will be many feet long. 2. At daybreak the general pitched camp at the top of the hill. 3. The tenth legion was faithful to Caesar in all respects. 4. The town had been fortified on all sides as carefully as possible. 5. The chief was faithful to the army, and he was loved by the brave soldiers.

## ORAL EXERCISES

**289. Answer these questions in Latin:**

1. Quam diū domī manēbitis? 2. Quam longē oppidum patēbat? 3. Quam diū discipulī labōrant? 4. Ubi domus Caesaris erat? 5. Ubi domī es?

## LESSON XXXIV

### ADJECTIVES OF PECULIAR DECLENSION

*Audiat et altera pars. — Let the other side be heard.*

290. The following adjectives of the first and second declensions are regular in the plural, but have *-ius*<sup>1</sup> in the genitive and *-i* in the dative singular of all genders :

<i>a'lius</i> , other.	<i>u'ter</i> , which (of two).
<i>al'ter</i> , the other (of two).	<i>neu'ter</i> , neither (of two).
<i>fil'ius</i> , any.	<i>sō'lus</i> , alone.
<i>nūl'ius</i> , no, none.	<i>tō'tus</i> , whole.
<i>ū'nus</i> , one.	

(a) Learn the declension of *alius*, *finus*, § 574 ; of *deus*, § 568.

### 291.

#### VOCABULARY

<i>capti'vus</i> , -i, m., captive.	<i>vī'ta</i> , -ae, f., life.
<i>de'a</i> , -ae, f., goddess (-ābus in dat. and abl. pl.).	<i>vin'cō</i> , -ere, <i>vī'cī</i> , <i>vīc'tus</i> , conquer.
<i>de'us</i> , -i, m., god.	<i>vī'vō</i> , -ere, <i>vī'xī</i> , <i>vīc'tus</i> , <sup>2</sup> live.
<i>nūllus</i> , <i>nūllus</i> , no, none.	<i>a'lius</i> . . . <i>a'lius</i> , one . . . another.
<i>ōr'dō</i> , <i>ōr'dinis</i> , m., rank, order, row.	<i>a'liī</i> . . . <i>a'liī</i> , some . . . others.
	quot, indecl. adj., how many.

292. What Latin words do the following suggest ?

neuter	invincible	deity	alternate
--------	------------	-------	-----------

\* Seneca. Literally: Also the other part.

<sup>1</sup> Alter has *ius* in the genitive.

<sup>2</sup> Compare principal parts of *videō*, *vincō*, *vivō*, *veniō*.

## EXERCISES

293. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Deī simillimī deārum sunt. 2. Alia animālia in mari, alia in silvā vivunt. 3. Soror neutrius frātrum similis fuit. 4. Utra puellārum maior nātū est? 5. Deī ūni ex hominibus longam vitam dedērunt.

(b) 1. Alia puella aliī fābulam nārrābit. 2. Tōtum diem



The Goddess Juno.

captivī quam optimē labōrāverunt. 3. Nullius orātiōnēs quam Cicerōnis meliōrēs sunt. 4. Flūmen mīlia passuum quīnque patēbat. 5. Rōmānī ā nullīs hostibus victi sunt.

294. *Translate:*

(a) 1. One captive is a friend, another an enemy. 2. The father of neither boy was at home. 3. We shall tell the

story to Marcus only. 4. The faithful Romans were loved by the gods and goddesses. 5. The gods have given longer life to some than to others.

(b) 1. One friend is better than none. 2. The whole army had been conquered and the soldiers were living in fear every



The Way of the Tombs, in Pompeii.

day. 3. To which of the boys did the man give a beautiful gift? 4. The soldiers live in camp in the summer. 5. The centurions of the first rank remained all day in line of battle.

#### ORAL EXERCISE

**295.** *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quot hōrās hominēs labōrābunt?
2. Quam longē vēnistī?
3. Quam diū vīxit?
4. Labōrābāsne tōtum diem?
5. Utra puella melior est?



## LESSON XXXV

### REVIEW

---

*Vox populi vox dei.*—*The voice of the people is the voice of God.*

---

**296. Derivatives.**—Write all the English words you can, that seem to be derived from the following:

cornū	domus	manus	impetus
sōl	dexter	bene	deus
ūtilis	audiō	veniō	octō
mille	alter	sōlus	captivus
ōrdō	vīta	vincō	vīvō

**297. Form Drill.**—1. Of what genders are the nouns of the first, second, third, fourth, and fifth declensions? Decline one noun of each declension. 2. In masculine and feminine nouns what is always the last letter in the accusative singular? the accusative plural? Give the terminations of these cases for each declension. 3. What are always the last two letters of the genitive plural? Give the terminations for each declension. 4. What cases are always alike in neuters? How do these cases always end in the plural? 5. What is peculiar about the declension of *domus*?

**298. Syntax Drill.**—1. Write one Latin sentence illustrating the genitive of the whole, degree of difference, and ablative after a comparative. 2. What adjectives take the dative? 3. Give the different ways of expressing *place* in Latin. 4. How is duration of time expressed

in Latin? 5. What is a compound noun? Decline one. 6. How do verbs of the fourth conjugation differ from others in the imperfect indicative? 7. How does the future indicative of the third and fourth conjugations differ from that of the first and second? 8. Name the nine adjectives of peculiar declension.

**299. Phrase Drill.** — Give the following phrases in Latin:

1. How long? 2. The first part of the summer. 3. Long and fiercely. 4. Less easily. 5. As bravely as possible. 6. How far? 7. On the top of the hill. 8. On the left wing. 9. At home. 10. The next day. 11. At sunset. 12. Late in the day. 13. In all respects.

### 300. EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

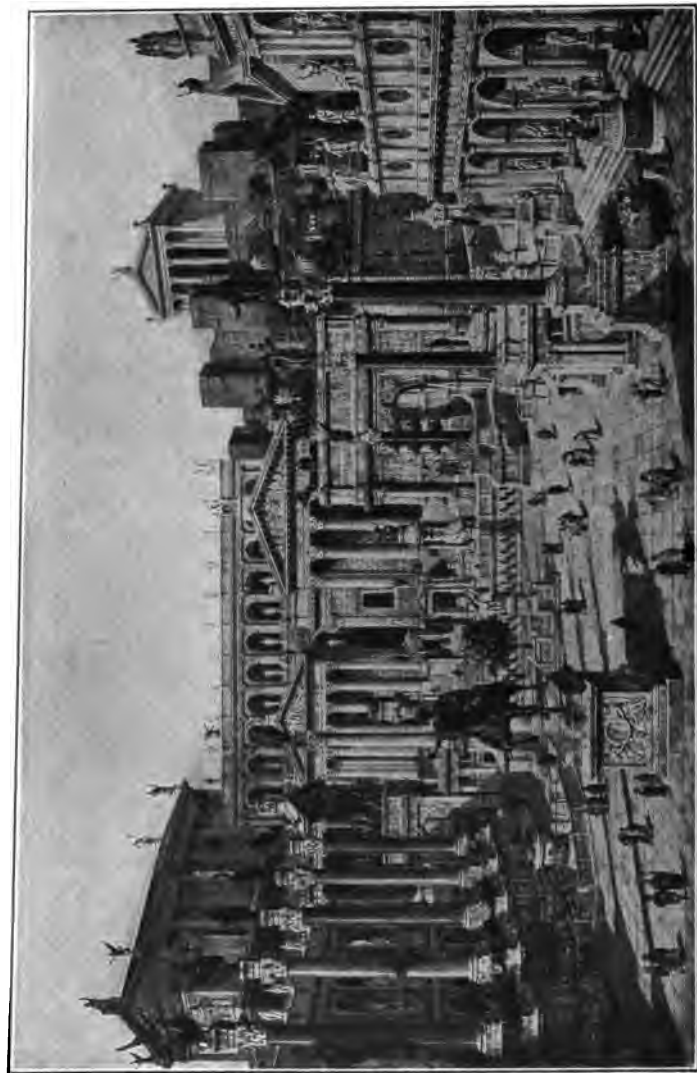
1. Omnis impetus hostium à militibus sustinēbatur. 2. Nihil exercitibus Caesaris pār esse potuit. 3. Palūs erat nōn magna inter Caesaris atque hostium exercitūs. 4. Iter ad flūmen facillimum est. 5. Militēs ad urbem incredibili celeritāte current. 6. Oppidum altissimō mūrō mūniēmus. 7. Primā aestāte principēs Gallōrum domi in Galliā fuerant. 8. Sōlis occāsū nūntius audiēbatur. 9. Alia oppida mūnientur, alia dēlēbuntur. 10. Equi mīlia passuum quīnque cucurrērunt.

### FORUM RŌMĀNUM

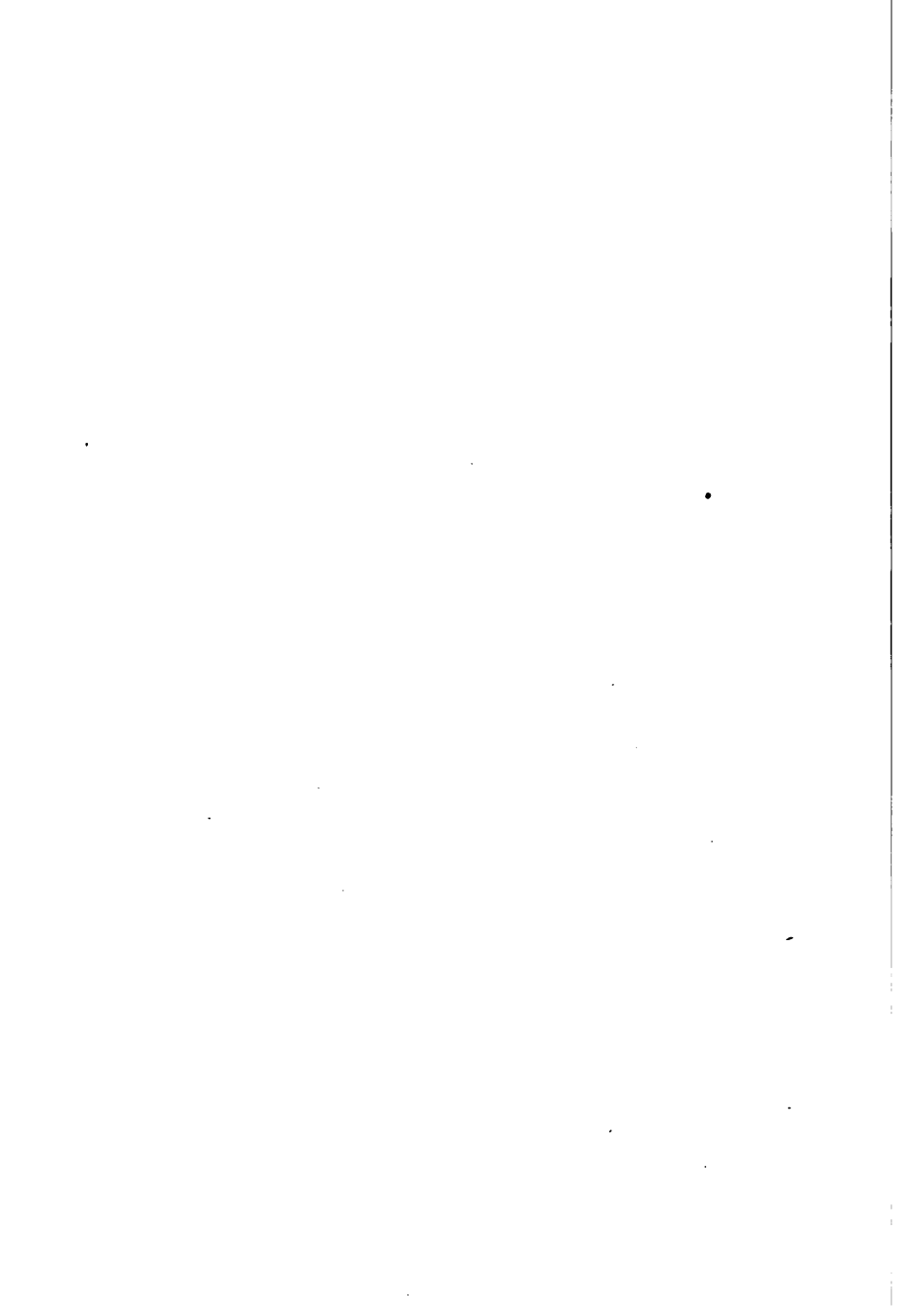
**301.** Forum Rŏmānum erat inter Capitŏlium et Palātium. Primŏ parvae tabernae undique erant. Post multŏs annŏs cōsulēs et imperātŏrēs templa in Forŏ aedificāvērunt.

In templum Concordiae senātŏrēs conveniēbant. In rŏstris Cicerŏ et alii ōrātŏrēs ad populum ōrātiŏnēs habēbant. Undique altae columnae atque simulācra deŏrum et virŏrum erant.

Togātī Rŏmānī in Forum saepe conveniēbant. Hinc Viā



The Forum in Ancient Rome.



Sacrā legiōnēs Rōmānae ad bellum ēdūcēbantur. Viā Sacrā legiōnēs victōrēs magnīs cum clāmōribus in Forum veniēbant. Nunc est Forum locus dēsertus, et ruīnae undique videntur. Nihil manet nisi pauca vēstigia antiquae glōriae Rōmānae.



A Roman in the Toga.

## LESSON XXXVI

### INFINITIVES, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE

---

*Vita sine litteris mors est. — Life without letters — books — is death.*

---

302. The table below shows the formation of infinitives for all conjugations.

#### ACTIVE INFINITIVES

**Present infinitive** = *Present stem* + *-re* : *portāre*.

**Perfect infinitive** = *Perfect stem* + *-isse* : *portāvisse*.

**Future infinitive** = *Participial stem* + *-ū* + *endings of magnus + esse* : *portātūrus esse*.

#### PASSIVE INFINITIVES

**Present infinitive** = *Present stem* + *-rī* : *portārī* (except in the third conjugation, which makes its Present infinitive = *Present stem* with *e* changed to *i* : *dūcī*).

**Perfect infinitive** = *Participial stem* + *endings of magnus + esse* : *portātus esse*.

**Future infinitive** = *Participial stem* + *-um* + *Irī* : *portātum Irī*.

(a) Following the above rules write all the infinitives of **dō, moneō, dūcō, audiō, sum, possum**. Compare §§ 586, 587, 588, 589, 591.

303. **Indirect Quotation.** — The words or thoughts of a speaker may be stated directly or indirectly. A *direct quotation*, giving the exact words of the speaker, is stated thus: *He said, "The soldiers will fight."*

An *indirect quotation*, giving the thought but not the exact words of the speaker, is expressed thus: *He said that the soldiers would fight.*

In an indirect quotation in Latin the word *that* is not expressed and the statement is rendered by an infinitive with its subject in the accusative case: *Dixit militēs pugnātūrōs esse.*

**304. Tenses in Indirect Quotation.** — Indirect quotation or *indirect discourse* occurs most frequently after verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing*, and the like.

(1) The *same* time as that of the principal verb is denoted by the *present* infinitive.<sup>1</sup>

(2) Time *after* that of the principal verb is denoted by the *future* infinitive.

(3) Time *before* that of the principal verb is denoted by the *perfect* infinitive.<sup>2</sup>

(1) *He says that the soldiers are fighting.* *Dicit militēs pugnāre.*

(2) *He says that the soldiers have fought.* *Dicit militēs pugnāvisse.*

(3) *He says that the soldiers will fight.* *Dicit militēs pugnātūrōs esse.*

(1) *He said that the soldiers were being led.* *Dixit militēs dūcī.*

(2) *He said that the soldiers had been led.* *Dixit militēs ductōs esse.*

(3) *He said that the soldiers would be led.* *Dixit militēs ductum iri.*

### 305.

### VOCABULARY

*mors*, *mor'tis*, (-ium), *f.*, *death.*

*mūnī'tiō*, -ō'nis, *f.*, *fortification.*

*intel'legō*, *intelle'gere*, *intel-lē'xi*, *intellēc'tus*, *understand.*

*dī'cō*, -ere, *dī'xi*, *dic'tus*, *say.*

*pu'tō*, -ā're, -ā'vi, -ā'tus, *think, believe.*

*sci'ō*, *sci're*, *sci'vi*, *sci'tus*, *know.*

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 693, c.

<sup>2</sup> Compare § 693, d.

**306. What Latin words do the following suggest?**

mortal      science      diction      intelligence

**RULE**

**307. Accusative and Infinitive.** — The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative case.<sup>1</sup>

*I know that the boy will come. Sciō puerum ventūrum esse.*

*He thought that the children had remained. Putāvit liberōs mānsisse.*

**EXERCISES ON FORMS**

**308. Translate; give the reason for the mood, tense, and ending of each infinitive:**

1. Scīverunt legiōnem ventūram esse. 2. Dixit hostēs victōs esse. 3. Dīcet librum missum esse. 4. Putō imperātōrem victum esse. 5. Sciō virum victūrum esse, victum iri, vinci. 6. Intellegunt Germānōs pugnāre. 7. Intellēxerunt Germānōs pugnāre.

**309. Translate:**

1. We think that the ambassador has been sent, is being sent. 2. I knew that the shout had been heard, would be heard, was being heard. 3. I understood that the children were writing, would write, had written. 4. They said that the goddesses had been loved, would be loved. 5. The Romans thought that the gods heard, would hear.

**EXERCISES****310. Translate:**

(a) 1. Putāmus aliōs fortēs fuisse, aliōs periculum timuisse. 2. Intellēxit Gallōs solōs bellum nōn gestūrōs esse. 3. Dīcit exercitum Rōmānum in finēs Gallōrum dūci posse. 4. Scīvi

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 715.



liberōs domum mitti. 5. Lēgātus obsidibus nūntiat neutrum diū vīvere posse.

(b) 1. Caesar cum tōtō exercitū brevissimō tempore milia passuum quīque venīre potuit. 2. Mūnitiō maxima erat. 3. Pauci hominēs timōre mortis vincuntur. 4. Rōmāni virtūte Gallōs superāvērunt. 5. Puer patris omnibus rēbus similis erat.

### 311. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Caesar knew that the Roman soldiers were not inferior. 2. He says that many things will often be heard at Rome. 3. All announced that the army was being led into one place. 4. We understood that Caesar was coming to the fortification at daybreak. 5. We heard that the women and children had been sent into the town.

(b) 1. Late in the day the camp was easily fortified. 2. He will announce that the soldiers have been seen on the top of the hill by the forces of the enemy. 3. The lieutenants thought that Caesar had enlisted five legions in hither Gaul. 4. The slaves fear death. 5. We understand that Caesar was the friend of the tenth legion.

### ORAL EXERCISES

#### 312. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid Caesar dīxit? 2. Scīvistīne Caesarem hostēs vīcisse? 3. Quam diū dux dīxit milītēs pugnātūrōs esse? 4. Ubi Rōmam vēnistī? 5. Quot cohortēs legiō habet?

## LESSON XXXVII

### DUO AND TRĒS

*Facta non verba. — Deeds not words.*

313. Learn the declension of *duo* and *trēs*, § 575.

314.

#### VOCABULARY

<i>Bel'gae, -ā'rum, m., Belgians.</i>	<i>dīmit'tō, -ere, -m'fāī, -mis'sus,</i>
<i>spēs, spe'ī, f., hope.</i>	<i>send in different directions, dis-</i>
<i>cōnfir'mō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus,</i>	<i>miss.</i>
<i>assert, strengthen, establish.</i>	<i>exis'timō, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus,</i>
<i>duo, duae, duo, adj., two.</i>	<i>think, reckon.</i>
<i>trēs, trēs, tria, adj., three.</i>	<i>un'dique, adv., on all sides.</i>

315. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

dual                  trinity                  confirm                  dismiss

#### RULE

316. **Ablative of Separation.** — Separation is expressed by the ablative either with or without a preposition.

*The men are freed from danger.*    **Virī periculō liberantur.**

*You will free me from great fear.*    **Magnō mē metū liberābis.**

#### EXERCISES

317. *Translate:*

(a) 1. *Homō timōre mortis liberārī potest.*    2. *Alium morte liberābō, alium periculō.*    3. *Sciūsus equum brevissimō tempore mīlia passuum duo currere potuisse.*    4. *Nāvēs hostium vēlocissimē nāvigāre nōn poterant.*    5. *Dux centuriōnibus nūntiābat Rōmānōs duo proelia paucis diēbus<sup>1</sup> pugnātūrōs esse.*

<sup>1</sup> § 147.

(b) 1. Alii magnās rēs scribere possunt, alii multum dicunt, sed nihil scribunt. 2. Putāmus ducem defessōs militēs dīmīssūrum esse. 3. Principēs cōfirmāverunt altōs montēs undique vidēri posse. 4. Belgae existimāverunt spem victōriae maximam esse. 5. Caesar vidit omnēs Belgās in ūnum locum vēnisse.

**318. Translate:**

(a) 1. The lieutenant was freed from all fear. 2. The Belgians knew that the soldiers could very easily come three miles in one hour. 3. The hope of neither of the two leaders was very great. 4. Caesar had enlisted two legions, and thought that the Germans could be conquered. 5. The centurion asserted that the auxiliary troops were not good soldiers.

(b) 1. Men are always very near to the gods. 2. The ships were detained for a few hours. 3. A private soldier of the first rank was very easily conquered. 4. They reckoned that a thousand men had been dismissed from the left wing of the army. 5. The messenger ran many miles as swiftly as possible and announced the danger to a centurion of the first rank.

**ORAL EXERCISE**

**319. Answer these questions in Latin:**

1. Uter puer in agrō erat? 2. Vicēruntne Gallōs aestāte?  
3. Victōriaene ūnius lēgātī multae sunt? 4. Num militēs ā dextrō cornū pugnābunt? 5. Ubi Caesar castra pōnet?

## LESSON XXXVIII

### THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS IN -ĭŏ

*Populus vult decipi. — The people like to be deceived.\**

**320.** A few verbs of the third conjugation end in -ĭŏ. They have the forms of the fourth conjugation wherever the fourth has i followed by a vowel.

(a) According to the above rule conjugate *capĭŏ* in the indicative and infinitive, active and passive. Compare § 590.

#### 321.

#### VOCABULARY

<i>ca'piŏ, -ere, cē'pi, cap'tus, take,</i> <i>seize, capture.</i>	<i>cōnfi'ciŏ, -ere, fē'ci, fec'tus,<sup>1</sup></i> <i>do thoroughly, accomplish.</i>
<i>inci'piŏ, -ere, -cē'pi, -cep'tus,<sup>1</sup></i> <i>begin, undertake.</i>	<i>interfi'ciŏ, -ere, -fē'ci, -fec'tus,<sup>1</sup></i> <i>kill.</i>
<i>reci'piŏ, -ere, -cē'pi, -cep'tus,<sup>1</sup></i> <i>take back, receive, (with sē)</i> <i>retreat.</i>	<i>ia'ciŏ, -ere, iē'ci, iac'tus, throw.</i> <i>rei'ciŏ, -ere, -iē'ci, -iec'tus,<sup>1</sup></i> <i>throw back, repulse.</i>
<i>fa'ciŏ, -ere, fē'ci, fac'tus, make,</i> <i>do, (with iter) march.</i>	<i>dē, prep. with abl., about, con-</i> <i>cerning, from.</i>

#### 322. What Latin words do the following suggest?

incipient      reject      reception      factory

#### EXERCISES

#### 323. Translate:

(a) 1. Dux militibus tela capiēbat. 2. Multi et fortēs viri in bellō interfecti sunt. 3. Cōpiā Caesaris celeriter sē

---

\* Attributed to Cardinal Carafa.

<sup>1</sup> Note the change in the present and participial stems when the simple verb is compounded.

recipient. 4. Militēs ē superiōre locō pīla iēcērunt. 5. Dextrum cornū exercitūs ad mūnitiōnem incredibīlī celeritatē iter facit.

(b) 1. Rēgis frāter et ūnus ē filiīs capientur. 2. Cōnfirmābāmus oppidum facile capī posse. 3. Dē deīs et deābus multa audīvimus. 4. Diēbus decem exercitus in urbem sē recēpit. 5. Rōmānī intellēxērunt Caesarem bellum incēpisse et cōfectūrum esse.

### 324. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The enemy marched all day. 2. We think that the forces will retreat late in the day. 3. The enemy will be repulsed in a few hours. 4. The Belgae had great hope concerning the battle but many were killed. 5. The general began the attack but was captured at daybreak.

(b) 1. The Germans were greater than the Romans in size. 2. Many very beautiful things had been made by hand. 3. The citizens thought that the cavalry could not be freed from the danger. 4. The Romans surpassed the Gauls in courage. 5. The leader had said that the legions would conquer.

### ORAL EXERCISES

#### 325. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quid manibus facere potes? 2. Quot discipulī in primō ordine sunt? 3. Puellaene lapidēs bene iaciunt? 4. Nōne multi virī in proeliō interfectī sunt? 5. Līberīne amicī amicīs sunt?

## LESSON XXXIX

### NUMERALS

*Post nubila Phoebus.*—“Every cloud has a silver lining.”\*

**326.** The following list contains the **numerals** up to *twenty*:<sup>1</sup>

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1. ū'nus, ū'na, ū'num	prī'mus, <i>first</i> .
2. du'ō, du'ae, du'ō	secun'dus, <i>second</i> .
3. trēs, tri'a	ter'tius, <i>third</i> .
4. quat'tuor	quār'tus
5. quīn'que	quīn'tus
6. sex	sex'tus
7. sep'tem	sep'timus
8. oc'tō	octā'vus
9. no'vēm	nō'nus
10. de'cem	de'cimus
11. ūn'decim	ūnde'cimus
12. duo'decim	duode'cimus
13. tre'decim	ter'tius de'cimus
14. quattuor'decim	quār'tus de'cimus
15. quīn'decim	quīn'tus de'cimus
16. sē'decim	sex'tus de'cimus
17. septen'decim	sep'timus de'cimus
18. duodēvigīn'tī	duodēvicē'simus
19. undēvigīn'tī	undēvicē'simus

\* Literally: *After clouds, Phoebus* (the sun-god). Compare Longfellow's

“Be still, sad heart, and cease repining,  
Behind the clouds is the sun still shining.”

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 676. For a more complete list of numerals, see § 579.

## CARDINALS

## ORDINALS

20. vigin'ti

vicē'simus

21. vigin'ti ū'nus (ūnus et  
vigin'ti)

vicē'simus prī'mus

30. trigin'tā

tricē'simus

(a) The declension of *ūnus*, *duo*, and *trēs* has been given. The cardinals from *quattuor* to *centum*, *one hundred*, inclusive, are indeclinable. The hundreds (except *centum*) are declined like the plural of *magnus*. The ordinals are declined like *magnus*.

## 327.

## VOCABULARY

ag'men,<sup>1</sup> -minis, n., *army* (on the march), *line of march*; *novissimum agmen*, rear; *primum agmen*, van.

no'vus, -a, -um, *new*; no'vus mī'les, *recruit*.

cer'tus, -a, -um, *certain*; cer'tiōrem (or certiōrēs) fa'cere, *inform*.<sup>2</sup>

sep'tem, num. adj., indecl., *seven*.

quār'tus, -a, -um, *fourth*.

cen'tum, num. adj., indecl., *one hundred*.

quīn'tus, -a, -um, *fifth*.

me'dius, -a, -um, *middle*; mediā

nocte, *at midnight*; mediō

colle, *halfway up the hill*.

328. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

November      quarter      medium      novelty

## EXERCISES

329. *Translate:*

- (a) 1. Mediā nocte Caesaris castra oppugnābantur.  
2. Quārtā hōrā diēi impetus in novissimum agmen factus est. 3. Scīvit nautās dē altitūdine flūminis certiōrēs factōs esse. 4. Novī mīlitēs mīlia passuum septem iter facient.  
5. Caesar dē agmine certior factus erat.

- (b) 1. Prīmum agmen sē nōn recipiet sed impetum incipiet. 2. Dē victōriā nautārum Caesarem certiōrem fēcerant.  
3. Quīntō annō belli audiebāmus urbem ā decimā legiōne capi.

<sup>1</sup> *aciēs*, *army* (in battle array); *exercitus*, *army* (a body of trained soldiers).

<sup>2</sup> Usually followed by *dē* with the ablative.

4. Novissimum agmen in mediō colle visum erat. 5. Tertiā hōrā proeliī multī et magnī lapidēs dē mūrō ā fortibus militibus iaciēbantur.

### 330. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The recruits marched seven miles. 2. We have been informed about the death of the leader. 3. At sunset the rear will be attacked by the enemy. 4. We know that the four legions will come home. 5. Late in the day we understood that the whole army had been informed concerning the death of the general.



A Roman Altar.

(b) 1. They are building a wall one hundred feet long and eight feet high. 2. We heard that the lieutenant had lived six years in camp. 3. We assert that the soldiers on the left wing fought as bravely

as possible, but were killed. 4. The father was faithful to his children and informed (them) concerning the danger. 5. At midnight we heard that the march had been accomplished very quickly.

### PHRASES FROM CAESAR

#### 331. *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Iter facere. 2. Sē recipere. 3. Mediā nocte. 4. Mediō colle. 5. Certiōrem facere.



## LESSON XL

### PREPOSITIONS

---

*Pro aris et focis. — For home and fireside.\**

---

332. The ablative is always used with

**ā** or **ab**, **dē**,  
**cum**, **ex** or **ē**,  
**sine**, **prō**, **prae**.

333. The accusative is used with about thirty prepositions; the most common are **ad**, **ante**, **apud**, **circum**, **contra**, **inter**, **per**, **trans**.

334. Two prepositions, **in** and **sub**, govern both accusative and ablative; with the accusative they denote motion *toward* a place, and with the ablative, rest *in* a place.

### 335. VOCABULARY

**adulēs/cōns, -entis, m.**, *youth, young man.*

**adven'tus, -ūs, m.**, *arrival.*

**iniū'ria, -ae, f.**, *injury, wrong.*

**iu'gum, -i, n.**, *yoke.*

**stō, stā're, ste'ti, stā'tus**, *stand.*

**prō**, prep. (with abl.), *in front of, for*, { *instead of.*  
*in defense of.*

**sine**, prep. (with abl.), *without.* { *in behalf of.*

**sub**, { (with acc. after verbs of motion), *under.*

{ (with abl. to denote place), *at the foot of, under.*

---

\* Literally: *For altars and hearths.*

**336. What Latin words do the following suggest?**

adventure      station      injury      adolescent

**EXERCISES****337. Translate:**

(a) 1. Multi adulescentes pro patria vivunt. 2. Animalia pulchra sub arbore saepissimè steterunt. 3. Cohortès milia passuum tria Rómā iter fecerunt. 4. Multò diè legatī ad Caesarem vènerunt. 5. Adventū Caesaris primum agmen sub iugum missum erat.

(b) 1. Caesar de adventū adulescentis certior factus est. 2. Castra hostium sine periculò capī nōn possunt. 3. Posterò diè Caesaris equitès cum Helvètiis pugnāvērunt et victi sunt. 4. Equi equitum sub arboribus steterant. 5. Urbs diū et acriter oppugnāta est sed capī nōn potuit.

**338. Translate:**

(a) 1. The enemy will kill a few of the youths. 2. At the arrival of the Belgians the leader stood in the van. 3. Fathers always work for their sons and daughters. 4. The man at the foot of the mountain received a very severe injury. 5. Some were sent under the yoke, others were taken as hostages.

(b) 1. We think that the letters have been sent to Rome. 2. The swift horseman had been informed of the danger by the voice of his leader. 3. In the summer the days are long and the nights very short. 4. Stones were hurled from the fortification by the bravest men. 5. We knew that the teacher would lead the children home.

**PHRASES FROM CAESAR****339. Commit to memory with the translations:**

1. Sub monte. 2. Sub iugum. 3. Primum agmen. 4. Novissimum agmen. 5. Novi milites.

## LESSON XLI

### REVIEW

---

*Nemo me impune lacessit. — No one molests me unhurt.\**

---

**340. Derivatives.** — Write all the English words you can, which seem to be derived from the following:

adventus	iaciō	capiō	medius
stō	iniūria	mors	ūnus
centum	certus	dicō	faciō
duo	quārtus	incipiō	novus

**341. Form Drill.** — 1. Give the rules for the formation of active infinitives. Of passive infinitives. 2. Give the infinitives, active and passive, of *dō*, *moveō*, *mittō*, *capiō*, *veniō*. 3. Which infinitive of the third conjugation is peculiar in its form? 4. How are *-iō* verbs of the third conjugation conjugated? 5. How can you tell whether an *-iō* verb is of the third or of the fourth conjugation? 6. Count to *trigintā* in Latin. 7. Decline *ūnus*, *duo*, *trēs*, *deus*, *dea*, *alius*.

**342. Word Drill.** — 1. Distinguish between the meanings of *exercitus*, *agmen*, and *aciēs*. 2. Give the nominative, the genitive, and the gender of the Latin words for the following:

death	yoke	youth	arrival
fortification	injury	width	length
goddess	god	hope	line of march

---

\* The motto of Scotland, referring to the thistle.

**343. Syntax Drill.** — 1. Name two uses for the infinitive and illustrate each by a Latin sentence. 2. Name the prepositions that always govern the ablative case. 3. Name three prepositions that govern the accusative case. 4. What two prepositions govern both accusative and ablative? 5. Illustrate by an English sentence the ablative of separation. 6. Illustrate by an English sentence the ablative of specification.

**344. Composition.** — State in Latin ten facts that you have heard to-day. (Have the class translate each fact as stated.)

#### EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

**345.** 1. Gladiis in hostēs impetum incipiēmus. 2. Scripsisti pulchrās rēs a liberis factās esse. 3. Tōtam noctem exercitus iter fecit. 4. Existimāvit duodecim annōs bellum gestum esse. 5. Caesar novōs milites in novissimō agmine posuit. 6. Mille viri Rōmā missi erant. 7. Adventus Rōmānōrum ab Helvētiis audiēbatur. 8. Putāvimus milites mediā nocte in oppidum mitti. 9. Longās litterās comitibus scribunt. 10. Vēnerunt Rōmam difficilī viā.

#### TARPEIA

**346.** Sabīni cum Rōmānis bellum gerēbant et agrōs Rōmānōrum vāstābant. Rōmam exercitum dūcēbant et Capitōlium oppugnābant sed urbem capere nōn poterant. Ubi Rōmā nōn longē aberant, puellam Tarpēiam, filiam Rōmāni, portantem (*carrying*) aquam extrā moenia vidēbant.

Dux Sabīnōrum putāvit puellam in urbem exercitum dūcere posse, et dixit sē (*he*) Tarpēiae praeium datūrum esse. Puella dixit sē (*she*) habitūram esse rēs quās (*which*) in sinistris manibus gererent.

Aureōs ānulōs et armillās gerēbant. Brevī tempore Sabīnī in urbe stant et Tarpēiae praemium dare parant. In puellam scūta iaciunt nam scūta Sabīnōrum erant in sinistrīs manibus. Tarpēia interficitur; Sabīnī Capitōlium occupant.



The Tarpel Rock at Rome.

## LESSON XLII

### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

*Absit omen! — May there be no ill omen.\**

**347. Present Subjunctive.** — *First conjugation = present stem* (with *a* changed to *e*) + *personal endings*: **portem**, passive, **porter**.

(a) Learn the present subjunctive of **portō**, active and passive, and of **sum** and **possum**.<sup>1</sup> No translation is given for the subjunctive in the paradigms, as the meaning of a subjunctive varies with its use.

**348. Volitive in Independent Sentences.** — The subjunctive may be used in independent sentences to express something as *willed*. It is then called the *volitive subjunctive* and derives its name from **volō**, *I will*. The negative used with it is **nē**. There are many varieties of it. For example, it is used in *exhortations* or *commands* in the first and third persons.

*Let us be good.* **Bonī sīmus.**

*Let them not fight.* **Nē pugnent.**

### EXERCISES

**349. Translate:**

(a) 1. **Nē in palūde stēmus.** 2. **Caesar dux<sup>2</sup> sit tōtam vītā.** 3. **Nē vulnerēmur.** 4. **Quam fortissimī sīmus.** 5. **Summum montem occupēmus.**

(b) 1. **Māter dē periculō liberōrum certior facta erat.** 2. **Audīvistī magnum oppidum mūrō et fossā celeriter mūnī-**

\* Literally: *May the omen be absent* / Just as we say: *Knocking on wood*!

<sup>1</sup> See § 586 and § 591.

<sup>2</sup> See § 28.

- tum esse. 3. Scimus domum domini pulcherrimam fuisse.  
4. Sinistrum cornu quam dextrum minus facile vincetur.  
5. Quinque de militibus sub iugum missi erant et interfecti sunt.



Augustus Caesar.

**350. *Translate:***

(a) 1. Let us build very large ships. 2. Let part of the youths stand halfway up the hill without fear. 3. Let us be faithful to our friends. 4. Let us fight long and well for our king and our country. 5. Let the weary youths be praised for their great bravery.

(b) 1. We think the hostage ought to be given to the conqueror. 2. A mountain is many feet higher than a hill. 3. At the arrival of the recruits the weary soldiers are freed from danger. 4. We knew that Caesar's forces would capture the bands of the enemy. 5. Under a large tree halfway up the hill part of the soldiers could be seen.

**ORAL EXERCISE****351. *Answer these questions in Latin:***

1. Estne superior pars mūri nigra? 2. Suntne sex pueri in secundō ordine? 3. Estne pāx cārior hominibus quam bellum? 4. Nārrābisne magistrō fābulam dē Caesare? 5. Labōrābisne prō mātrem et patrem?



## LESSON XLIII

### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

*Crescat scientia. — May knowledge increase!\**

**352.** *The present subjunctive of the second and fourth conjugations = present stem + a + personal endings, mone-a m, audi a m.*

*The present subjunctive of the third conjugation = present stem (with e changed to a) + personal endings, dūca m.*

(a) Learn the present subjunctive, active, and passive of *moneō*, *dūcō*, *audiō*, and *capīō*, §§ 587, 588, 589, 590.

**353. Subjunctive of Purpose.** — In English, purpose is often expressed by the infinitive, *We fight to conquer*. But in Latin prose purpose is expressed *not* by the infinitive but *by the subjunctive*. It is introduced by *ut, that, in order that*,<sup>1</sup> if the purpose is positive, by *nō*, *that not, lest*, if it is negative.

*We fight to overcome. Pugnāmus ut superēmus.*

*We fight that we may not be overcome. Pugnāmus nō superēmur.*

### 354.

#### VOCABULARY

<i>persuādeō</i> , -ē're, <i>persuā'sī</i> , <i>persuā'sus</i> , <i>persuade</i> , governs the dat., followed by <i>ut</i> or <i>nō</i> with the subjunctive.	<i>ut</i> , conj., <i>that</i> . <i>nō</i> , conj., <i>that not, lest</i> . <i>per</i> , prep. (with acc.), <i>through</i> . <i>rēg'num</i> , -ī, n., <i>royal power, kingdom</i> . <i>crē'ber</i> , -bra, -brum, <i>frequent</i> .
<i>prohi'bēō</i> , -ē're, -uī, -itus, <i>keep off, hinder</i> .	

\* The motto of Chicago University.

<sup>1</sup> After verbs of fearing *ut* is translated *that not*; and *nō*, *that*.

**355.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

persuasion      prohibit      itinerary      submarine

**EXERCISES**

**356.** *Translate:*

(a) 1. Pugnāmus fortiter ut à duce laudēmur.    2. Nūntiōs mittit ut itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant.    3. Militēs celerimē currunt nē hostēs novissimum agmen videant.    4. Virō



The Roman Forum To-day.

Compare this with the picture facing page 106.

persuādet ut rēgnum in civitatē occupet.    5. Veniēmus celeriter, ut dē periculō adulescentem certiorē faciamus.

(b) 1. Cohortēs Rōmānae timent nē in viā vincantur.  
2. Civitatibus quam plūrimis Caesarem amicum esse dixit.  
3. Caesar memoriā tenet obsidēs multōs receptōs esse.

4. Dicit imperatorem posse iter nulli<sup>1</sup> per provinciam dare.  
5. Crebri nuntii de adventu copiarum ad Caesarem missi erant.

**357. Translate:**

(a) 1. We come to make peace. 2. Let us march through the territory of the Gauls. 3. We fear that Caesar holds the royal power at Rome. 4. Let us persuade the soldiers to pitch camp late in the day. 5. The leader fears that the soldiers are not hurling as many javelins as possible against the enemy.

(b) 1. Caesar said that the Roman people would make peace with the Gauls. 2. A man will be sent to warn the captive. 3. We shall seize the top of the mountain very easily. 4. All think that Marcus will kill the young man. 5. Let the faithful father advise his son more often.

**ORAL EXERCISES**

**358. Answer these questions in Latin:**

1. Dixistine puerum cum diligentia laboravisse? 2. Scribitisne libenter litteras? 3. Quid dicis? 4. Venisne ut matrem videas? 5. Nonne Caesar cum Gallis saepe pugnavit?

---

<sup>1</sup> See § 56.

## LESSON XLIV

### SEQUENCE OF TENSES

---

*Caveat emptor. — Let the buyer beware.\**

---

**359. Imperfect Subjunctive Active of All Conjugations = present stem + *re* + personal endings; or present infinitive + personal endings.**

**Perfect Subjunctive Active of All Conjugations = perfect stem + *erī* + personal endings.**

**Pluperfect Subjunctive Active of All Conjugations = perfect stem + *isse* + personal endings; or perfect infinitive + personal endings.**

**360.** According to above rules conjugate the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect subjunctive active of **portō**, **moneō**, **dūcō**, **audiō**, **capiō**, also **sum** and **possum**. Conjugate all but **sum** and **possum** in the passive, following the same general plan as that used in the passive indicative. Compare §§ 586, 587, 588, 589, 590, 591.

### 361.

#### VOCABULARY

**impe'rium**, -ī, n., *command, control, military authority.*

**senā'tor**, -ō'ris, m., *senator.*

**le'gō**, -ere, **lē'gī**, **lēc'tus**, *read, choose.*

**dē'ligō**, -ere, -**lē'gī**, -**lēc'tus**, *choose from, gather, select.*

**ne'gō**, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *deny, say not.*

**im'perō**, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *order, levy.* It governs the dative, and is followed by **ut** or **nō** with the subjunctive.

---

\* We say: *Buyer's risk.*

362. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

imperative      legible      negative      senatorial

### RULES

363. **Classes of Tenses.** — Tenses are divided into two classes, *principal* and *historical*.

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Principal Tenses</i>	Present	{ Present Perfect
	Future	
	Future perfect	
<i>Historical Tenses</i>	Imperfect	{ Imperfect Pluperfect
	Perfect	
	Pluperfect	

364. **Sequence of Tenses.**<sup>1</sup> — Generally speaking, principal tenses in the indicative are followed by principal tenses in the subjunctive, and historical tenses by historical tenses.

The present and imperfect subjunctive are used to denote action incomplete at the time of the main verb, and the perfect and pluperfect subjunctive denote action complete at the time of the main verb.

### EXERCISES ON SUBJUNCTIVES

365. 1. Venimus ut videamus. 2. Persuadent viris ut pugnent, capiant, moneant. 3. Persuadēbat senātorī nē pugnāret, caperet, monēret. 4. Militem mittet ut currat, videat, laudet. 5. Lēgātōs mīsit ut monērent, persuādērent, vincerent.

366. 1. We come to attack, to conquer. 2. We came to attack, to conquer. 3. We persuaded the soldiers not to give, attack, kill. 4. The man is sent to hear, know, fight. 5. Caesar persuades the lieutenant to think, to say, to know.

<sup>1</sup> Notice that the first part of this rule shows whether to use a *principal* or *historical* tense; the second part shows *which one* of the principal or historical tenses to use.

## EXERCISES

**367.** *Translate: explain the mood and tense of each subjunctive and infinitive:*

(a) 1. Trēs senātōrēs dēlēctī erant. 2. Veniam ut dē bellō amicum certiorē faciam. 3. Nē fēminās et liberōs interficiāmus. 4. Fortissimē pugnāvērunt ut ā duce laudarentur. 5. Imperātor lēgātum dēlēgit ut in ceteriōre Galliā novōs milītēs cōscriberet.

(b) 1. Multās rēs dē imperiō Rōmānōrum lēgit. 2. Lēgātō imperāverāmus ut viā hostēs prohiberet. 3. Negāvērunt equitēs quam peditēs fortius pugnāvisse. 4. Dicit Germānōs bellum cum Gallis plūrimōs annōs gestūrōs esse. 5. Scīvimus puerum decem annis<sup>1</sup> maiōrem nātū esse quam puellam.

**368.** *Translate:*

(a) 1. Five legions were levied in hither Gaul. 2. Let us not kill the consul. 3. We ordered the senators to send hostages and make peace. 4. We shall send the boy home to read the book. 5. We send the lieutenant to persuade the soldiers not to leave the camp.

(b) 1. We have been informed that the soldiers were able to withstand all the attacks of the Germans. 2. The messenger informed Caesar of the victory. 3. The leader denied that the rear was being conquered. 4. Let us fight long and fiercely to conquer the enemies of Rome. 5. The Helvetians said that their fields had been laid waste.

## ORAL EXERCISE

**369.** *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Cūr vēnerat? 2. Quam diū lēgistī? 3. Quis discipulis persuāsit ut legerent? 4. Cūr nūntium misistī? 5. Mittēbārisne ut pugnārēs?

<sup>1</sup> See § 247.

## LESSON XLV

### DEPONENT VERBS

*Dulce et decorum est pro patria mori.*—Sweet and seemly it is to die for one's country.

**370.** A deponent<sup>1</sup> verb has passive forms with active meanings. These verbs are found in each of the four regular conjugations and are distinguished by the ending of the present infinitive: -ārī, -ērī, -ī, -īrī.

(a) A deponent verb has a few active forms; the future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund, and supines. The gerundive always has passive meanings; the perfect passive participle, sometimes.

#### 371.

#### VOCABULARY

cō'nor, -ārī, -ā'tus sum, (with infin.) try, attempt.	potior, -īrī, -ī'tus sum, get possession of.
fru'or, fru'ī, fru'c'tus sum, enjoy.	profic'cor, profic'cōī, profec'tus sum, set out.
mo'ror, <sup>2</sup> -ārī, -ā'tus sum, delay.	se'quor, se'quī, secū'tus sum, follow.
pa'tior, pa'tī, pas'sus sum, (with infin.) suffer, permit, allow.	ū'tor, ū'tī, ū'sus sum, use.
polli'ceor, -ērī, -itus sum, (with fut. infin.) promise.	ve'reor, -ērī, -itus sum, fear, be afraid.

**372.** What Latin words do the following suggest?

patient                  sequel                  use                  reverse

#### EXERCISES ON FORMS

**373.** Translate:

- Verēbimur, potiēmur, ūtiminī, ūtāmur, pollicēberis.
- Sequeris, sequēris, verētur, cōnētur, potiētur.
- Patia-

<sup>1</sup> Deponent verbs are so named because they lay aside the active forms.

<sup>2</sup> Do not confuse this with morior, morī, mortuus sum, to die.

bar, morātus est, potīrī, sequī, proficiscāmur. 4. Proficiscar, proficiscetur, ūtītur, ūtī, fruī. 5. Fructus sum, veritus eram, patiēbātur, morer.

**374. Translate:**

1. To fear, he will have set out, I shall use, let us promise.
2. He was getting possession of, they will follow, I use.
3. We shall follow, they had enjoyed, you were trying. 4. To follow, let us set out, he will follow, I shall permit. 5. They will use, to delay, let them allow, we had read.

**RULE**

**375. Deponents with the Ablative.** — The verbs *ūtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vescor*, and their compounds, regularly govern the ablative case.

*We enjoy good books. Bonīs librīs fruimur.*  
*The soldier uses a sword. Miles gladiō ūtītur.*

**EXERCISES**

**376. Translate:**

(a) 1. Cōnābimur castrīs potīrī. 2. Gladiīs optimīs ūteris.  
 3. Multī virī frūmentō vivunt. 4. Imperātor pollicitus est peditēs victoriā fructūrōs esse. 5. Putant trēs virōs tōtius Galliae imperiō potīrī posse.

(b) 1. Proficiscentur ut senātōrēs videant. 2. Equitēs mīlia passuum multa hostēs secūtī sunt. 3. Senātōrēs impetūs hostium vereantur. 4. Nē morēmur in urbe tōtam noctem. 5. Pater adulēscētī imperāvit ut liberōs librōs bonōs legere paterētur.

**377. Translate:**

(a) 1. All had set out at daybreak. 2. We shall follow the enemy many miles. 3. The Romans used very many



recruits. 4. We tried to keep the enemy from the march.  
5. Many women enjoy beautiful pictures.

(b) 1. Caesar got possession of the larger part of the enemy's horses. 2. We promised that the ambassador would be at Rome late in the day. 3. Let us delay at Rome as long as



The Arch of Constantine at Rome.

possible. 4. The senator persuaded the general to allow the army to follow the enemy. 5. Let the commander-in-chief get possession of the royal power of all Gaul.

#### ORAL EXERCISE

**378.** *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Cūr tēlō ūtēbāris? 2. Quid verēberis? 3. Quam diū morātī sunt? 4. Ubi proficiēscēmur? 5. Pollicēbāturne lēgātum ducem secūtūrum esse?

## LESSON XLVI

### SUBJUNCTIVE OF RESULT

---

*Verbum sat sapienti. — A word to the wise is sufficient.\**

---

**379.** Result is expressed by the subjunctive introduced by *ut*. *Negative result* is introduced by *ut nōn*. The main clause often contains *tantus*, *so great*, *sic*, *ita*, *tam*, *so*, or some word of similar meaning. The rule for sequence of tenses, § 364, must be followed.

*The boy was so good that he was loved. Puer tam bonus erat ut amārētur.*

*Caesar's courage was such that he could not be conquered. Virtus Caesaris tanta erat ut vincī nōn posset.*

### 380.

#### VOCABULARY

*Brū'tus*, -ī, m., *Brutus*.

*oūs'tōs*, -ō's, m., *guard, watch, keeper*.

*impedīmen'tum*, -ī, n., *hindrance*; pl., *heavy baggage*.

*suspi'ciō*, -ō'nīs, f., *suspicion*.

*fu'giō*, -ere, *fū'gi*, —, *flee*.

*an'te*, prep., (with acc.) *before*.

*an'te*, adv., *before, ago*.

*pau'lō*, adv., (used as a degree of diff.) *by a little, a little*.

*pau'lum*, adv., *a little, somewhat*.

*tan'tus*, -a, -um, *so great, such*.

*ita*, adv., *so (manner)*.

*tam*, adv., *so (degree)*.

*plū'rimum posse*, *to be most powerful, to have great influence*.

**381.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

custodian

fugitive

impediment

suspicious

---

\* This is often abbreviated: *verb. sat* and *verb. sap.*

## RULES

**382. Adverbial Accusative.** — The accusative is often used adverbially to express degree or extent.

*He is very powerful. Plūrimum potest.*

*The teacher praised the girl much. Magister puellam multum laudāvit.*

**383. Adverbial Ablative.** — The ablative is often used adverbially, usually to express degree of difference.<sup>1</sup>

*A little before. Paulō ante.*

*He is much braver. Multō fortior est.*

## EXERCISES

**384. Translate; give the reason for the mood and tense of each verb:**

(a) 1. Paulō ante domī eram. 2. Rēgēs plūrimum poterant. 3. Ante sōlis occāsum paulum legāmus. 4. Nihil tam malum est ut peius esse nōn possit. 5. Tēlis ita ūsī sunt ut ūnum ex hostibus interficerent.

(b) 1. Bene pugnāre cōnātur ut ā duce bonō laudētur. 2. Suspiciōne servum liberāvimus ut vitā fruerētur. 3. Brūtō nūntiāre cōnēmur impedimenta hostium capta esse. 4. Tantus timor mortis omnēs cūstōdēs occupāvit ut tēlis nōn ūterentur. 5. Lēgātī tam verēbantur ut exercitum relinquerent et fugerent.

**385. Translate:**

(a) 1. The bravest are the most powerful. 2. Did you know that the enemy had fled a little while ago? 3. The bravery of the Romans was so great that they could not be conquered. 4. The boy read so that no one could understand (him). 5. The guard saw such danger that he did not allow the women to leave the town.

---

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 247.

(b) 1. The soldiers fought so bravely that they easily conquered the forces of the Helvetians. 2. They denied that the right wing of the army had fled from the top of the hill. 3. The citizens tried to flee from the fire. 4. They used the



The Forum at Pompeii.

With Vesuvius in the distance.

swords so well that they killed many of the enemy. 5. The leader promised that the cohorts would not delay, but would take possession of the enemy's heavy baggage.

#### ORAL EXERCISE

**386.** *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Estne puer tam bonus ut ab omnibus amētur? 2. Ubi Caesar impedimentis potiēbātur? 3. Nōne Caesar apud (among) Rōmānōs plūrimum potuit? 4. Fugiēbatne Rōmā suspiciōne? 5. Quam longē exercitum sequēris?

## LESSON XLVII

### REVIEW

---

*Non est vivere sed valere vita. — Not merely to exist, but to amount to something is life.\**

---

**387. Derivatives.** — Write all the English words you can that seem to be derived from the following :

persuādeō	prohibeō	rēgnum	imperium
senātor	legō	negō	patior
potior	sequor	ūtor	cūstōs
suspiciō	fugiō	dēligō	tantus

**388. Form Drill.** — 1. Give the formula for making each subjunctive tense, active and passive, in each of the four regular conjugations. 2. Name the *principal* tenses in the indicative and in the subjunctive. 3. Name the *historical* tenses in the indicative and in the subjunctive. 4. Imperātor tam celeriter venit ut hostēs impedimentis potiri nōn possint. Change *venit* to *vēnit* and complete the sentence. 5. Conjugate *possum* and *capio* through the subjunctive.

**389. Syntax Drill.** — 1. Define the *volitive* subjunctive. Give two examples in Latin. 2. Give the rule for the sequence of tenses. 3. How do we express purpose? result? 4. How is negative purpose introduced? negative result? 5. Complete this English sentence to ex-

---

\* Martial.

press a purpose: *He used weapons.* When the sentence is written in Latin, with what word will the clause be introduced? What tense must be used and why? 6. What case and mode follow *imperō*? 7. Define a deponent verb. 8. What verbs govern the ablative case?

#### EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

**390.** 1. Rēspūblica ab omnibus bonis cīvibus laudētur. 2. Manibus puer parvus multās et pulchrās rēs fēcit. 3. Tertiae legiōnī imperant, nē novissimum agmen hostium oppugnet. 4. Scīmus Germānōs Gallōs vīribus superāvisse. 5. Helvētīi mīlia passuum centum iter fēcērunt. 6. Militēs multōs diēs circum oppidum morābuntur. 7. Posterō diē cōpiae urbem reliquērunt et ad oppidum vērērunt. 8. Liber tam gravis erat ut ā puerō parvō portārī nōn posset. 9. Alii hominēs erant tam mali ut ā nullō amārentur. 10. Sequāmur adulēcentem ad mare.

#### NĀSICA ET ENNIUS

**391.** Nāsica et Ennius poēta amīcī erant. Nāsica ad Ennium vēnit et ad portam dē eō quaesīvit. Serva dixit, "Ennius domī nōn est." Vidēbat autem Ennium Nāsica, nihil tamen dixit, sed domum revertit.

Paucis post diēbus ad Nāsicam vēnit Ennius. Huic (*to him*) ipse Nāsica dixit, "Nōn sum domī." Tum Ennius dixit, "Nōnne cognōscō vōcem tuam?" Nāsica respondit, "Homō es impudens; ego servae tuae crēdidī: tū nōn mihi crēdis."

## LESSON XLVIII

### RELATIVE PRONOUN

*Qui non proficit, deficit. — Who does not advance, falls behind.*

**392.** The relative pronoun<sup>1</sup> is declined as follows :

**qui, who, which, that**

	SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.		MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>qui</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quod</b>		<b>qui</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quae</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>cu'ius</b>	<b>cu'ius</b>	<b>cu'ius</b>		<b>quō'rum</b>	<b>quā'rum</b>	<b>quō'rum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>cui</b>	<b>cui</b>	<b>cui</b>		<b>qui'bus</b>	<b>qui'bus</b>	<b>qui'bus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>quem</b>	<b>quam</b>	<b>quod</b>		<b>quōs</b>	<b>quās</b>	<b>quae</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>quō</b>	<b>quā</b>	<b>quō</b>		<b>qui'bus</b>	<b>qui'bus</b>	<b>qui'bus</b>

**393.**

#### VOCABULARY

**fu'ga**, -ae, f., *flight*.

**profec'tiō**, -ō'nis, f., *departure*.

**tū'tus**, -a, -um, *safe*.

**qui, quae, quod**, relative pronoun, *who, which, that*.

**ibi**, adv., *there*.

**in'colō**, -ere, -uī (intrans.),<sup>2</sup> *live, dwell*; (trans.) *inhabit*.

**po'pulo**r, -ā'rī, -ā'tus sum, *lay waste, devastate*.

**vi'deo**r, -ō'rī, vī'sus sum, *seem, appear*.

**394.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

depopulate      suspicion      scribe      transpose

#### RULE

**395. Agreement of the Relative.** — A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case is determined by its use in its own clause.

*I saw the man who came.* **Virum qui vēnit vidī.**

*The city which you see is Rome.* **Urbs quam vidēs Rōma est.**

<sup>1</sup> See §§ 659 and 661.

<sup>2</sup> See §§ 680 and 681.

(a) Notice that *qui* in the first example is masculine gender, singular number, third person, like its antecedent *virum*, but it is *nominative* case because it is the subject of the verb *vēnit*. In the second example the pronoun *quam* is feminine gender, singular number, third person, to agree with its antecedent *urbis*, but *accusative* because it is the object of the verb *vidēs*.

### EXERCISES

**396.** *Translate; give the reason for the gender, number, and case of each relative pronoun:*

(a) 1. Loca ad quae properāvimus tūta erant. 2. Vidērunt cūstōdem cuius amicus ex urbe missus erat. 3. Cūstōs cui periculum nūntiātum erat verēri visus est. 4. Pater viri dē quō dīxit multōs annōs Rōmae incoluit. 5. Profectiō fugae simillima vidētur.

(b) 1. Ad amicum litterās, quās scripsi, misi. 2. Ad flūmen quod est in extrēmīs hostium finibus properāvit atque ibi castra posuit. 3. Militēs missi sunt qui<sup>1</sup> finēs Gallōrum populārentur. 4. Militēs ā quibus castra mūnita sunt ad urbem venient. 5. Caesar per nūntiōs certior factus est trēs partēs cōpiarum trāns flūmen fuisse, quārtam partem in castris relictam esse.

**397.** *Translate:*

(a) 1. I heard that Caesar had come, had seen, had conquered. 2. We saw the men by whom the heavy baggage had been captured. 3. A boy whom I know is much better than his sister. 4. I saw the slave to whom the master had given very many gifts. 5. The city was not safe on account of the flight of the army.

(b) 1. Let us delay the departure of the enemy many days. 2. The Romans so laid waste the territory of their enemies that nothing was left. 3. They tried to make peace with Caesar in order that their fields might not be destroyed and

---

<sup>1</sup> *Qui* is often equivalent to *ut* and a personal pronoun.



their children killed. 4. They say that brave men are often very powerful and have gained possession of many large cities. 5. I knew the things about which Caesar had been informed by his lieutenant.

## ORAL EXERCISE

398. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Fuitne Caesaris profectiō similis fugae?
2. Esne puer quem Rōmae vidī?
3. Ubi legiōnēs Rōmānae erant?
4. Quibus fābulam nārrāvistī?
5. Vidistīne impedīmenta quibus imperātor potītus est?



The Ruins of Trajan's Villa near Rome.

## LESSON XLIX

### INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

*Quis custodiet ipsos custodes?—Who shall watch the watchmen themselves?\**

**399.** The interrogative pronouns<sup>1</sup> are the substantive, *quis*, *who?* and the adjective *quī*, *what?*

#### Quis, who?

	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>quis</b>	<b>quid</b>	<b>quī</b>	<b>quae</b>	<b>quae</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>cu'ius</b>	<b>cu'ius</b>	<b>quō'rum</b>	<b>quā'rum</b>	<b>quō'rum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>cui</b>	<b>cui</b>	<b>quī'bus</b>	<b>quī'bus</b>	<b>quī'bus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>quem</b>	<b>quid</b>	<b>quōs</b>	<b>quās</b>	<b>quae</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>quō</b>	<b>quō</b>	<b>quī'bus</b>	<b>quī'bus</b>	<b>quī'bus</b>

(a) The interrogative adjective *quī* is declined like the relative pronoun *quī*, § 392.

#### 400.

#### VOCABULARY

**quis, quid**, interrogative pronoun, *who, what?*  
**quī, quae, quod**, interrogative adjective, *what?*  
**Rho'danus, -ī, m.**, *Rhone*.  
**num**, interrogative particle, *whether*, when used in indirect questions.

**dīc**, (imperative) *tell*.  
**quamo'brem**, adv., *why*.  
**et . . . et**, both . . . and.  
**quae'rō, -ere, quae'sī'vī, quae'sī'-tus**, *ask, seek*. It takes the acc. of the thing and the abl. of the person with **ē, ex, ā, ab**, or **dē**.

**401.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

question	dictate	benediction	intervene
----------	---------	-------------	-----------

\* Juvenal.

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 662.

## RULE

**402. Indirect Questions.** — An indirect question follows a verb of knowing, asking, and the like, and is a subordinate clause introduced by an interrogative word.<sup>1</sup> It is expressed by the subjunctive.

## DIRECT QUESTION

*Where were they?*

**Ubi erant?**

*Where are you?*

**Ubi es?**

## INDIRECT QUESTION

*He heard where they were.*

**Audivit ubi essent.**

*He knows where you are.*

**Scit ubi sis.**

## EXERCISES

**403. Translate:**<sup>2</sup>

(a) 1. Sciō quis veniat, quis vēnerit. 2. Scīvit quis veniret, quis vēnisset. 3. Quaesivit cui liber datus esset. 4. Dic Caesarī cūr paulō fortius nōn pugnāveris. 5. Audivī quot hominēs Galliam incolerent.

(b) 1. Quid fēcerat? 2. Quaesivit ā Gallis quamobrem Rōmam vēnissent. 3. Quī milītēs tam bene pugnābunt ut hostium finēs populentur? 4. Quaerēbat num Galli trāns Rhodanum incolerent. 5. Multō diē Caesarī per explorātōrēs nūntiātum est et montem ā militibus Rōmānīs tenēri et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse.

**404. Translate:**

(a) 1. We do not know who inhabited the cities of Gaul. 2. My friends asked why I had not remained there. 3. We asked Caesar how many men had been killed. 4. Do you know by whom the Gauls were conquered? 5. Did you know that the enemy had fled a little while ago?

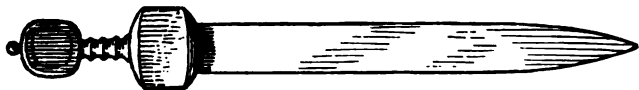
(b) 1. Let us ask about the children who<sup>3</sup> are delaying in

<sup>1</sup> Compare §§ 662 and 705.

<sup>2</sup> Review the subjunctive forms of each conjugation.

<sup>3</sup> The student must decide whether *who* and *whom* are *relative* or *interrogative pronouns*, for on this fact depends the mood of the following verb.

the city but who ought to set out toward home. 2. So great was the fear of the soldiers that they fled and left the heavy baggage. 3. Tell your father why you were a little afraid (feared a little). 4. The lieutenants ordered (their) infantry



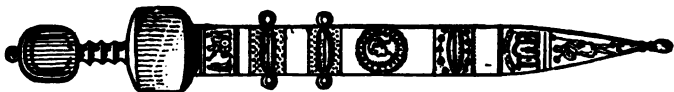
A Roman Sword.

to use (their) swords as quickly as possible. 5. Before the departure of the guards the young men seemed to be safe.

#### ORAL EXERCISE

405. *Answer these questions in Latin:*

1. Quis scivit cūr victus essēs? 2. Quibus tēlis militēs ūtentur? 3. Quem Rōmae vidistī? 4. Scīsne quō in locō sīs?



A Roman Sword in its Sheath.

## LESSON L

### PERSONAL PRONOUNS

*Veritas vos liberabit. — The truth shall make you free.\**

406. The personal pronouns<sup>1</sup> are *ego* for the first person and *tū* for the second. The personal pronoun of the third person is supplied by the demonstrative *is*.

FIRST PERSON		SECOND PERSON	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom. <i>e'go, I.</i>	<i>nōs, we.</i>	<i>tū, you.</i>	<i>vōs, you.</i>
Gen. <i>me'ī</i>	<i>{ no'strum</i> <i>{ no'strī</i>	<i>tu'ī</i>	<i>{ ves'trum</i> <i>{ ves'trī</i>
Dat. <i>mi'hi</i>	<i>nō'bīs</i>	<i>ti'bi</i>	<i>vō'bīs</i>
Acc. <i>mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>
Abl. <i>mē</i>	<i>nō'bīs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vō'bīs</i>

407. The reflexive pronouns<sup>2</sup> refer to the subject of the sentence or of the clause in which they stand. They are declined like the personal pronoun of the same person except that they have no nominative; *meī, of myself, tuī, of yourself,* and so on.

#### Reflexive of the Third Person

SINGULAR	PLURAL
Gen. <i>su'ī</i>	<i>su'ī</i>
Dat. <i>si'bi</i>	<i>si'bi</i>
Acc. <i>sē</i> or <i>sē'sē</i>	<i>sē</i> or <i>sē'sē</i>
Abl. <i>sē</i> or <i>sē'sē</i>	<i>sē</i> or <i>sē'sē</i>

(α) The reflexive of the third person serves for all genders and for both numbers. Thus, *suī* may mean *of himself, of herself, of itself, of themselves*.

---

\* St. Jerome's Bible. Motto of the Johns Hopkins University.

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 660.

<sup>2</sup> Compare § 665.

## 408.

## VOCABULARY

e'go, me'I, I.

tū, tu'I, you.

me'I, of myself.

tu'I, of yourself.

su'I, of himself, etc.

dēdi'tiō, -ō'nis, f., surrender.

dē'dō, -ere, dē'didī, dē'ditus,

(trans.) give up, surrender,  
abandon.

respon'deō, -ē're, respon'dī,

respon'sus, answer, reply.

neque, neither, and not.

409. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

egotism

me

respond

vision

## EXERCISE ON FORMS

410. *Translate, distinguishing between the personal and the reflexive pronouns:*

1. Tū mē vidēs.    2. Ego mē videō.    3. Nōs vōs scīmus.  
4. Puella sē vīcit.    5. Vōs nobīs librōs dedistis.

411. *Translate:*

1. We saw you.    2. You knew us.    3. We came with you.  
4. You told the story to me.    5. The boys praised themselves.

## EXERCISES

412. *Translate; tell to which class each of the pronouns belongs:*

(a) 1. Puellae inter sē laudant. 2. Vōbīs maiōra dōna pollicēbimur. 3. Tūne mihi fābulam nārrāvistī? 4. Māter tē semper laudat sed sē semper culpat. 5. Quaesivērunt ā mē quis essem et quō ex locō vēnissem.

(b) 1. Lēgātīs respondit sē pācem factūrum esse. 2. Ante prīmam lūcem hostēs sē dēdidērunt. 3. Respondēs tē duci persuāsūrum esse ut paulum morētur. 4. Ego<sup>1</sup> et tū quae-

<sup>1</sup> Notice the order of personal pronouns in Latin: first, second, third. The personal pronoun as subject is expressed only when there is emphasis or contrast.

rēmus quamobrem dēditionem fēcerint. 5. Caesarem certiorē faciunt agrōs ab Helvētiis vāstātōs esse neque sē ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre posse.

**413. *Translate, expressing all the pronouns:***

(a) 1. The general responds that he will not surrender. 2. In what city did we see you a little while ago? 3. I know who you are, and you know who I am. 4. You have been good children, and I shall give you a beautiful gift. 5. We feared<sup>1</sup> that you had not told us all things about yourself.

(b) 1. Let us not fear the enemy and make a surrender. 2. The city extends three miles in length. 3. We boys are a little younger than you girls. 4. The lieutenant promised that he would get possession of the camp of the enemy. 5. The senator of whose surrender we had heard responded a little concerning himself.

**ORAL EXERCISES**

**414. *Answer these questions in Latin:***

1. Cūr tū mē melior es? 2. Tūne tē saepe laudās?  
3. Quis vōbīs dōna dedit? 4. Quī discipulī ā magistrō laudāti sunt? 5. Dēdamnē mē?

---

<sup>1</sup> See § 353, Footnote.

## LESSON LI

### POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

*In lumine tuo videbimus lumen. — In thy light we shall see light.\**

415. The so-called **possessive pronouns** are merely the adjective forms of the personal and reflexive pronouns.

**me'us**, -a, -um,<sup>1</sup> *my, mine.*

**no'ster**, -tra, -trum, *our, ours.*

**tu'us**, -a, -um, *your, yours* (belonging to one person).

**ve'ster**, -tra, -trum, *your, yours* (belonging to more than one).

**su'us**, -a, -um, *his, her, hers, its, their, theirs.*

(a) The possessive pronouns are all declined like adjectives of the first and second declensions, and, like adjectives, they agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

#### 416.

#### VOCABULARY

**me'us**, -a, -um, *my, mine.*

**no'ster**, -tra, -trum, *our, ours.*

**tu'us**, -a, -um, *your, yours.*

**ve'ster**, -tra, -trum, *your, yours.*

**su'us**, -a, -um, *his, her, their.*

**praeſi'ciō**, -ere, -ſi'ci, -ſec'tus,  
*place over, or in command of.*

**praepō'nō**, -ere, -pō'sui, -itus,  
*place in command of.*

**prae'stō**, -ā're, -stiti, -stitus, *excel, surpass.*

**prae'sum**, -esse, -fui, *have command of, be at the head of.*

**su'persum**, -esse, -fui, *be left over, survive.*

417. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

preposition

applaud

benefactor

riparian

\* The motto of Columbia University.

<sup>1</sup> Voc. sing. masc. mī.



## RULES

**418. Gender of Possessives.** — The gender of a possessive pronoun depends not upon the gender of the person to whom it refers, but upon the gender of the noun possessed.

*Marcus loves his mother.* **Mārcus mātrem suam amat.**

*Julia loves her mother.* **Iūlia mātrem suam amat.**

*Julia loves her father.* **Iūlia patrem suum amat.**

**419. Dative with Compounds.** — The dative is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super,** and sometimes **circum.**

But if the verb which forms part of the compound is transitive, it may take a direct object in the accusative. This may be either in addition to the dative taken by the compound as a whole, or without it.

*Brutus was in command of the ships.* **Brūtus nāvibus praeerat.**

*He placed Brutus in command of the ships.* **Brūtum nāvibus praeposuit.**

*Brutus sent the ships ahead.* **Brūtus nāvēs praemisit.**

## EXERCISES

**420. Translate:**

(a) 1. Caesar exercitui praefuit. 2. Rōmānī omnibus virtute praestiterunt. 3. Nāvibus longis Brūtum praefecit. 4. Pueri,<sup>1</sup> et ā mātrem vestrā et ā magistrō vestrō laudābimini. 5. Deī comitēs nostrī semper sunt et rēbus hominum praesunt.

(b) 1. Imperātor castrīs quae ad ripam flūminis posita erant Mārcum praeposuit. 2. Dixerunt peditēs suōs paulum morātōs esse. 3. Nostrī<sup>2</sup> oppidum fortius oppugnāverant quam

<sup>1</sup> The vocative, the case of address, has the same form as the nominative except in the singular of nouns of the second declension ending in **-us**, where the vocative ends in **-e**.

<sup>2</sup> The possessive is often used substantively; as, **nostrī**, *our men*.

vestri. 4. Centum ex equitibus superfuērunt neque sē dēdiderunt. 5. Dicēbant sē bene fēcisse neque vōs suōs agrōs vāstāre dēbere.

**421. Translate:**

(a) 1. I am in command of myself. 2. The girl excels her brother in courage. 3. Who made the war-ships? 4. The general responded that he had placed a youth in command of the forces. 5. The mother asked her brave son why he did not use his sword.

(b) 1. We asked why they had not sent aid to us. 2. Our faithful lieutenant had been placed in charge of the heavy baggage. 3. We have informed Caesar that our army will make an attack on the enemy at daybreak. 4. Why did our senator not tell us about the surrender a little while ago? 5. My sister and your brother are friends of the man who has command of the infantry.

**ORAL EXERCISE**

**422. Answer these questions in Latin:**

1. Quis legiōnī praeerat? 2. Tūne exercitū Brūtū praeponēs? 3. Quī discipulus aliis praestitit? 4. Suntne tui amicī mei meliōrēs? 5. Nōne nostrī vōbīs virtūte praestant?



*Copyright, Photographische Gesellschaft. Permission of Berlin Photo. Co., N. Y.*

**Spring — An Ancient Festival.**



## LESSON LII

### FERŌ AND ITS COMPOUNDS

---

*Qui transtulit sustinet.* — *He who has brought us across (the sea) sustains us.\**

---

**423.** Learn the conjugation of *ferō* in the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive, active and passive, § 593.

**424.**

#### VOCABULARY

<i>fe'rō, fer're, tu'li, lā'tus, bear, carry.</i>	<i>In'ferō, Infer're, in'tuli, illā'tus, bring in, upon, or against.</i>
<i>cōn'ferō,<sup>1</sup> cōnfer're, cōn'tuli, collā'tus, bring together, collect, (with sē) betake one's self.</i>	<i>bel'lum Infer're, to make war on. sig'na Infer're, to advance.</i>
<i>dif'ferō, differ're, dis'tuli, dīlā'tus, scatter, differ.</i>	<i>expug'nō, -ā're, -ā'vi, -ā'tus, take by storm.</i>
<i>ef'ferō, effer're, ex'tuli, ēlā'tus, bring out, carry away.</i>	<i>Rhē'nus, -i, m., Rhine.</i>
	<i>que, conj., and (always appended to another word which in construction belongs after it).</i>

**425.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

transfer

conference

infer

differ

#### EXERCISES ON FORMS

**426.** *Translate:*

1. *Fers, fertur, lātus erit, feram.* 2. *Distulit, differet, differimus, distulerō.* 3. *Intulisti, Inferent, inferrent, intulerat.* 4. *Collāti erant, feruntur, fert, ferris.* 5. *Tulerunt, infert, tulisti, cōferam.*

---

\* The motto of Connecticut.

<sup>1</sup> Notice the way the accent of the principal parts of compounds of *ferō* swings back and forth like a pendulum.

**427. Translate:**

1. Let us differ, he will bring in. 2. They had carried out, we collect, you (*sing.*) carry. 3. They will have collected, he is carried. 4. They had differed, you (*plur.*) have carried. 5. We shall scatter, let them advance to the attack.

**EXERCISES****428. Translate:**

(a) 1. Scimus Caesarem Germānis bellum intulisse. 2. Inter sē linguā lēgibusque differunt. 3. Trāns Rhēnum sē cōferent nē ā cōpiis Rōmānis vincī possint. 4. Decima legiō signa infert et urbem expugnat. 5. Sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt.

(b) 1. Quis castris praeest? 2. Rōmāni cum Germānis bellum gessērunt. 3. Iniuriās rēgis mali ferre nōn possumus. 4. Nē Galliae bellum inferāmus. 5. Nostri virtūte Gallis praestitērunt et fortissimī vīsi sunt.

**429. Translate:**

(a) 1. They collected all their weapons into the towns. 2. Brutus made war on his enemies. 3. The infantry and the cavalry differ from each other. 4. We marched many miles that we might make war on the chiefs. 5. The leader ordered the van to advance and kill the enemy or scatter (them).

(b) 1. The auxiliary troops were placed on the left wing. 2. The king had told that the hostage had been carried away. 3. We asked who he was and why he had come. 4. The Gauls who dwelt across the Rhine surrendered themselves to their conqueror. 5. They could not bring aid to their men.

**ORAL EXERCISE****430. Answer these questions in Latin:**

1. Habēsne magnum timōrem? 2. Nōne milītēs signa inferent? 3. Centuriōne interfectus erat? 4. Cūr animālia omnēs in partēs ferēbantur? 5. Quibus Rōmāni bellum intulērunt?

## LESSON LIII

### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

*Semper eadem. — Always the same.\**

**431.** The **demonstrative pronouns** point out an object; they are used either substantively or adjectively. They are :

**hic**, *this* (near the speaker).

**iste**, *that* (near you).

**ille**, *that* (remote from both speaker and one addressed).

**is**, *that* (often used as the personal pronoun of the third person).

**Idem**, *the same*.

(a) The first three are often called demonstratives of the first, second, and third persons.

**432.** The **intensive pronoun** is **ipse**, *self*.

(a) Learn the declension of **hic**, **iste**, **ille**, **is**, **idem**, **ipse**, § 582.

### 433.

### VOCABULARY

**hic**, **haec**, **hoc**, *this*.

**ī'dem**, **eadem**, **idem**, *same*.

**ī'lle**, **illa**, **illud**, *that*.

**īp'se**, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, *self, himself*.

**is**, **ea**, **id**, *that, he*.

**is'te**, **ista**, **istud**, *that*.

**Lēn'tulus**, **-ī**, m., *Lentulus*.

**nā'tiō**, **-ō'nis**, f., *nation, tribe*.

**tumul'tus**, **-ūs**, m., *disturbance, tumult*.

**sīc**, adv., *so, in this way*.

**a'gō**, **a'gere**, **ō'gī**, **āc'tus**, *do, act, drive*.

**īn'beō**, **iubē're**, **ius'sī**, **ius'sus**, *order*. It takes an infinitive with subject accusative.

**434.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

action

identify

jussive

national

---

\* The motto of Queen Elizabeth. Quoted also in the masculine and neuter genders.

## EXERCISES

**435.** *Translate; tell which demonstrative pronouns are used substantively and which adjectively:*

(a) 1. Huius viri, hae feminae, huic centurioni, illorum militum, illi pueri, illis hominibus. 2. Hic est malus, ille est peior. 3. Iste tuus amicus est sed eorum inimicus. 4. Ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. 5. Caesar amicum suum vocavit et eius<sup>1</sup> virtutem laudavit.

(b) 1. Quis sim, scies ex eo amico quem ad te misi. 2. Ille dixit se habere litteras a Lentulo. 3. Eadem nationes Romanae<sup>2</sup> amicae non erant. 4. Haec omnia sic agentur ut respublica sine tumultu servetur. 5. Eodem tempore Caesar suas legiones laudari iussit.

**436.** *Translate:*

(a) 1. I myself came to your city. 2. These are our friends; those are your enemies. 3. On the same day he will set out with two legions. 4. Those men ordered<sup>3</sup> the cavalry to drive the enemy from the city. 5. The nations of the earth are often in a great tumult.

(b) 1. He will tell you that we have come. 2. We shall order<sup>3</sup> auxiliary troops to attack the rear of the enemy. 3. Caesar very often made war upon his<sup>1</sup> enemies, and killed their leaders. 4. These things will be done by Lentulus himself as quickly as possible. 5. The brave troops bore their standards to the bank of the Rhine and took the cities of the enemy by storm.

---

<sup>1</sup> When *his, her, their*, etc., do not refer to the subject, use the genitive of *is*.

Notice that *suus* refers to the subject of the sentence in which it stands. When, however, it is used in a subordinate clause, it may refer to the subject of the principal sentence.

<sup>2</sup> § 269.

<sup>3</sup> Translate in two ways: (1) with *iubeo* and (2) with *impero*.



## PHRASES FROM CAESAR

**437.** *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Patrum nostrōrum memoriā.    2. Ā castris suis.
3. Paulō ante mediam noctem.    4. Ex omnibus partibus.
5. Multis de causis.



The Roman Goddess Minerva.

## LESSON LIV

### DOUBLE QUESTIONS

---

*Sic semper tyrannis.—Thus always to tyrants.\**

---

**438.** Double questions are introduced by the following particles: *utrum . . . an*; *-ne . . . an*; (*. . . an*).

<i>Is he good or bad?</i>	{	<b>Utrum bonus est an malus?</b>
		<b>Bonusne est an malus?</b>
		<b>Bonus est an malus?</b>

(a) When the second part of the question is negative, *annōn* is used.

*Is he good or not? Estne bonus annōn?*

### 439.

#### VOCABULARY

*an*, conj., or; *annōn*, or not.      *equitā'tus*, -ūs, m., cavalry.  
*u'trum*, conj.; not translated in      *Pompē'ius*, -ī, m., Pompey.  
direct questions; in indirect      *cōnsī'dō*, -ere, -sē'dī, —, en-  
questions, *whether*.      camp, settle.  
*antepō'nō*, -ere, -pō'suī, -pō'situs, place before, prefer.  
*cognō'scō*, *cognō'scere*, *cognō'vī*, *cog'nitus*, become acquainted with,  
learn.  
*coniun'gō*, *coniun'gere*, *coniūn'xī*, *coniūnō'tus*, join together, unite.  
*pe'tō*, -ere, -ī'vī, -(ī), -ī'tus, seek, ask. It takes accusative of the  
thing and ablative of the person with *ā* or *ab*.

**440.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

anteposition	conjunction	recognize	petition
--------------	-------------	-----------	----------

---

\* The motto of Virginia.

## RULE

**441. Quality or Description.** — The quality or description of a noun is expressed by the genitive or ablative with an adjective.

*He was a man of great courage.* **Erat vir magnae virtūtis, or  
Erat vir magnā virtūte.**

(a) *Definite measurement* must be expressed by the genitive.

*The wall was of great height.* **Mūrus magnā altitudīne erat.**

*It was a wall of six feet in height.* **Mūrus sex pedum altitudīne erat.**



A German Bodyguard.

## EXERCISES

**442. Translate :**

(a) 1. Pompēius magnā virtūte vir erat. 2. Circum  
moenia fossa quīdecim pedum altitudīne est. 3. Utrum  
domī erās, annōn? 4. Petīvit utrum domī essēs.  
5. Utrum Pompēius Cicerōnī antepōnētur, annōn?

(b) 1. Caesar ex Gallīs hominēs magnārum vīrium petēbat  
ut in suō exercitū eīs ūterētur. 2. Antepōnātur omnibus  
Pompēius. 3. Milites omnia tela quae ab equitatū hostium  
relicta erant cōtulērunt. 4. Cōpiae Gallōs vicerant et in  
eōrum finibus cōsidēbant. 5. Ducem cum cohortibus duo-  
decim et magnō numerō equitatūs in hostium finēs proficisci

iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur et tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur.

**443. Translate :**

(a) 1. The Germans were men of great size. 2. We did not know whether he had been in the house or in the field.



A Roman Urn.

3. Pompey orders the lieutenant and his companions to encamp at the foot of a very high mountain. 4. I saw the girl herself. 5. The two places were joined by a wall of three feet in height.

(b) 1. We have lived many years without slaves. 2. Those who had been wounded were carried out, and the legions advanced that they might not be conquered by a leader of such

valor. 3. Senator, tell us who has been placed in command of the one hundred soldiers, and why they do not surrender. 4. Were the weapons carried away or left in the camp? 5. What shall I say about Cicero and Pompey?

## LESSON LV

### INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

---

*Ars est celare artem. — Art conceals art.\**

---

**444.** Pronouns which do not refer to definite persons or things are called **indefinite pronouns**. As an indefinite pronoun the simple form **quis** (substantive), **quī** (adjective) is not common, but it has several compounds.

1. The substantive forms are:

M. AND F.		NEUT.
<b>aliquis</b> , <i>some one, something.</i>		<b>aliquid</b>
<b>quisque</b> , <i>each one, every one.</i>		<b>quidque</b>
MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<b>quidam</b>	<b>quaedam</b>	<b>quiddam</b> , <i>a certain one.</i>

2. The adjective forms are:

MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
<b>aliquī</b>	<b>aliqua</b>	<b>aliquid</b> , <i>any.</i>
<b>quisque</b>	<b>quaeque</b>	<b>quodque</b> , <i>each.</i>
<b>quidam</b>	<b>quaedam</b>	<b>quoddam</b> , <i>a certain.</i>

(a) In indefinite pronouns only the pronominal part is declined. **M** is changed to **n** before **d**; **quendam**, not **quemdam**. Learn the declension of **aliquis**, § 585.

---

\*Literally: *Art is to conceal art.*

## 445.

## VOCABULARY

ar'ma, -ŏrum, n., *arms, implements of war.*

ini'tium, -i, n., *beginning.*

re'ferō, refer're, ret'tullī, relā'tus, *bring back, report.*

rever'tō, -ere, -tī, -sus,	{	<i>turn back, return; the perfect stem tenses are from the active, the others from the deponent.</i>
rever'tor, -i, reversus sum,		

quan'tus, -a, -um, *how great, how much.*

inte'reā, adv., *in the meantime.*

post, prep. (with acc.), *after (of time), behind (of place).*

a'liquis, a'liquid (a'liqui, a'liqua, a'liquod, adj.), *some one, something.*

quī'dam, quae'dam, quid'dam (quod'dam, adj.), *a certain one.*

quis'que, quid'que (quis'que, quae'que, quod'que, adj.), *every one, each.*

446. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

initial

refer

quantity

revert

## EXERCISES

447. *Translate; tell to what class each pronoun belongs:*

(a) 1. Aliquem ad tē mittent. 2. Quisque multō diē profectus est. 3. Ab hīs quaeſivit, quae cīvitātēs quantaque in armīs essent. 4. Paulum frūmentī quemque domō efferre iubent. 5. Multae nātīōnēs auxilium ā suis amicīs petiērunt.

(b) 1. Quaedam legiō Rōmam revertētur, et alicui victōriam nūtiābit. 2. Māter aliīs suōs liberōs antepōnet. 3. Extrēma pars huius librī initīo difficiōr est. 4. Eōdem tempore equitātus noster et alii quī cum eis fuerant sē in castra recipiebant. 5. Lēgātī haec<sup>1</sup> sē ad suōs relātūrōs<sup>2</sup> dixerunt et post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; intereā nē castra movēret petiērunt.

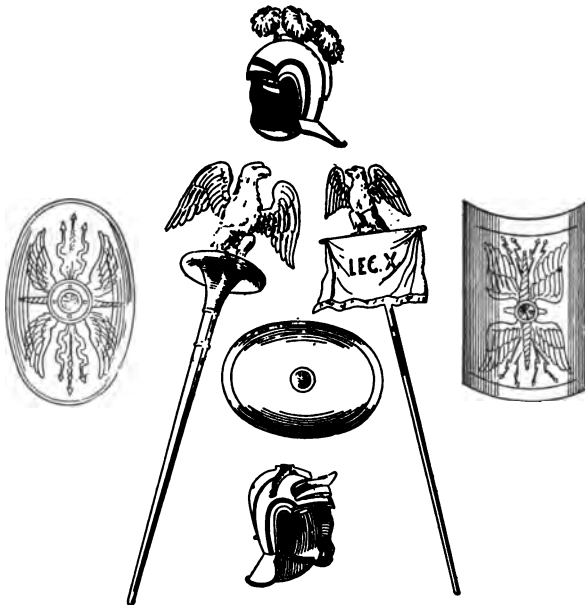
<sup>1</sup> See § 16.

<sup>2</sup> Esse is often omitted in infinitives.

**448. Translate:**

(a) 1. The king gave arms to some one. 2. Pompey made a good beginning. 3. Our country is much loved by every one. 4. We do not know how great a number can return. 5. After the battle the soldiers were ordered to retreat into camp.

(b) 1. A certain one will return to report all things to Caesar. 2. They had encamped across a river of great depth. 3. I prefer her to all my other friends. 4. This man was a sailor; that one, a farmer. 5. The cavalry will drive their horses into the territory of the Belgians, and in the meantime the leader will learn something about the character of the enemy.



Roman Arms.

## LESSON LVI

### REVIEW

---

*Mens aequa in arduis. — A mind serene in difficulties.\**

---

**449. Derivatives.** — Write all the English words you can, which seem to be derived from the following :

fuga	ante	quaerō	ego
respondeō	praepōnō	praesum	cōferō
differō	Inferō	ferō	nātiō
tumultus	agō	coniungō	arma
initium	referō	revertō	quantus

**450. Word Drill.** — 1. Name the classes of pronouns and tell why each is so called. 2. Name the possessive pronouns. 3. Which demonstrative pronoun is commonly used as the personal pronoun of the third person? 4. Give the Latin for *Who are you?* *What man is this?*

**451. Form Drill.** — 1. Decline *hic, ille, is, idem*. 2. Decline the Latin for *another soldier*. 3. Decline the relative pronoun. 4. Write one Latin sentence containing a personal, possessive, relative, demonstrative, and an interrogative pronoun. 5. When do we use *tuus* and when *vester*?

**452. Syntax Drill.** — (a) 1. How is *utrum* used and what does it mean? 2. What case and mood follow *tubeō*? *imperō*? 3. With what compound verbs is the dative

---

\* Motto on the statue of Warren Hastings in Calcutta.



used? 4. In what does a relative pronoun agree with its antecedent? 5. What determines the gender of a possessive pronoun?

(b) Give the Latin for:

1. We knew the man who had been conquered.
2. We knew who had been conquered.
3. We knew that the man had been conquered.
4. The man fights that he may not be conquered.
5. The man fought so bravely that he was not conquered.

#### EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

453. 1. Audīvimus quae oppida tūta essent. 2. Multās rēs a Caesare quaesivērunt dē profectionē. 3. Liberī sē paulum laudant. 4. Rōmānī exercitū Caesarem praeficiunt. 5. Dux tuus, Mārce, secundā vigiliā interfectus est. 6. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit militibus imperāvit ut signa inferrent. 7. Polliceor hoc vōbīs. 8. Eadem ab eō dicta erant. 9. Scivērunt equitātum in Germāniam missum esse. 10. Cuique dōnum dabō.

#### FĀBULAE FACILĒS

##### Mūri Spartaē

454. Quidam ex Spartānō quaesivit: "Cūr mūrōs nōn habet Sparta?" Spartānus respondit: "Nostra urbs mūrōs optimōs habet, incolārum fortium virtūtem."

##### Virtūs Spartāna

Rēx Spartānus dixit: "Meī cīvēs numquam quaesivērunt, 'Quot sunt hostēs?' sed 'Ubi sunt?'"

##### Iocus Cicerōnis

Fēmina quaedam, iūniōrem sē esse simulāns quam erat, dictitābat, sē trigintā tantum annōs habēre; cui Cicerō dixit: "Verum est, nam hoc vīginti annōs audiō."

## LESSON LVII

### PARTICIPLES

*Ave, Imperator! Morituri te salutant. — Hail, Emperor! Those who are about to die salute thee.\**

455. There are four participles: the *present* and *future* in the active voice and the *perfect* and *future* (or *gerundive*) in the passive voice.

<b>Present Active Participle</b> = <i>Present stem</i> + <i>-ns</i> or <i>-ēns</i>	{ portāns monēns ducēns audiēns
<b>Future Active Participle</b> = <i>Participial stem</i> + <i>ūr</i> + <i>endings of magnus</i>	{ portātūrus monitūrus ductūrus audītūrus
<b>Perfect Passive Participle</b> = <i>Participial stem</i> + <i>endings of magnus</i>	{ portātus monitus ductus audītus
<b>Future Passive Participle or Gerundive</b> = <i>Present stem</i> + <i>nd</i> or <i>end</i> + <i>endings of magnus</i>	{ portandus monendus ducendus audiendus

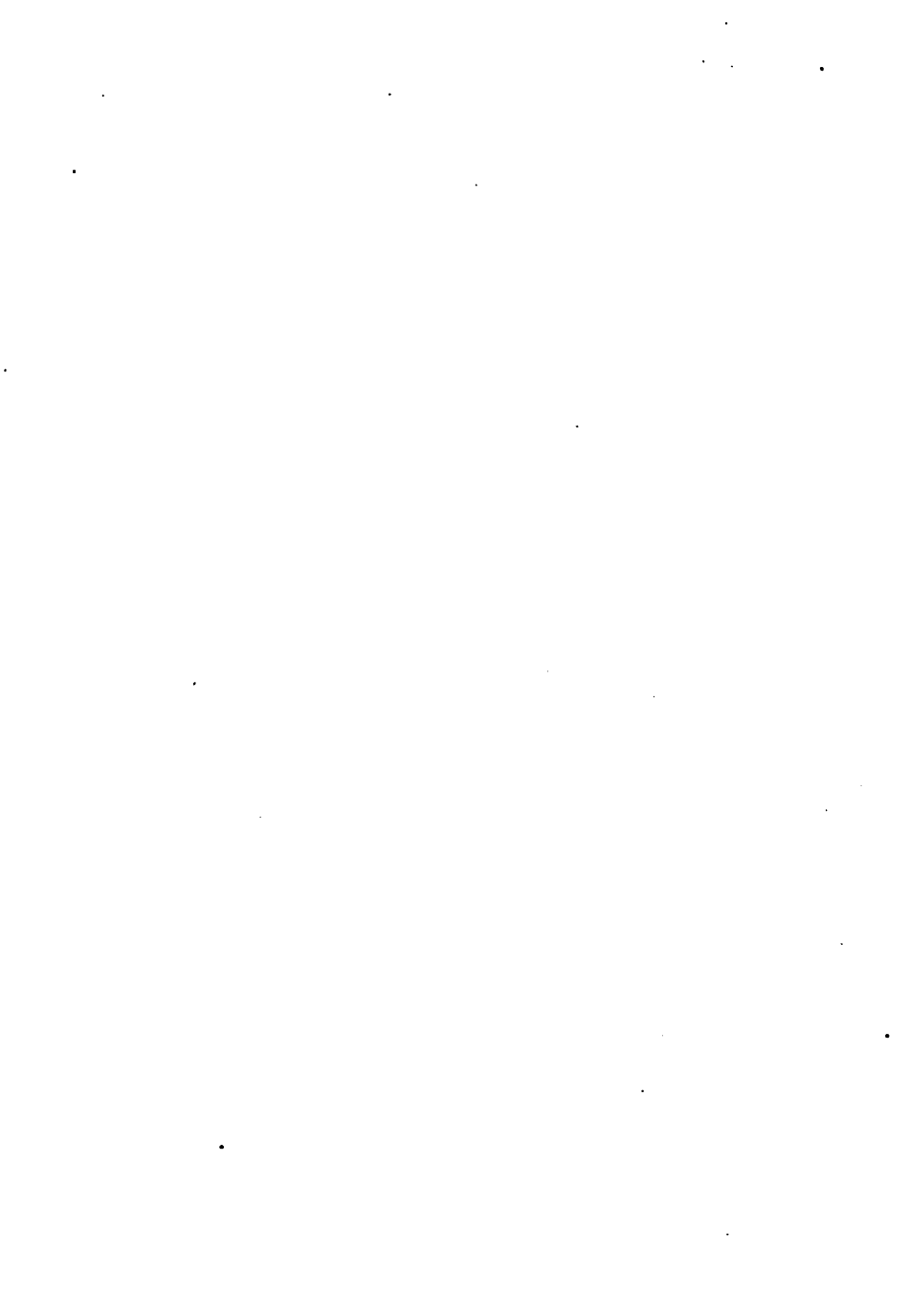
*Note.* — For 15 verbs see § 320.

456. **Declension of Participles.** — All participles are declined like *magnus* except the present, which is declined like *potēns*. A participle is a verbal adjective. Like a

\* The call of the Roman gladiators upon entering the arena for the gladiatorial contests.



A Roman Chariot Race.



verb, it may take an object and be modified by an adverb; like an adjective, it agrees with its noun or pronoun, in gender, number, and case.<sup>1</sup>

*We saw the farmer (as he was) driving his horses swiftly. Agricola equos velocius agentem vidimus.*

*They saw the city (which had been) captured by the enemy. Urbem ab hostibus captam viderunt.*

(a) A participle is often best translated by a phrase or clause.

**457. Time of Participles.** — Like the infinitive, the time denoted by the participle is relative, depending on the time of the principal verb. The present participle denotes the *same* time as the principal verb; the perfect participle, time *before*; and the future participle, time *after* the principal verb.

Learn all the participles, active and passive, of *portō*, *moneō*, *dūcō*, *audiō*, *sum*, *possum*, *ferō*, *capiō*, §§ 586, 587, 588, 589, 591, 593, 590.

## 458.

## VOCABULARY

*fī'dēs*, -eī, f., *faith*, *pledge*, *confidence*.

*līt'tus*, -oris, n., *shore* (of the sea).

*senā'tus*, -ūs, m., *senate*.

*addū'cō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead to*, *influence*.

*re'gō*, -ere, *rē'xī*, *rēo'tus*, *rule*, *manage*.

*sapien'ter*, adv., *wisely*.

(a) Form all the infinitives and participles of *referō*, *regō*.

**459. What Latin words do the following suggest?**

fidelity      sapient      littoral      reference

## EXERCISES

**460. Translate:**

(a) 1. Ad Caesarem auxilium petentēs vērunt. 2. Virōs victōs laudābimus. 3. Stāns in lītore armīs ūtar. 4. Rēx

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 702.

nātiōnem bene regere cōnātus laudātus est. 5. Centuriōnēs ferentēs suum ducem interfectum veniunt.

(b) 1. Audīvimus tē mortem nōn verērī. 2. Caesar suōs<sup>1</sup> impetum fortiter sustinentēs vidit. 3. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī, inter sē fidem et iūsiurandum dant. 4. Aliquem in senātū sapienter dicentem audīvi. 5. Intereā a plūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt quibus pācem petentibus respondet obsidēsque ad sē mittī iubet.

**461. Translate:**

(a) 1. Kings are not always loved when ruling wisely and well. 2. Having been influenced by the senate, the Roman people praised their generals. 3. Caesar gave a pledge to the Gauls when they were seeking peace. 4. Pompey, after being placed in command of the army, conquered many nations. 5. The general, seeing the soldiers of the tenth legion fighting long and fiercely, knew that they would not surrender.

(b) 1. In the beginning of the war Caesar saw all the forces of the Belgians setting out against him. 2. Let us remain at the seashore all summer. 3. This man lived in a city of great size; that one, on the seashore. 4. The centurions differ from each other in many respects. 5. The tired horseman returns to the camp after the battle and seeks aid from his companions.

**PHRASES FROM CAESAR**

**462. Commit to memory with the translations:**

1. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī. 2. Senātus populusque Rōmānus.  
3. Ōrātiōnem habēre. 4. Plūs posse. 5. Plūrimum posse.

---

<sup>1</sup> See § 420, Footnote 2.

## LESSON LVIII

### ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

---

*Consule Planco. — When Plancus was consul.\**

---

**463.** The **Ablative Absolute** consists of two words in the ablative case grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. It may consist of (1) a substantive and a participle, **signō datō**; (2) a substantive and an adjective, **periculō magnō**; (3) two substantives, **Caesare imperātore**.

The Ablative Absolute is usually best translated as a clause and generally denotes time, cause, condition, or concession. The substantive in the Ablative Absolute never denotes the same person or thing as the subject or object of the main verb.

1. **Signō datō, oppidum oppugnāverunt.** *The signal having been given (literally), when the signal had been given, they attacked the town.*

2. **Periculō magnō, Caesar signum dedit.** *The danger being great (literally), since the danger was great, Caesar gave the signal.*

3. **Caesare imperātore, ad victōriam exercitus dūcitur.** *Caesar being general (literally), if Caesar is general, the army will be led to victory.*

4. **Multis interfectis, oppidum expugnāvimus.** *Many having been killed (literally), although many had been killed, we took the town by storm.*

(a) The verb **sum** has no present participle, consequently the connecting word *being* cannot be expressed in the Latin of 2 and 3, but must be supplied in the translation.

(b) The participle and the adjective must agree with the substantive in gender, number, and case.

---

\* Horace. An expression used by the Romans for "In the good old days."

**464. Perfect Participles.** — There is no perfect active participle in Latin. We cannot put literally into Latin : *The leader, having given the signal, fought bravely.* There is no Latin word meaning *having given*, but the same idea may be expressed by changing the voice of the participle and making it agree with *signal* instead of *leader*, as : *The signal having been given, the leader fought bravely.* **Signō datō, dux fortiter pugnāvit.**

(a) Such an ablative absolute may be rendered as an independent coördinate clause : *The leader gave the signal and fought bravely.*

(b) A deponent verb has a perfect participle with an active meaning, so no change is necessary in the case of a deponent verb. *Having encouraged the Remi, Caesar ordered the entire senate to come to him.* **Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre iussit.**

**465.****VOCABULARY**

aedif'cium, -i, n., *building.*

Gal'ba, -ae, m., *Galba.*

immortā'lis, -e, *immortal.*

invic'tus, -a, -um, *invincible.*

acci'piō, -ere, -cē'pī, -cep'tus, *receive, accept.*

trā'dō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give up, surrender.*

conten'dō, -ere, -dī, -ten'tus, *hasten, contend.*

incen'dō, -ere, -cen'dī, -cōn'sus, *set on fire, burn, (with acc.).*

praemit'tō, -ere, -mī'sī, -mis'sus, *send ahead.*

**466. What Latin words do the following suggest?**

edifice

invincible

incendiary

tradition

**EXERCISES**

**467.** *Translate; render ablatives absolute literally and as clauses, and decide which makes the better English:*

(a) 1. Spē āmissā fūgerunt. 2. Pāce factā, cūr diūtius pugnātis? 3. Omnibus vicis aedificiisque incēnsis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpīs contendērunt. 4. Intereā milites legiōnum duarum, proeliō nūtiātō, in summō colle ab hostibus



videbantur. 5. His rebus gestis, ab iis nationibus missi sunt legati ad Caesarem qui se obsides daturus esse pollicerentur.

(b) 1. Hostes ordinem Caesaris agminis non sciverunt. 2. Omnem equitatum qui<sup>1</sup> novissimum agmen moraretur praemisit. 3. Romani intellexerunt deos immortales plurimum<sup>2</sup> posse. 4. Cicerō dixit deos immortales huic invictō populō auxilium esse laturos. 5. Caesar, obsidibus acceptis, primis civitatis atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in ditionem hostes accēpit.

**468.** *Translate; express the subordinate clauses by the use of the ablative absolute when possible:*

(a) 1. While Caesar is leader, our forces are invincible. 2. Since many soldiers had been killed, Pompey received recruits into his army. 3. When the cavalry had been sent ahead, the infantry followed without fear. 4. Having burned all the buildings on the shore, they destroyed the ships of the enemy. 5. When these things have been done, they fortify the towns and carry the grain out of the fields into the towns.

(b) 1. It is easier to promise than to do. 2. The senate was very powerful among the Romans. 3. When the letters had been received, Caesar enlisted two legions in hither Gaul. 4. Let us surrender and hasten home as quickly as possible. 5. Let the senate make as good laws as possible that the people may prefer the senate to a king.

<sup>1</sup> qui = ut is.

<sup>2</sup> Adverbial Accusative of Degree.

## LESSON LIX

### SUBJUNCTIVE WITH CUM

---

*Abeunt studia in mores. — Pursuits pass over into habits.\**

---

**469.** Clauses governed by *cum* may denote *circumstance*, *cause*, or *concession*.

**470. Cum Circumstantial.**<sup>1</sup> — *Cum*, meaning *when*, takes the subjunctive to denote the circumstances under which an action took place. This use is commonly found only in the imperfect and pluperfect tenses.

When the purpose of the *cum* clause is merely to give the date of the action or the state described by the principal sentence, the verb is put in the indicative.

*When this had been announced to Caesar, he set out from the city.*  
**Caesarī cum id nūtiātum esset, ab urbe profectus est.**

*When Caesar came into Gaul, the Aedui were the leaders.* **Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, principēs erant Aedui.**

**471. Cum Causal.** — *Cum*, meaning *since*, regularly takes the subjunctive.

*Since this is so, I will go.* **Quae cum ita sint, Ibō.**

*Since they were retreating, we attacked.* **Cum sē recipere, oppugnāvimus.**

**472. Cum Concessive.** — *Cum*, meaning *although*, takes the subjunctive.

*Although we had burned the town, they did not surrender.* **Cum oppidum incendissēmus, nōn sē trādidērunt.**

---

\* Ovid.

<sup>1</sup> This is sometimes called *cum temporal*.

*Although Caesar thought that the Roman legions were invincible, he did not hasten into Gaul. Cum Caesar Rōmānās legiōnēs esse invictās existimāret, in Galliam nōn contendit.*

(a) The tense usage in all these subjunctive clauses is the same as that described in § 364.

#### 473. Conjunctions with Indicative. —

1. *Ubi, when, and postquam, after* (conjunction), take the indicative.

2. *Quod and quia, because, and quoniam, since*, regularly take the indicative to express cause.

3. *Quamquam, meaning although*, takes the indicative.

#### 474.

#### VOCABULARY

cau'sa, -ae, f., *cause, reason.*

cau'sā (with gen.), *for the sake of.*

mō'tus, -ūs, m., *movement, revolt.*

potes'tās, potestā'tis, f., *power, opportunity.*

rū'mor, -ōris, m., *rumor, report.*

re'liquus, -a, -um, *remaining, the rest.*

af'ferō, -fer're, at'tulī, allā'tus, *bring.*

cum, conj., *when, since, although.*

trādū'cō, -dū'cere, -dūx'ī, -duc'-tus, *lead across.*

commit'tō, -ere, -mī'sī, -mis'-sus, *join; proelium committere, join battle, begin an engagement.*

repe'riō, -ī're, rep'peri, reper'-tus, *find, discover.*

ta'men, adv., *nevertheless, still, however.*

cum primum, *as soon as.*

#### 475. What Latin words do the following suggest?

commotion

commit

rumor

traduce

#### EXERCISES

476. *Translate; give the reason for the mood and tense of each verb:*

(a) 1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur. 2. Cum tēla sua amīsisset, pugnāre nōn potuit. 3. Cum spēs victōriāe magna sit, tamen centu-

riōnēs signa nōn inferunt. 4. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, Caesar proelium commisit. 5. Liberōrum nostrōrum causā nē in potestāte hostium diūtius sīmus.

(b) 1. Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae civitatēs in armīs essent, causam bellī repperit. 2. Dare<sup>1</sup> melius est quam accipere. 3. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus relictis, reliquās sex legiōnēs ex castris edūxit. 4. Partem suārum cōpiarum flūmen magnā lātitudine trādūcere<sup>2</sup> cōnātī sunt ut castra expugnārent. 5. Multa dē stellis atque eārum mōtū, dē terrae magnitudine, dē deōrum immortalium vīribus et potestāte scīmus.

**477. Translate :**

(a) 1. Although they have very many wounds, they fight for the sake of power. 2. When the Gauls had made many revolts, Caesar conquered them and sent them under the yoke. 3. Although we have found out many things about the stars, there is much which we do not know. 4. When the legions had been left in the camp, the general led the remaining soldiers across the territory of the enemy. 5. Although rumors of the danger had been brought to us, yet we did not give up hope.

(b) 1. When the people had been informed concerning the death of Cicero, many declared that he had been an excellent consul and had saved his country. 2. She excels her brother in diligence. 3. The forces of the Gauls will encamp between the river and the hill. 4. Although they were men of great power and courage, nevertheless they were not invincible. 5. In a very short time we found out who had been bringing evil reports about us.

---

<sup>1</sup> An infinitive or clause used substantively is neuter singular, and the adjective accordingly is put in the neuter.

<sup>2</sup> Trādūcō governs two accusatives.



*Copyright, Photographische Gesellschaft.*

*Permission of Bertin Photo. Co., N. Y.*

The Colosseum.



## LESSON LX

### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

---

*Si monumentum requiris, circumspice. — If you seek a monument, look about you.\**

---

**478.** A conditional sentence consists of two parts: (a) the *conditional clause* and (b) the *conclusion*. For example, in the sentence, *If you say this, you are wrong*, the clause introduced by *if* is the conditional clause, while *you are wrong* is the conclusion.

In Latin the conditional clause is most frequently introduced by *si, if*.

There are different kinds of conditional sentences.<sup>1</sup>

**479. Conditional Sentences of Fact.** — Sometimes the conditional clause assumes something to be true, and the conclusion contains a statement of fact. In this case the indicative is used both in the conditional clause and in the conclusion.

*If Caesar fights, he conquers. SI Caesar pugnat, vincit.*

*If the boy was good, he was praised. SI puer bonus erat, laudabatur.*

**480. Conditional Sentences of Doubt.** — In this class the conclusion states that something *would* take place if a

---

\* Motto on the tomb of Sir Christopher Wren in St. Paul's Cathedral, London, of which Wren was the architect. From this was adapted the motto of Michigan: *SI quaeris peninsulam amoenam, circumspice. If you seek a delightful peninsula, look about you.*

<sup>1</sup> Notice how closely conditions in Latin resemble conditions in English.

certain condition *should* be fulfilled. This is the statement not of a *fact*, as in the first class, but of an *idea* depending upon something concerning which there is a doubt. Both verbs are put in the subjunctive.

*If Caesar should fight, he would conquer. SI Caesar pugnet, vincat.*

*If the boy should be good, he would be praised. SI puer bonus sit, laudētur.*

#### 481. TABLE OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

CLASS	TIME	MOOD	TENSE	ILLUSTRATION
Fact	Present	Indicative	Present	1. <i>If Caesar fights, he conquers. SI Caesar pugnat, vincit.</i>
	Past		Imperfect or Perfect	2. <i>If Caesar was fighting, he was conquering. SI Caesar pugnābat, vincēbat. If Caesar fought, he conquered. SI Caesar pugnāvit, vicit.</i>
	Future		Future	3. <i>If Caesar fights, he will conquer. SI Caesar pugnābit, vincet.</i>
Doubt	Future	Subjunctive	Present	<i>If Caesar should fight, he would conquer. SI Caesar pugnet, vincat.</i>
Contrary to Fact	Present	Subjunctive	Imperfect	1. <i>If Caesar were fighting, he would conquer. SI Caesar pugnāret, vinceret.</i>
	Past		Pluperfect	2. <i>If Caesar had fought, he would have conquered. SI Caesar pugnāvisset, vicisset.</i>



**482. Conditional Sentences Contrary to Fact.** — Both conclusions and conditions that are *contrary to fact* are expressed by the subjunctive. The use of the tenses should be carefully noted. If the thing is contrary to fact *at the present time*, the imperfect is used; if it is contrary to fact *in the past*, the pluperfect is used.

*If Caesar were fighting, he would conquer.* (This implies that Caesar is not fighting and so does not conquer. It is a condition in present time contrary to fact.) **SI Caesar pugnāret, vinceret.**

*If Caesar had fought, he would have conquered.* (This implies the same as the last sentence except that the time is past instead of present.) **SI Caesar pugnāvisset, vīcisset.**

**483.**

**VOCABULARY**

**Ae'duus**, -ī, m., an *Aeduan*.

**Catili'na**, -ae, m., *Catiline*.

**dēfēn'sor**, -ō'ris, m., *defender*.

**ho'nor**, -ō'ris, m., *honor, esteem*.

**tur'ris**, -is (-ium), f., *tower*.

**ver'bum**, -ī, n., *word; plural, speech*.

**dēfen'dō**, -ere, -fen'dī, -fēn'sus, *defend, guard*.

**nū'dō**, -ā're, -ā'vī, -ā'tus, *strip, leave unprotected*.

**sī**, conj., *if*.

**nī'si**, conj., *if not, unless*.

**etiam**, adv., *also, even*.

**484. What Latin words do the following suggest?**

honor

defend

nude

turret

**EXERCISES**

**485. Translate, first giving the mood, tense, and consequent time and class of each conditional sentence:**

(a) 1. Si bonī essēmus, laudārēmur. 2. Si perīculum celēs, nōn timeāmus. 3. Si rēx bene rēxisset, nōn interfectus esset. 4. Si pater tuus Rōmānus est, tū Rōmānus es. 5. Si perīculum cognōscās, nōbīs nārres.

(b) 1. Si urbēs bene dēfenderentur, capī nōn possent. 2. Si urbs nūdātur, dēfendī nōn potest. 3. Si tēlis ūti

potuissent, nōn victi essent. 4. Si pueri bonōs comitēs haberent, nōn pugnārent. 5. Si oppidum mūniātur, id capere nōn possumus.

**486.** *Translate, first noticing what time and thought are expressed and what mood and tense are accordingly required:*

(a) 1. If I were you, I should be better. 2. If you can run, I can follow you. 3. If you had delayed longer, you would have been blamed. 4. If we should make an end of the battle, many would survive. 5. If the attack had been made as quickly as possible, the forces would have fled.

(b) 1. If the king should return home, his friends would receive him gladly. 2. If the Aeduans were brave, the town would be taken by storm. 3. If Catiline had brought war on us, we should have sent him from the state. 4. If you have been good, you have been praised. 5. If the rest had fled, we should have discovered their flight.

#### SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

**487.** *Translate, first giving mood, tense, etc., as in § 485:*

(a) 1. Si urbs & nobis defendātur, hostēs eam nōn capere possint. 2. Si illis verbis ūsus esset, culpātus esset. 3. Si oppidum dēfēnsōribus nūdābātur, impetum diū sustinēre nōn poterat. 4. Si miles gravissimum vulnus accipiat, ex proelio & suis comitibus ferātur. 5. Caesar honoris Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum esse dixit.

(b) 1. Si turris ad mūrū movērētur, in dēfēnsōrēs lapidēs iacerēmus. 2. Nulla causa est cūr tē tam saepe dēfendam. 3. Dux cum repperit ubi hostēs essent, celeriter proelium commisit. 4. Si Catilīna in urbe ad hunc diem mānsisset, tantis periculis repūblicam nōn liberāvissēmus. 5. Senātus haec intellegit, consul videt; hic tamen vivit. Vivit? Etiam in senātum venit.

**488.** *Translate, first noticing the time, thought, etc., as in § 486:*

(a) 1. If a revolt had been made, the hostages would have been killed. 2. If your city should be stripped of defenders, what would you do? 3. If the king rules well, the citizens do that which he commands. 4. If the enemy's scouts should set fire to our camp, we should try to defend it. 5. If the guards had defended the place more diligently, the fortifications could not have been taken by storm.

(b) 1. Unless the city had been deprived of defenders, the army of the Aeduans would not have been conquered. 2. The remaining Gauls will be invincible. 3. When we have surrendered, we shall not attack the enemy. 4. When we had found out that the tower could be moved, we hastened to move it as quickly as possible. 5. If Cicero were living, he would be held in esteem by the men of our state.



Cicero delivering the First of his Famous Orations against Catiline.

## LESSON LXI

### REVIEW

---

*Divide et impera. — Divide and govern.\**

---

**489. Derivatives.** — Write all the English words you can, which seem to be derived from the following :

fidēs	invictus	regō	contineō
aedificium	immortālis	accipio	contendō
incendō	trādō	mōtus	rūmor
reliquus	trādūcō	committō	causa
dēfendō	honor	turris	verbum

**490. Form Drill.** — 1. How is each participle formed and declined? 2. Of what three combinations may an Ablative Absolute consist? 3. Give four possible translations of *rūmōre auditō*. 4. Translate, first by a clause and then by an Ablative Absolute: (a) *When Caesar had brought the grain, they discovered a new danger.* (b) *Since his soldiers were not brave, the leader surrendered.*

**491. Syntax Drill.** — 1. Why is an Ablative Absolute necessary? 2. What three kinds of clauses may be introduced by *cum*? 3. When is the subjunctive used and when the indicative in a causal clause? in a concessive clause? 4. Give the law of Sequence of Tenses. 5. In Conditional Sentences what mood and tense are used to express (a) a fact in present, past, future time? (b) a statement contrary to fact in present, past time? (c) a doubt in future time?

---

\* Motto of Louis XI of France.





The Court of a Roman House.

## EXERCISES FOR SIGHT READING

**492.** 1. Trēs arborēs in ōrdine stantēs manent. 2. Rēgnum in civitāte nostrā ā frātre tuō tenēbātur. 3. Posterō diē nostra aciēs in equitātum hostium signa intulit. 4. Armīs trāditīs sē dēfendere nōn possunt. 5. Decem legiōnibus cōscriptīs, in Galliam contendēs. 6. Cum finem proeliī nox fēcisset, nūntius ad lēgātum missus est. 7. Reperiāmus magnitudinem silvae. 8. Cum fortiter impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, ā suō duce vidēbantur. 9. Līberōrum nostrōrum causā nē servi diūtius simus. 10. Multae civitātēs Gallōrum, quae ā Rōmānīs sub iugum missae erant, bellum intulērunt.

## DOMUS RŌMĀNA

**493.** Pictūram Rōmānae domūs vidēmus et pulcherrima est. Vēstibulum domūs Rōmānae erat vacuus locus ante iānuam. Rōmānīs pulcher mōs erat scribendi in limine "Salvē."

Iānitor ad iānuam saepe stābat. Hīc canis saepe erat aut in solō pictūra canis cum verbīs "Cāvē canem" vidēri poterat. In ōstium Rōmānī ibant. Super iānuam erant verba, "Nihil intret malī."

Interior domus in trēs partēs dīvidēbātur. Eārum prima pars appellāta est ātrium. In mediō tēctō eius partis, lūcis et āēris causā, apertum spatium relictum est. Pluvia per eundem locum in impluvium dēscendit. In ātriō dominus suōs amīcōs accipiēbat.

Pariēs pictūrīs montium, flūminum, animālium atque virōrum et fēminārum pulchrē ōrnātus est. Locus proximus ātriō erat tablīnum. Hīc tabulae familiārēs fuērunt et in eōdem locō, dominus pecūniam servāvit.

Tertia pars domūs et pulcherrima erat peristylum, in quō pulchrī flōrēs et fontēs columnīs marmoreīs inclūdēbantur. Vēla inter hanc et tablīnum erant.

Sī fenestrae domī erant, in superiōre parte parietis et minimae erant ut hominēs in viā vidēre nōn possent.

## LESSON LXII

### IMPERATIVES. COMMANDS

*Ne tentes aut perfice. — Either don't attempt it or finish it.*

**494.** Learn the **imperative**<sup>1</sup> active and passive of all the conjugations, §§ 586, 587, 588, 589, 590, 591.

(a) The vocative is used as a case of address with the imperative.

*Boys, be brave. Fortēs, puerī, este.*

*Marcus, fight with the enemy. Pugnā, Mārce, cum hostibus.*

**495.** Learn the conjugation of **eo** in full, § 594.

### 496. TABLE OF COMMANDS

AFFIRMATIVE.	{	1st person.	Volitive Subjunctive. <i>Let us fight. Pugnēmus.</i>
		2d person.	Imperative. <i>Fight. Pugnāte.</i>
		3d person.	Volitive Subjunctive. <i>Let them fight. Pugnent.</i>
NEGATIVE (Prohibitions).	{	1st person.	Nē with subjunctive. <i>Let us not fight. Nē pugnēmus.</i>
		2d person.	Nōlī (plu. nōlīte) with present infinitive. <i>Do not fight. Nōlīte pugnāre.<sup>2</sup></i>
		3d person.	Nē with subjunctive. <i>Let them not fight. Nē pugnent.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 692 and a.

<sup>2</sup> **Nē pugnēs**, or **Nē pugnāte** — old Latin.



## 497.

## VOCABULARY

a'deō, -ī're, -ī (-īvī), -itus, <i>go to, approach, visit</i> (followed by the accusative).	lo'quor, lo'quī, loquūtus sum, <i>speaking, say.</i>
crē'dō, -ere, crē'didī, crē'ditus, <i>trust, believe.</i>	pā'reō, -ē're, pā'ruī, —, <i>obey.</i>
e'ō, ī're, ī (-īvī), ī'tus, <i>go.</i>	plā'ceō, -ē're, -uī, -itus, <i>please.</i>
ex'eō, -ī're, -ī (-īvī), -itus, <i>go out, withdraw.</i>	resi'stō, -ere, re'stitī, —, <i>resist, oppose.</i>
	ser'viō, -ī're, -ī'vī, -ī'tus, <i>to be slave to, serve.</i>

498. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

credit

loquacious

resist

placid

## RULE

499. **Dative with Intransitive Verbs.** — Many verbs meaning to *benefit* or *injure*, *please* or *displease*, *command*<sup>1</sup> or *obey*, *serve* or *resist*, *believe* or *distrust*, *persuade*, *pardon*, *envy*, *threaten*, *be angry*, and the like, take the dative.

*Believe me.* **Mihi crēde.**

*He persuaded the soldiers.* **Militibus persuāsīt.**

## EXERCISES ON COMMANDS

500. *Translate :*

- (a) 1. **Ī.** 2. **Pārē mihi.** 3. **Servīte, servī, dominīs.**  
 4. **Nōlī putāre mē tibi restitisse.** 5. **Domum eāmus.**  
 (b) 1. **Crēdite mihi.** 2. **Resiste malīs comitibus.** 3. **Affer mihi litterās.** 4. **Verbō amīcī, Cicerō, crēde.** 5. **Sī mānsissent, cōpiīs hostium restitissent.**

501. (a) 1. Girls, remain at home. 2. Let us speak about the things which we know. 3. Children, obey your mothers. 4. Soldiers, send hostages to the victor. 5. Friends, do not surrender to the Germans.

<sup>1</sup> **Iubeō** takes the accusative, as subject of a following infinitive.

(b) 1. Throw the heavy stones against the wall. 2. Soldiers, march to the nearest town and bring a supply of grain quickly to the army. 3. Let us go to Rome. 4. Boys, for the sake of your honor, resist evil companions. 5. My brave friend, fear nothing, and do not run from danger.

## EXERCISES

**502.** *Translate, giving the construction of each noun:*

(a) 1. *Ībimus Rōmā.* 2. *Nōbīs imperāvit ut rēgī servirēmus.* 3. *Dixerunt facile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestarent, tōtū Galliae imperiō potiri.*<sup>1</sup> 4. *Militibus imperat ut in proelium eant.* 5. *Omnibus vicīs aedificiisque, quae adire potuerant, incēnsīs, castra posuerunt.*

(b) 1. *Rūmōribus audītīs, imperiō rēgis restitimus.* 2. *Cum legiō in proelium fortiter īsset, hostibus nōn diūtissimē restitit.* 3. *Maiōrī tamen parti placuit castra dēfendere.*<sup>1</sup> 4. *Sī mihi imperāvisset nē verbum loquerer, ei pāruissem.* 5. *Civitātī persuāsit, ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiīs exirent.*

**503.** *Translate:*

(a) 1. If they had trusted me, they would not have gone. 2. The defenders received many wounds while defending their native land. 3. If the towers were higher, we could resist the enemy better. 4. Although they believe us, they will not obey us. 5. If you should go at daybreak, it would please me.

(b) 1. Servants, obey your masters as well as possible. 2. We know that you have approached the bank of the river. 3. The general, having been warned of the danger, led his forces into camp. 4. When he has seized the royal power, he will send some men from the city, and others he will kill. 5. The left wing of the army approached the enemy's line of battle as bravely as possible.

---

<sup>1</sup> Infinitive used as a substantive.

## LESSON LXIII

### VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ. DATIVE OF PURPOSE

*Fere libenter homines id quod volunt credunt. — Men willingly believe that which they wish.\**

**504.** Learn the conjugation of volō, nōlō, mālō, § 592.

**505. Syntax of volō, nōlō, mālō.** — The infinitive with subject accusative is used after volō, nōlō, mālō when its subject is not the same as that of the governing verb. When the subject of both verbs is the same, the complementary infinitive is used.<sup>1</sup>

*I wish you to go. Volō tē ire.*

*I wish to go. Volō ire.*

**506.**

#### VOCABULARY

difficul'tās, -tā'tis, f., difficulty.

hi'ems, hi'emis, f., winter, stormy weather.

re'giō, -ō'nis, f., region, boundary, district.

subsi'dium, -i, n., aid, support.

mā'lō, māl'le, mā'lui, prefer.

nō'lō, nōl'le, nō'lui, be unwilling.

occid'ō, -ere, -cī'dī, -cī'sus, kill, slay.

pel'lō, -ere, pe'pulli, pul'sus, drive out, put to flight, defeat.

vo'lō, vel'le, vo'lui, be willing, wish.

**507. What Latin words do the following suggest?**

voluntary

expel

region

volitive

\* Caesar.

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 694 and a.

## RULE

**508. Dative of Purpose.** — A dative expressing purpose is used with *sum* and a few other verbs.

*The legion served as aid to Caesar. Legiō auxiliō Caesarī fuit.*  
*He sent men as aid to the army. Virōs subsidiō exercitui mīsit.*

(a) Here *auxiliō* and *subsidiō* are dative of purpose.

## EXERCISES

**509. Translate:**

(a) 1. Vult hostēs pellere. 2. Deō volente, Rōmae tē vidēbimus. 3. His difficultatibus duae rēs erant subsidiō. 4. Volō tē tuō patri placitūrum esse. 5. Māluērāmus cōpiās vestrās auxiliō nobīs et nostrō exercitui ventūrās esse.

(b) 1. Decima legiō Caesarī subsidiō erat. 2. Caesar nōluit legiōnēs auxiliō Aeduīs mittere. 3. His facile pulsīs, incredibīli celeritatē ad flūmen cucurrērunt. 4. Caesar memoriā tenēbat cōsulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum. 5. Obsidibus cūstōdēs praeponit, ut, quae agant, quibuscum<sup>1</sup> loquantur, scire possit.

**510. Translate:**

(a) 1. We were willing to fight longer for our country. 2. Caesar had been unwilling to send the tenth legion as aid for Galba. 3. If I had preferred to remain at home, I should not have gone with you. 4. He thought it would not be difficult to slay the enemy. 5. Obey your leader, fight bravely.

(b) 1. Caesar could not engage in battle on account of the stormy weather. 2. If I believed your words, I would not delay my departure. 3. When we wished you to approach the regions of the Germans, we could see no difficulty. 4. We wish to defend these regions with towers of such height. 5. Caesar remained in camp ten days that the remaining cavalry might come as aid to him.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Cum* is often appended to a pronoun as an enclitic.

## LESSON LXIV

### SEMI-DEPONENTS. DATIVE OF POSSESSOR

*Gaudeamus igitur iuvenes dum sumus.*—*Let us rejoice, then, while we are young.*

**511.** Semi-deponents are verbs which have the *present system* in the active voice and the *perfect system* in the passive voice, but both with the active meaning.

au'deō, -ē're, au'sus sum, *dare*.

gau'deō, -ē're, gāvī'sus sum, *rejoice*.

so'leō, -ē're, so'litus sum, *be wont*.

fī'dō, fī'dere, fī'sus sum, *trust*.

### 512.

#### VOCABULARY

au'deō, -ē're, au'sus sum, *dare*.

clas'sis, -is (-ium), *f., a fleet*.

cō'gō, -ere, cōē'gī, cōāc'tus, *collect, compel*.

conve'niō, -ī're, -vē'nī, -ven'tus, *assemble*.

conven'tus, -ūs, *m., assembly, meeting*.

ēdo'ceō, -ē're, ēdo'cui, ēdoc'tus, *show, inform, instruct*.

fī'dō, fī'erī, fac'tus sum, *become, be made, happen*. Learn the conjugation, § 595.

trāns'eō, -ī're, -ī'vī (-ī) -itus, *go across*.

in'struō, -ere, -strū'xī, -strūc'tus, *draw up, construct*.

prōgre'dior, -ī, -gres'sus sum, *advance*.

Ve'netī, -ō'rum, *m., Veneti*.

**513.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

audacious      transitive      instruct      progress

#### RULE

**514. Dative of Possessor.**—The dative is used with *sum* to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject.

*The boy has a book.* Puerō liber est.

*Cicero's name was Marcus Tullius.* Cicerōnī nōmen erat Mārcus Tullius.

## EXERCISES

515. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Virō erat pulcherrima domus. 2. Nōne hieme in mare ire ausus es? 3. Impetus in eōs fit sed eis nullus timor est. 4. Fortis vir praeerat eis civitatibus ex quibus exercitum coegerat. 5. Brūtum adulescentem classi nāvibusque, quās convenire iusserat, praeficit et in Venetōs eum proficisci iubet.

(b) 1. Quaerit ex eō solō quae in conventū dixerit. 2. Militibus multa tela erant. 3. Huic magnis donis persuadet ut ad hostēs transeat, et quid fieri velit edocet. 4. Proximō diē Caesar ē castris copiās suās eduxit et paulum ā castris prōgressus, aciem instruxit. 5. Nōlite id velle quod fieri nōn potest.

516. *Translate:*

(a) 1. The manners of my pupils please me much. 2. The Veneti had very many ships. 3. They informed the Veneti that they wished to assemble near the shore. 4. They went across the river and led the army among the enemy. 5. The leader dares to advance to the regions of the enemy and is asking about the character of the people.

(b) 1. Caesar drew up a line of battle on the top of the hill. 2. Other forces were sent as aid to Caesar. 3. They had set out in the winter and two thousand of their men had been slain. 4. Citizens, trust the defenders of your country. 5. The soldier had great courage and he became leader of the enemy.

## LESSON LXV

### GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

---

*Crescit eundo. — It grows as it goes.\**

---

**517.** The **Gerund** is a *verbal noun*. It is formed by the present stem + **nd** (or **end**) + neuter endings of the second declension. It is found in the genitive, dative, accusative, ablative, singular only; **portandī**, **portandō**, **portandum**, **portandō**.

**518.** The **Gerundive** is a *verbal adjective*.<sup>1</sup> It is formed by the present stem + **nd** (or **end**) + endings of **magnus**; **portandus**, **-a**, **-um**.

**519. Gerund and Gerundive Uses.** — The gerund may take a direct object. When it would have an object, the gerundive is generally used instead, the object taking the case of the gerund and the gerundive agreeing with the object as an adjective.

*Desirous of seeking peace.* **Cupidus pācem petendī** (gerund). **Cupidus pācis petendae** (gerundive construction).

*We have hope of conquering the enemy.* **Habēmus spem vincendī hostēs** (gerund). **Habēmus spem vincendōrum hostium** (gerundive construction).

---

\* The motto of New Mexico. Literally: *By going*.

<sup>1</sup> An easy way to distinguish gerund and gerundive is to think that "the gerundive is an adjective."

## 520.

## VOCABULARY

**adver'sus**, -a, -um, *turned toward, facing, face to face.*

**commeā'tus**, -ūs, m., *supplies, provisions.*

**hiber'na**, -ō'rum, n., *winter quarters.*

**por'tus**, -ūs, m., *harbor, port.*

**praesi'dium**, -ī, n., *guard, garri-son, protection.*

**sa'lūs**, -ū'tis, f., *safety.*

**eff'ciō**, -ere, -fē'ci, -fec'tus, *ac-complish, bring about.*

**clau'dō**, -ere, clau'sī, clau'sus, *shut, close.*

**occur'rō**, -ere, -cur'rī, -cur'sus, *meet.*

**prox'imē**, adv., *next, most re-cently.*

521. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

hibernate

adverse

occur

efficient

## RULE

**522. The Expression of Purpose.** — The most common ways of expressing purpose are:

1. Subjunctive with **ut**. **Vēnērunt ut urbem vidērent.** *They came to see the city.*

2. Subjunctive with relative pronoun. **Vēnērunt qui urbem vidērent.**

3. Gerundive construction with **ad**. **Vēnērunt ad urbem videndam.**

4. Gerundive construction with **causā**. **Vēnērunt urbis videndae causā.**

(a) In Latin prose purpose can not be expressed by the infinitive.

## EXERCISES

523. *Express the purpose in four ways:*

1. They went to close the gates.
2. We have teachers to instruct us.
3. Soldiers go into battle to slay the enemy.
4. Caesar came to conquer Gaul.
5. Will you hasten to meet the guard?

524. *Translate:*

- (a) 1. **Militēs pugnandī finem fēcērunt.**
2. **Ad pācem petendam cotīdiē vēnērunt.**
3. **Nautae in portum salūtis**



petendae causā contendunt. 4. Nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt. 5. Efficiēbat ut commeātūs ab Aeduīs et reliquīs civitatibus sine periculō ad sē portārī possent.

(b) 1. Paucae rēs praesidiō hibernīs erunt. 2. Timuit nē in quaerendīs suis pugnandī tempus dīmitteret. 3. Ad eōs dēfendendōs undique conveniunt. 4. Duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōscriptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentīs erant. 5. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī, cum sē in castra recipere, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant.

### 525. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Each advanced for the sake of crossing the river. 2. We were informed that the war ships had assembled, and we went into winter quarters to seek safety. 3. The Romans had very many captives. (*Express in two ways.*) 4. I was unwilling to meet you. 5. The captives resisted the victors very often.

(b) 1. We thought that Cicero, after calling the senate together, had dismissed it. 2. I asked him what he was doing. 3. The gates were closed, and a garrison being left at the camp, we sent men in different directions to seek supplies. 4. The leaders will show how great a number of war ships has been collected. 5. They met the cavalry half way up the hill, but did not dare to advance to the attack.

### PHRASES FROM CAESAR

#### 526. *Commit to memory with the translations:*

1. Salūtis causā. 2. Hōc proeliō nūntiātō. 3. His rēbus gestīs. 4. Magnō numerō interfectō. 5. His nūntiīs acceptīs.

## LESSON LXVI

### PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

---

*Ad captandum vulgus. — To catch the crowd.\**

---

**527. The Active Periphrastic Conjugation** denotes impending action. It is formed by combining the future active participle with forms of **sum**. The present of **sum** is used for the present tense, the imperfect for the imperfect, the present infinitive for the present infinitive, etc. The participle agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

*Caesar was about to announce the battle. Caesar proelium nūntiātūrus erat.*

*The Romans had intended to fight. Rōmānī pugnātūrī fuerant.*

*We thought the enemy would come. Existimāvimus hostēs ventūrōs esse.*

(a) Conjugate **scribō** through the Active Periphrastic.

**528. The Passive Periphrastic** denotes necessity or that which ought to be done. It is formed by combining the gerundive with forms of **sum**. The gerundive agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

*The soldiers must be sent. Milītēs mittendī sunt.*

*The signal must be given. Signum dandū est.*

(a) Conjugate **scribō** through the Passive Periphrastic.

---

\* Compare "to play to the gallery."

529.

## VOCABULARY

facul'tās, -tā'tis, f., opportunity,  
ability.

tempe'stās, -tā'tis, f., storm, bad  
weather.

ar'bitror, -ārī, -ā'tus sum, think.

cohor'tor, -ārī, -ā'tus sum, en-  
courage.

sta'tuō, -ere, -uī, -ū'tus, deter-  
mine, decide.

magno'pere, (magis, maximē),  
adv., greatly.

prop'ter, prep. with acc., on ac-  
count of.

sta'tim, adv., immediately.

530. *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

tempest

exhort

arbitrate

faculty

## RULE

531. **Dative of Agent.** — With the Passive Periphrastic the dative is used to denote the agent or doer of the action.

*You must give the signal. Signum tibi dandum est.*<sup>1</sup>

*Caesar must announce the battle, or The battle must be announced by Caesar. Proelium Caesarī nūntiandum est.*

## EXERCISES

532. *Translate:*

(a) 1. Statuit sibi Rhēnum esse transeundum. 2. Caesarī omnia unō tempore erant agenda. 3. Magnopere tibi placitūri fuerāmus. 4. Aciēs instruenda et militēs cohortandi erant. 5. His rēbus adductī scīvimus hiberna Gallōrum nobis capienda esse.

(b) 1. Adversō exercitūi occurrunt. 2. Pro rēpūblicā fortiter pugnātūri sumus. 3. Propter tempestātēs difficultās nāvigandī maxima est. 4. Arbitrāti sumus commeātum ad hiberna statim mittendum esse. 5. Dēfessō militi eius loci, ubi fuerat, relinquendī et sui recipiendī facultās nōn dabātur.

<sup>1</sup> Notice that all sentences in the active voice must be recast before they can be expressed literally by the Passive Periphrastic.

**533. Translate:**

(a) 1. The gates must often be closed by us for the sake of safety. 2. I had intended to give you a better opportunity of seeing the beautiful buildings at Rome. 3. Private citizens, be an aid to the king. 4. The general set out late in the day to encourage the garrison. 5. Our forces must be sent across the wide river, the town of the enemy must be burned, and their children taken as hostages.



The Temple of Apollo in Pompeii.

(b) 1. The Romans had no good ports. (*Two ways.*) 2. We did not dare to meet the Veneti on account of the stormy weather, and took the opportunity of retreating into port. 3. Having been greatly influenced by the reports which he had heard, Caesar determined that he must leave the winter quarters immediately. 4. Having advanced many miles, we met the Veneti face to face. 5. They had been informed that they must drive the enemy from their boundaries immediately.

## LESSON LXVII

### IMPERSONAL VERBS

*Nil desperandum. — Never despair.\**

**534.** An **Impersonal Verb**<sup>1</sup> is one which has no personal subject; it is used in the third person singular only: **Licet, -ēre, licuit, it is permitted. Pluit, it rains.**

1. Verbs that have a clause or an infinitive as subject are called impersonal verbs.

*It happened that the night was long. Accidit ut esset nox longa.*

*It is permitted the soldier to do that thing. Id militi facere licet.*

2. Intransitive verbs may be used impersonally in the passive.

*Fighting is carried on. Pugnātur.*

*He (they, etc.) came, (literally) it was come. Ventum est.*

### 535.

#### VOCABULARY

**ac/cidō, -ere, ac/cidī, fall, hap-  
pen, (impersonal) it happens.**

**li/cet, -ēre, -uit, (impers. with  
dat.) it is permitted.**

**lū'na, -ae, f., moon.**

**plō'nus, -a, -um, full.**

**vel, conj., or; vel . . . vel, either  
. . . or.**

**prōvi'deō, -ēre, -vī'dī, -vīsus,  
provide.**

**536.** *What Latin words do the following suggest?*

lunatic

accident

plenipotentiary

illicit

---

\* Horace. Literally: *Nothing ought to be despaired of.*

<sup>1</sup> Compare § 682.

## EXERCISES

**537.** *Translate, explaining the use of each infinitive and subjunctive:*

(a) 1. Ab hostibus pugnatum erat. 2. Licet nobis imperatorem bonum sequi. 3. Accidit ut luna plena esset. 4. Num suos secum servos sunt in urbem ducturi? 5. De frumento reliquoque commeatu erat provisum.

(b) 1. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. 2. Licet nobis bellum cum Germanis gerere. 3. Deditione facta, obsidibusque acceptis nihil de bello timendum esse existimavit. 4. Quemque domum reverti, optimum videtur. 5. Pugnatum ab hostibus ita acriter est, ut<sup>1</sup> a viris fortibus in extremam spe salutis pugnari debuit.

**538.** *Translate:*

(a) 1. It happens that we see a full moon. 2. Caesar must not tell who has been conquered. 3. They had two hundred buildings. (*Express two ways.*) 4. Fighting will be carried on long and fiercely. 5. It was permitted the garrison to retreat into the town and close the gates.

(b) 1. To promise great things is easy. 2. I showed what must be done that day. 3. The full moon could be seen. 4. It was permitted us to collect a fleet. 5. Caesar will provide aid for the city.

## VIRGINES VESTALES

**539.** Vesta dea fuit ignis et foci. Templum Vestae fuit Romae quo in templo sex virginēs Vestālēs sacrum ignem continenter ministrāverunt.

Sex annos natae hae parvae puellae hoc ministerium iniērunt, a Pontifice Maximō dēlectae. Trigintā annos officiis in templo functae sunt quod post tempus aut templum relin-

---

<sup>1</sup> *As*, see general vocabulary.

quere aut manēre eis licuit. Maximō in honōre ā populō Rōmānō habitae sunt.

Vestālēs sacrō ignī praestitērunt et in tempore periculī eum ad locum salūtis mōvērunt. Nōnumquam Rōmā ignem extulērunt nē in hostium manūs venīret.

Rōmānī putāvērunt venerātiōnem Vestae in Italiam illātam esse ab Aenēā, unō ē maiōribus et eum primās virginēs Vestālēs dēlēgisse.



A Vestal Virgin.

# LESSON LXVIII

## REVIEW OF CASES<sup>1</sup>

*Bis dat qui cito dat. — He gives twice who gives quickly.*

540.	Nominative	{ Subject of a Finite Verb. § 15. Predicate Noun. § 28.
541.		{ Possession. § 27. Of the Whole. § 260. Description or Quality. § 441. Definite Measurement. § 441, a.
Genitive		{ Indirect Object. § 56. After adjectives meaning <i>like, unlike, equal, unequal, and near.</i> § 230. With Adjectives meaning <i>dear, faithful, friendly, suitable, useful,</i> etc. § 269.
542.		{ With verbs compounded with { ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, præ, sub, super, circum. § 419. Dative { With Intransitive Verbs meaning <i>benefit or injure, please or displease, command or obey, serve or resist, believe or distrust, persuade, pardon, envy, threaten, be angry,</i> and the like. § 499. Agent with Passive Periphrastic. § 531. Possessor with <i>sum.</i> § 514. Of Purpose. § 508.

<sup>1</sup> The forms may be reviewed as the teacher sees fit.



## EXERCISES

**543.** *Translate, giving the construction of each noun and pronoun:*<sup>1</sup>

(a) 1. Militibus Caesaris pugnandum est. 2. Maior sorōrum ab omnibus pulchrior habēbātur. 3. Caesarī id nūntiatum est. 4. Imperātor militibus imperāvit ut fortiter resisterent. 5. In mūrō standi potestās erat nulli.

(b) 1. Erat fossa ducentōrum pedum in longitudinem. 2. Belgis bellum intulērunt. 3. Hic amicus meus est; ille, amicus tuus. 4. Equitātui, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aedui miserant, fortis vir praeerat. 5. His rēbus cognitis, explorātōrēs centuriōnēsq̄ue praemittit, qui locum idōneum castris deligant.

**544.** *Translate:*

(a) 1. The Germans did not have large horses. (*Two ways.*) 2. The Belgians say that they are the bravest of all. 3. The fleet was sent as a protection to the city. 4. We met the girls in the road. 5. We must take the opportunity not only of burning the buildings but also of destroying the grain.

(b) 1. They did not dare to resist the enemy. 2. For the sake of safety they made a wall of ten feet in height. 3. Let us persuade the enemy to surrender. 4. The men were like their leader in character. 5. He will order the lieutenant to send soldiers as aid to our men.

---

<sup>1</sup> In these review lessons consult the general vocabulary for new words.

## LESSON LXIX

### REVIEW OF CASES

---

*Ense petit placidam sub libertate quietem. — With the sword she seeks calm repose in freedom.\**

---

- |   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| 545.                                    | { | Adverbial. § 382.                                    |
| Accu-<br>sative                         |   | Direct Object. § 16.                                 |
|   |   | Duration of Time and Extent of Space. § 286.         |
|   |   | Place <i>into, to, toward, near</i> which. § 76.     |
|   |   | Subject of an Infinitive. § 307.                     |
|   |   | With prepositions. § 333.                            |
|   |   |  |
| 546.                                    | { | Absolute. § 463.                                     |
| Abla-<br>tive                           |   | Accompaniment with <i>cum</i> . § 102.               |
|   |   | After a Comparative with <i>quam</i> omitted. § 221. |
|   |   | Agent with a preposition. § 140.                     |
|   |   | Cause without a preposition. § 195.                  |
|   |   | Degree of Difference. §§ 247, 383.                   |
|   |   | Manner with or without <i>cum</i> . § 114..          |
|   |   | Means or instrument. § 65.                           |
|   |   | Place <i>in, from, out of</i> which. § 76.           |
|   |   | Quality. § 441.                                      |
|   |   | Specification without a preposition. § 204.          |
|   |   | Separation with or without a preposition. § 316.     |
| Time when without a preposition. § 147. |   |  |
|   |   | With prepositions. § 332.                            |
|   |   | With verbs <i>utor, fruor</i> , etc. § 375.          |

---

\* The motto of Massachusetts.

547.

**Locative** { Place in or at which with names of cities and towns, *domus*, and *rūs*. § 278.

**548. Vocative.** — The vocative is used as the case of address. § 494, *a*.

## EXERCISES

**549. Translate, giving the construction of each noun and pronoun :**

(a) 1. Plūrimum inter eōs Rōmānōs et virtūte et hominum numerō posse sciēbant. 2. His verbis audītis, eum ab sē dīmittit. 3. Haec rēs latus ūnum castrōrum ripis flūminis mūniēbat. 4. Galbam cum sex cohortibus praesidiō legiōnibus reliquit. 5. Ab his castris vir, Galba nōmine, magnā cum celeritāte octō mīlia passuum iit.

(b) 1. Dux summā virtūte ad bellum ā Caesare mittētur. 2. Mediā nocte Caesar Isdem ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiī vēnerant, eōs auxiliō urbi mīsit. 3. Decem diēbus ante Galba mūrum dēfēnsōribus nūdāverat. 4. Venetī multō potentiōrēs hostibus erant. 5. Manēre Rōmae est facillimum.

**550. Translate :**

(a) 1. Friends, do not surrender to the Germans. 2. The citizens at Rome wished to please their king. 3. The large animals ran out of the woods at daybreak and remained near the town all day. 4. Let us use our javelins and deprive the city of its defenders. 5. If the leader orders you will set out.

(b) 1. Marcus, surpass the enemy in courage. 2. Caesar was informed that the top of the mountain was held by the enemy. 3. Caesar with his brave men stormed the town with great courage. 4. We followed the cavalry five miles

and fought much more bravely than they. 5. After the gates had been closed, a message was sent to the general who was attacking the town.



Julius Caesar.  
From a bust in Naples.

## LESSON LXX

### REVIEW OF SUBJUNCTIVES

---

*Palnam qui meruit ferat. — Let him who deserves it reap the reward.\**

---

Subjunctive	551.	Causal Clauses. § 471.
		Circumstantial Clauses. § 470.
		Concessive Clauses. § 472.
		Conditional Clauses. §§ 478–482.
		Indirect Discourse { Questions. § 402.
		Subordinate Clauses. § 554.
		Purpose. § 353.
		Result. § 379.
		Volitive. § 348.

### EXERCISES

552. *Translate, explaining each subjunctive :*

- (a) 1. Nōlite iudicāre nē iudicēmini. 2. Quid ēgeris sciō.  
3. Cum Caesar aciem instrūisset, legiōnibus signum dedit.  
4. Cum domī meae paene interfectus essem, senātum convocāvī.  
5. Si facultās militibus data esset, ācerriamē pugnāre ausī essent.  
(b) 1. Cum ā tertiā hōrā ad sōlis occāsum pugnātum esset, tamen cōpiae victae sunt. 2. Cum nobīs liceat in portum ire, quam vēlōcissimē nāvīgēmus. 3. Tantīs periculis occurrit ut salutis causā fugiat. 4. Repperit Gallōs, quī ea loca incolerent, ā Germāniā vēnisse. 5. Si militēs cohortēris, fortius pugnent.

---

\* The motto of Lord Nelson, the victor of Trafalgar. Literally: *Let him who merits bear the palm.*

**553. Translate:**

(a) 1. He saw in how great peril the camp was. 2. They surrender to Caesar, since he is very powerful. 3. When Cicero saw the danger, he tried to save the state. 4. He sent a man to enlist two legions. 5. Caesar commanded us to bring the hostages back.



The Tomb of Emperor Hadrian at Rome.

(b) 1. Since their fleet had been taken, they could not defend themselves. 2. Let us not send the Gauls under the yoke. 3. Although we do not understand the movements of the stars, nevertheless it pleases us to see them. 4. If the enemy had been braver, they would not have sought peace. 5. The army was so powerful that it could not be taken.

## LESSON LXXI

### REVIEW OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE

---

*Finis coronat opus. — The end crowns the work.*

---

**554.** In **Indirect Discourse** a statement is expressed by the infinitive; questions, commands, and subordinate clauses, by the subjunctive.

If the verb introducing the Indirect Discourse is in a principal tense, the subjunctives are generally in principal tenses; if it is historical, the subjunctives are generally historical. See § 364.

DIRECT	INDIRECT
Statement: <i>Labor was difficult.</i> <b>Labor difficilis erat.</b>	<i>He said that labor had been difficult.</i> <b>Dixit labōrem difficilem fuisse.</b>
Command: <i>Close the gate.</i> <b>Claude portam.</b>	<i>He orders him to close the gate.</i> <b>Imperat ei ut portam claudat.</b>
Question: <i>Where had you been?</i> <b>Ubi fuerās?</b>	<i>He asked where you had been.</i> <b>Quaesivit ubi fuissēs.</b>
Question: <i>Where will you be?</i> <b>Ubi eris?</b>	<i>He asked where you were to be.</i> <b>Quaesivit ubi futūrus essēs.</b>
Subordinate clause: <i>They went because they had been sent.</i> <b>Īvērunt quod missi erant.</b>	<i>They said that they had gone because they had been sent.</i> <b>Dixērunt sē isse quod missi essent.</b>

### EXERCISES

**555.** *Translate, explaining the use of all subjunctives:*

- 1.** Lēgātis respondit, siquid vellent, ad sē reverterentur.
- 2.** Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faceret, in eam partem itūrōs (esse) atque ibi futūrōs

(esse) Helvėtiōs, ubi Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset. 3. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab hīs vērērent, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum inferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacesantur, quā armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuētūdō sit ā maiōribus trādita quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. 4. Haec tamen dicere, vēnisse invitōs, ēlectōs domō; sī suam grātiā Rōmānī velint, posse iīs ūtilēs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre, quōs armīs possēderint; sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē dii quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint.



The Colosseum at Rome.

While stands the Colosseum, Rome shall stand,  
When falls the Colosseum, Rome shall fall,  
And when Rome falls — the World.

— BYRON, *Childe Harold*.



# APPENDIX

## ENGLISH AND LATIN

### AN ENGLISH-LATIN LETTER

**556.** Few students realize how constantly Latin enters into almost everything they do. The following was written by a business man — a firm believer in Latin — to illustrate this fact to a doubting pupil.

"Latin is a great help in everything we study. In Book-keeping, it is much easier to understand *debit* and *credit* if we know their derivation; in Algebra, it shows us without a rule the difference between *identity* and *equation*; in Geometry, Q. E. D. (*quod erat demonstrandum*) is much easier to say than *which was to be proven*. In Botany, Agriculture, and nearly all the Sciences, most of the names come from the Latin (or Greek), while it is impossible to get so much out of History and German without Latin, as with it.

"But in English — the most everyday practical study of all — Latin helps us most. We cannot get away from it. If we know Latin, we never misspell *separate*, *preparation*, *precedence*, *laudable*, and so on. Consciously or unconsciously we use it all the time, not only indirectly in fully half the words we speak or write, but directly as well. We see a football poster:

#### High School versus Academy

Game called at 3 P.M.

Do we know the italicized words? In the game only *bona*

*fide* students are allowed to play; others are unfit to represent our *Alma Mater*. We go to the game and pay our money (which has *e pluribus unum* stamped on it) to the manager, who is *ex officio* gate-keeper. Our team beats the other (or *vice versa*) and the captain makes an *ex tempore* speech. We pretend the other team is dead, and we hold a *post mortem* celebration, parading the streets with a big banner with a *fac-simile* of the rival school marked *In Memoriam* and *Requiescat in Pace*.

"If the principal opposes athletics, we may argue *pro* and *con(tra)*, urging a *referendum* to the students. A single *lapsus linguae* may spoil our case *in toto*. We may use an effective *a priori* argument, or say there is *prima facie* evidence that football is a good thing; but if we fail to make our point, things remain *in statu quo*, the principal gives his *ultimatum*, and we make our *exit*.

"And so I could go on *ad infinitum* by talking of *fiat* money, *ad valorem* tariff duties, *ex post facto* laws, and *ante bellum* days, when the *per capita* income of the country was less *per annum* than it is now. But you ought to be studying your Latin, instead of reading this about it, so I will stop."

#### LATIN IN SCIENCE

**557.** Below are given a few of the Latin words in science and mathematics.

*Agriculture* : agriculture, horticulture, floriculture, arable, cereal, biennial, perennial, stamen, corolla, calyx, fungus.

*Biology* : animal, quadruped, centipede, nares, pelvis, pectus, vertebra, tibia, femur, digit, cuticle, antennae, pulmonary, maxilla, mammal.

*Mathematics* : plus, minus, exponent, coefficient, transpose, subtract, subtrahend, minuend, dividend, divisor, multiplicand, multiplier, decimal, unit, radius, digit, radical.

## STATE MOTTOES

**558.** Many States have Latin mottoes some of which have already appeared in the Lessons.

Ad astra per aspera . . . . .	Kansas
Animis opibusque parati dum spiro spero . . . . .	South Carolina
Cedant arma togae . . . . .	Wyoming
Crescit eundo . . . . .	New Mexico
Dirigo . . . . .	Maine
Ditat Deus . . . . .	Arizona
E pluribus unum . . . . .	United States
Ense petit placidam sub libertate quietem . . . . .	Massachusetts
Excelsior . . . . .	New York
Justitia omnibus . . . . .	District of Columbia
Montani semper liberi . . . . .	West Virginia
Nil sine numine . . . . .	Colorado
Qui transtulit sustinet . . . . .	Connecticut
Regnant populi . . . . .	Arkansas
Salve . . . . .	Idaho
Salus populi suprema lex esto . . . . .	Missouri
Scuto bonae voluntatis tuae coronasti nos . . . . .	Maryland
Si quaeris peninsulam amoenam circumspice . . . . .	Michigan
Sic semper tyrannis . . . . .	Virginia

## LATIN WORDS IN THE CONSTITUTION

**559.** Note the large proportion of words derived from the Latin.<sup>1</sup>

*Preamble to the Constitution*

*We, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, secure*

---

<sup>1</sup> Selections from English Classics with which the student is familiar may be treated in the same way.

the blessings of *liberty* to ourselves and our *posterity*, do *ordain* and *establish* this *constitution* for the *United States* of America.

## LATIN PHRASES

560. Below is a partial list of familiar Latin phrases, some of which have already appeared in the mottoes of the lessons.

Ad finem	Excelsior
Ad infinitum	Exeunt
Ad modum	Exit
Ad nauseam	Ex officio
Ad referendum	Ex post facto
Ad valorem	Ex tempore
Alias	Ex voto
Alibi	Facsimile
Alma Mater	Fiat
Alter ego	Fiat lux
Ante bellum	Gloria in excelsis
Aqua vitae	Habeas corpus
Bona fide	In armis
Carthago delenda est	In esse
Cave canem	In extremis
Ceteris paribus	Infra dignitatem (infra dig.)
Corpus Christi	In memoriam
De gustibus non disputandum	In pace
De novo	In posse
Deo, amicis, patriae	In situ
Deo volente or Volente deo	In statu quo
Deus vobiscum	Inter nos
Dramatis personae	In toto
Dux femina facti	Ipse dixit
Ecce homo	Ipso facto
E pluribus unum	Ita lex scripta est
	Labor omnia vincit

Lapsus linguae	Pro bono publico
Lapsus memoriae	Pro et con
Lares et Penates	Pro rata
Laus Deo	Pro tempore
Lex non scripta	Quid nunc
Lex terrae	Requiescat in pace
Mea culpa	Res gestae
Mens sana in corpore sano	Semper fidelis
Meum et tuum	Sine die
Mirabile dictu	Sine dubio
Modus operandi	Sine qua non
Morituri salutamus	Sui generis
Multum in parvo	Summum bonum
Ne plus ultra	Te Deum laudamus
Nolens volens	Tempus fugit
Non compos mentis	Terra firma
Nulli secundus	Una voce
Omnia ad Dei gloriam	Ultimatum
Pater noster	Vade mecum
Pater patriae	Veni, vidi, vici
Pax vobiscum	Versus
Per annum	Via
Per capita	Vice versa
Per diem	Vivat rex
Per se	Vivat respublica
Post mortem	Viva voce
Prima facie	Vox populi, vox Dei

### 561. ABBREVIATIONS FROM LATIN WORDS

A.D. — Annō Domini	etc. — et cētera
Aet. — Aetātis	i.e. — id est
A.M. — Ante merīdiem; Artium Magister	I.H.S. — In hōc signō; Iēsus hominum salvatōr
A.U.C. — Ab urbe conditā	I.N.R.I. — Iēsus Nazarēnus
e.g. — exempli grātiā	Rēx Iūdāeōrum

N.B. — Notā bene

P.M. — Post merīdiem

P.S. — Post scriptum

S.P.Q.R. — Senātus Popu-

lusque Rōmānus

vs. — versus.

## LATIN QUOTATIONS

**562.** Quotations from the Latin are constantly met in reading, and in the speech of many people. Below are given some of the best known, many of which have already appeared in the Lessons.

*Alea jacta est.* — *Caesar at the Rubicon.* The die is cast.

*Ave Caesar! Morituri te salutant.* — *Gladiators in the Arena.*

Hail Caesar, those about to die salute thee.

*Carpe diem.* — *Horace.* Seize the opportunity.

*Cui bono?* — *Cicero.* What's the good? (See § 508.)

*Cum grano salis.* — *Pliny.* With a grain of salt.

*De mortuis nil nisi bonum (bene).* — *Diogenes Laertius.* Of the dead nothing but good (should be spoken or said).

*Diem perdidit.* — *Titus.* I have lost a day.

*Dira necessitas.* — *Horace.* Dire necessity.

*Disjecta membra.* — *Horace.* Scattered members (parts).

*Docendo discitur.* — *Seneca.* We learn by teaching.

*Eheu fugaces anni!* — *Horace.* Alas, the fleeting years!

*Errare humanum est.* — *Seneca.* To err is human.

*Factum fieri infectum non potest.* — *Terence.* You can't undo what's done.

*Facilis descensus Averno.* — *Virgil.* The descent to Avernus is easy.

*Festina lente.* — *Augustus in Suetonius.* Make haste slowly.

*Fortes fortuna adjuvat.* — *Terence.* Fortune favors the brave.

*Finis coronat opus.* — *Ovid.* The end crowns the work.

*Fortuna caeca est.* — *Cicero.* Fortune is blind.

*Hinc illae lacrimae.* — *Terence.* Hence those tears.

*In hoc signo vinces.* — *Constantine.* In this sign (the cross) thou wilt conquer.

- In medias res. — *Horace*. Into the midst of things.  
Ipse dixit. — *Cicero*. He said it himself.  
Labor omnia vincit. — *Virgil*. Work conquers everything.  
Laudator temporis acti. — *Horace*. A praiser of times gone by.  
Licentia poetica. — *Seneca*. Poetic license.  
Lupus in fabula. — *Terence*. The wolf in the fable.  
In medio tutissimus ibis. — *Ovid*. You will go safest in the middle.  
Mens sana in corpore sano. — *Juvenal*. A sound mind in a sound body.  
Nec possum tecum vivere, nec sine te. — *Martial*. I can't live with you, nor without you.  
Nil homini certum est. — *Ovid*. Nothing is sure to man.  
Nomen et omen. — *Plautus*. The name and the portent.  
Non omnia possumus omnes. — *Lucilius*. We can't all do everything.  
Non omnis moriar. — *Horace*. I shall not wholly perish.  
(Astra castra) Numen lumen. — *Motto of Univ. of Wisconsin*.  
(The stars my camp) God my light.  
Omnia mutantur. — *Ovid*. All things change.  
O tempora! O mores! — *Cicero*. Oh the times! Oh the customs!  
Pares cum paribus facillime congregantur. — *Cicero*. Birds of a feather flock together.  
Per aspera ad astra. — *Seneca*. To the stars through bolts and bars. (Compare § 558.)  
Periculum in mora. — *Livy*. Danger in delay.  
Potior est, qui prior est. — *Terence*. First come first served, or  
The early bird catches the worm.  
Quod erat demonstrandum. — *Euclid*. Which was to be proved.  
Quot homines, tot sententiae. — *Terence*. As many opinions as people.  
Rara avis. — *Horace*. A rare bird.  
Requiescat in pace. Let him rest in peace.

Roma aeterna. — *Tibullus*. Rome the eternal.

Semper idem. — *Cicero*. Always the same.

Summa summarum. — *Plautus*. The top of the tops (The height of everything).

Suum cuique. — *Cicero*. To every one his own.

Tempus edax rerum. — *Ovid*. Time, the devourer of (all) things.

Timeo Danaos et dona ferentes. — *Virgil*. I fear the Greeks even when bringing gifts.

Ultima Thule. — *Virgil*. The farthest land.

Vae victis. — *Livy*. Woe to the vanquished!

Vanitas vanitatum et omnia vanitas. — *Ecclesiastes i, 2*. Vanity of vanities, all is vanity.

Veni, vidi, vici. — *Caesar*. I came, saw, conquered.

Vires acquirit eundo. — *Virgil*. It gains strength as it goes.

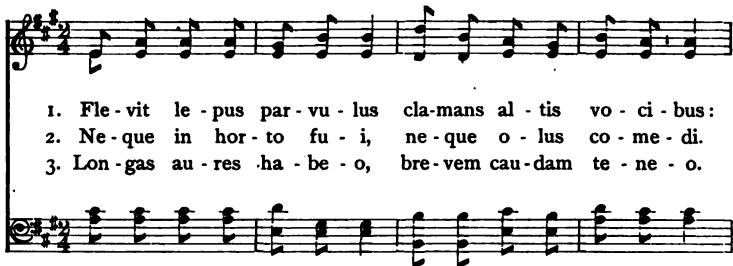
Virginibus puerisque. — *Horace*. For girls and boys.

Vita brevis, ars longa. — *Hippocrates*. Life is short, art long.



## FLEVIT LEPUS PARVULUS

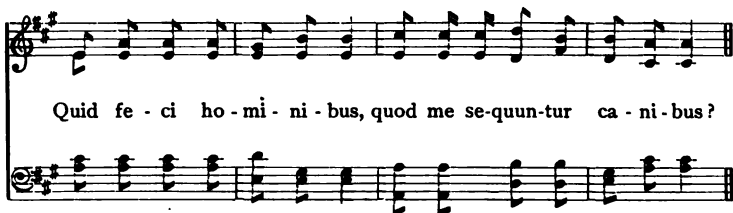
16th Century Student Song



1. Fle - vit le - pus par - vu - lus cla - mans al - tis vo - ci - bus :  
 2. Ne - que in hor - to fu - i, ne - que o - lus co - me - di.  
 3. Lon - gas au - res ha - be - o, bre - vem cau - dam te - ne - o.



Quid fe - ci ho - mi - ni - bus, quod me se - quun - tur ca - ni - bus?



Quid fe - ci ho - mi - ni - bus, quod me se - quun - tur ca - ni - bus?

4. Leves pedes habeo, magnum saltum facio. Quid etc.  
 5. Domus mea silva est, lectus meus durus est. Quid etc.

For new words in the songs on pages 215, 216 and 217, see General Vocabulary.

## DIES FESTUS HODIE

C. M. VON WEBER, 1826

1. Tem - pus hoc lae - ti - ti - ae! Di - es fes - tus ho - di - e!  
 2. Sti - lus nam et ta - bu - lae Fe - ri - a - les e - pu - lae,  
 3. Quic - quid a - gant a - li - i Iu - ve - nes a - me - mus

Om - nes de - bent psal - le - re, Can - ti - le - nas pro - me - re:  
 Et Na - so - nis car - mi - na Vel auc - to - rum pa - gi - na.  
 Et cum tur - ba plu - ri - mum Lu - dum ce - le - bre - mus.

## DOMINE SALVAM FAC


CHARLES GOUNOD

*Maestoso*  
*ff*


Do - mi - ne, sal - vam fac pa - tri - am nos - tram A - me - ri - cam,  
 et ex - au - di nos in di - e quâ in - vo - ca - ve - ri - mus te.

## GAUDEAMUS IGITUR

Student Song



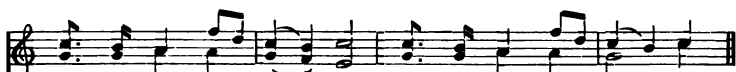
1. Gau - de - a - mus i - gi - tur, Ju - ve - nes dum su - mus;  
 2. U - bi sunt, qui an - te nos In mun - do fu - e - re?  
 3. Vi - ta nos - tra bre - vis est Bre - vi fi - ni - e - tur,



Gau - de - a - mus i - gi - tur, Ju - ve - nes dum su - mus;  
 U - bi sunt, qui an - te nos In mun - do fu - e - re?  
 Vi - ta nos - tra bre - vis est Bre - vi fi - ni - e - tur,



Post ju - cun - dam ju - ven - tu - tem, Post mo - les - tam se - nec - tu - tem,  
 Tran - se - as ad su - pe - ros, A - be - as ad in - fe - ros,  
 Ve - nit mors ve - lo - ci - ter, Ra - pit nos a - tro - ci - ter,



Nos ha - be - bit hu - mus, Nos ha - be - bit hu - mus.  
 Quos si vis vi - de - re, Quos si vis vi - de - re.  
 Ne - mi - ni par - ce - tur, Ne - mi - ni par - ce - tur.

4. Alma mater floreat,  
 Quæ nos educavit,  
 Caros et commilitones,  
 Dissitas in regiones  
 Sparsos, congregavit.

5. Vivat et republica  
 Et qui illam regit,  
 Vivat nostra civitas,  
 Mæcenatum caritas,  
 Quæ nos hic protegit.

## INTEGER VITAE

HORACE, Ode xxii

F. FLEMING, 1810

1. In - te - ger vi - tæ, sce - le - ris - que pu - rus  
 2. Si - ve per Syr - tes i - ter æs - tu - o - sas,  
 3. Nam - que me sil - va lu - pus in Sa - bi - na,

Non e - get Mau - ri jac - u - lis nec ar - cu, Nec ve - ne -  
 Si - ve fac - tu - rus per in - hos - pi - ta - lem Cau - ca - sum,  
 Dum me - am can - to La - la - gen, et ul - tra Ter - mi - num

na - tis gra - vi - da sa - gi - tis, Fus - ce, pha - re - tra.  
 vel quæ lo - ca fa - bu - lo - sus Lam - bit Hy - das - pes.  
 cu - ris va - gor ex - pe - di - tis, Fu - git in - er - mem.

The pure in life and free from crime needs no Moorish darts nor bow, nor, my Fuscus, a quiver laden with poisoned arrows, whether he means to journey over the boiling Syrtes, or over the inhospitable Caucasus, or the places laved by storied Hydaspes. For from me, whilst singing my Lalagé in my Sabine wood, and roving beyond its bound with cares cast aside, there fled a wolf, unarmed as I was.

Translated by WILLIAM COUTTS.

## INFLECTIONS

## NOUNS

563.

## FIRST DECLENSION

Tuba, f., *trumpet*.

SINGULAR		PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	tuba	tubae
<i>Gen.</i>	tubae	tubārum
<i>Dat.</i>	tubae	tubis
<i>Acc.</i>	tubam	tubās
<i>Abl.</i>	tubā	tubis

564.

## SECOND DECLENSION

<i>Amicus, m.,</i> <i>friend.</i>	<i>Puer, m.,</i> <i>boy.</i>	<i>Ager, m.,</i> <i>field.</i>	<i>Vir, m.,</i> <i>man.</i>	<i>Bellum, n.,</i> <i>war.</i>
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------	-----------------------------------	--------------------------------	-----------------------------------

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	amicus	puer	ager	vir	bellum
<i>Gen.</i>	amicī	puerī	agrī	virī	bellī
<i>Dat.</i>	amicō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō
<i>Acc.</i>	amicum	puerum	agrum	virum	bellum
<i>Abl.</i>	amicō	puerō	agrō	virō	bellō

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	amicī	puerī	agrī	virī	bella
<i>Gen.</i>	amicōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	bellōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	amicis	pueris	agris	viris	bellis
<i>Acc.</i>	amicos	pueros	agros	viros	bella
<i>Abl.</i>	amicis	pueris	agris	viris	bellis

565.

## THIRD DECLENSION

<i>Cōnsul, m.,</i> <i>consul.</i>	<i>Miles, m.,</i> <i>soldier.</i>	<i>Frāter, m.,</i> <i>brother.</i>	<i>Flūmen, n.,</i> <i>river.</i>
--------------------------------------	--------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsul	miles	frāter	flūmen
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsulis	militis	frātris	flūminis
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsuli	militi	frātri	flūmini
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsulem	militem	frātrem	flūmen
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsule	milite	frātre	flūmine

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	cōsulēs	militēs	frātrēs	flūmina
<i>Gen.</i>	cōsulum	militum	frātrum	flūminum
<i>Dat.</i>	cōsulibus	militibus	frātribus	flūminibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cōsulēs	militēs	frātrēs	flūmina
<i>Abl.</i>	cōsulibus	militibus	frātribus	flūminibus

**Ignis, m.,**  
*fire.*

**Mare, n.,**  
*sea.*

**Hostis, m., f.,**  
*enemy.*

**Urbs, f.,**  
*city.*

## SINGULAR

<i>Nom.</i>	ignis	mare	hostis	urbs
<i>Gen.</i>	ignis	maris	hostis	urbis
<i>Dat.</i>	igni	marī	hostī	urbī
<i>Acc.</i>	ignem	mare	hostem	urbem
<i>Abl.</i>	igni, -e	marī	hoste	urbe

## PLURAL

<i>Nom.</i>	ignēs	maria	hostēs	urbēs
<i>Gen.</i>	ignium	marium	hostium	urbium
<i>Dat.</i>	ignibus	maribus	hostibus	urbibus
<i>Acc.</i>	ignīs, -ēs	maria	hostīs, -ēs	urbīs, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	ignibus	maribus	hostibus	urbibus

566.

## FOURTH DECLENSION

**Exercitus, m.,**  
*army.*

**Cornū, n.,**  
*horn.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	exercitūs	exercituū	cornūs	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	exercituī	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

567.

## FIFTH DECLENSION

	Diēs, m., day.		Rēs, f., thing.	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
<i>Gen.</i>	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
<i>Dat.</i>	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
<i>Abl.</i>	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

568.

## IRREGULAR DECLENSIONS

	Deus, m., god.	Dea, f., goddess.	Domus, f., house.	Vīs, f., force, strength.
	SINGULAR			
<i>Nom.</i>	deus	dea	domus	vīs
<i>Gen.</i>	deī	deae	domūs, -ī	
<i>Dat.</i>	deō	deae	domuī, -ō	
<i>Acc.</i>	deum	deam	domum	vim
<i>Abl.</i>	deō	deā	domō, -ā	vī
	PLURAL			
<i>Nom.</i>	deī, diī, dī	deae	domūs	virēs
<i>Gen.</i>	deōrum, deum	deārum	domuum, -ōrum	virium
<i>Dat.</i>	deīs, diīs, dīs	deābus	domibus	viribus
<i>Acc.</i>	deōs	deās	domōs, -ūs	virīs, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	deīs, diīs, dīs	deābus	domibus	viribus

## ADJECTIVES

569.

## FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Bonus, good.

	SINGULAR		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō

## PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonōrum	bonarum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonis	bonis	bonis
<i>Acc.</i>	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Abl.</i>	bonis	bonis	bonis

## 570. THIRD DECLENSION — THREE ENDINGS

*Ācer, sharp.*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācria	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācris (ēs)	ācris (ēs)	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

## 571. THIRD DECLENSION — TWO ENDINGS

*Fortis, brave.*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
<i>Gen.</i>	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
<i>Dat.</i>	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortem	forte	fortis (ēs)	fortia
<i>Abl.</i>	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

## 572. THIRD DECLENSION — ONE ENDING

*Potēns, powerful.*

	SINGULAR	NEUT.
	M. AND F.	
<i>Nom.</i>	potēns	potēns
<i>Gen.</i>	potentis	potentis
<i>Dat.</i>	potentī	potentī
<i>Acc.</i>	potentem	potēns
<i>Abl.</i>	potentī, -e	potentī, -e



## PLURAL

	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	potentēs	potentia
<i>Gen.</i>	potentium	potentium
<i>Dat.</i>	potentibus	potentibus
<i>Acc.</i>	potentēs, -is	potentia
<i>Abl.</i>	potentibus	potentibus

## 573. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

*Mellior, better.*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	M. AND F.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	mellior	melius	meliōrēs	meliōra
<i>Gen.</i>	meliōris	meliōris	meliōrum	meliōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	meliōrī	meliōrī	meliōribus	meliōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	meliōrem	melius	meliōrēs (is)	meliōra
<i>Abl.</i>	meliōre	meliōre	meliōribus	meliōribus

## 574. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

*Alius, another.**Ūnus, one.*

## SINGULAR

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud	ūnus	ūna	ūnum
<i>Gen.</i>	alius	alius	alius	ūnius	ūnius	ūnius
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī
<i>Acc.</i>	aliū	aliā	aliud	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō

The plural is regular, of the First and Second Declensions.

575. *Duo, two.**Trēs, three.*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trīs (trēs)	trīs (trēs)	tria
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus

## 576.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

## POSITIVE

fortis

vēlōx

miser

ācer

## COMPARATIVE

fortior

vēlōcior

miserior

ācrior

## SUPERLATIVE

fortissimus

vēlōcissimus

miserrimus

ācerrimus

## 577.

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

## POSITIVE

bonus, *good*malus, *bad*magnus, *great*parvus, *small*multus, *much*multum, *much*multi, *many*senex, *old*iuvenis, *young*idōneus, *suitable*exterus, *outer*inferus, *low*posterus, *hinder*superus, *high*

## COMPARATIVE

melior

peior

maior

minor

plūs

plūrēs

senior (*maior nātū*)iūnior (*minor nātū*)

magis idōneus

exterior

inferior

posterior

superior

## SUPERLATIVE

optimus

pessimus

maximus

minimus

plūrimus

plūrimum

plūrimī

maximus nātū

minimus nātū

maximē idōneus

extrēmus or extimus

infimus or imus

postrēmus or postumus

suprēmus or summus

(cis, citrā)

(in, intrā)

(prae, prō)

(prope)

(ultrā)

citerior, *hither*interior, *inner*prior, *former*propior, *nearer*ulterior, *farther*

citimus

intimus

primus

proximus

ultimus

facilis

difficilis

similis

dissimilis

gracilis

humilis

facilior

difficilior

similior

dissimilior

gracilior

humilior

facillimus

difficillimus

simillimus

dissimillimus

gracillimus

humillimus

## 578.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātŭ (lātus)	lātius	lātissimŭ
pulchrŭ (puleher)	pulchrius	pulcherrimŭ
miserŭ (miser)	miserius	miserrimŭ
fortiter (fortis)	fortius	fortissimŭ
ācritēr (ācer)	ācrius	ācerrimŭ
facile (facilis)	facilius	facillimŭ
bene (bonus)	melius	optimŭ
male (malus)	peius	pessimŭ
magnopere (magnus)	magis	maximŭ
parum (parvus)	minus	minimŭ
diū	diūtius	diūtissimŭ

## 579.

## NUMERALS

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1. ūnus, -a, -um	primus, -a, -um
2. duo, duae, duo	secundus
3. trēs, tria	tertius
4. quattuor	quārtus
5. quinque	quintus
6. sex	sextus
7. septem	septimus
8. octō	octāvus
9. novem	nōnus
10. decem	decimus
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus
12. duodecim	duodecimus
13. tredecim	tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15. quīndecim	quintus decimus
16. sēdecim	sextus decimus
17. septendecim	septimus decimus
18. duodēvigintī	duōdēvicēsīmus
19. ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsīmus
20. vīgintī	vicēsīmus
21. vīgintī ūnus	vicēsīmus primus
(ūnus et vīgintī)	

## CARDINALS

29.	ūndētrīgintā
30.	trīgintā
40.	quadrāgintā
50.	quīnquāgintā
60.	sexāgintā
70.	septuāgintā
80.	octōgintā
90.	nōnāgintā
100.	centum
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a
300.	trecentī
400.	quadrīngentī
500.	quīngentī
600.	sescentī
700.	septīngentī
800.	octīngentī
900.	nōngentī
1000.	mille
2000.	duo milia

## ORDINALS

ūndētricēsīmus
tricēsīmus
quadrāgēsīmus
quīnquāgēsīmus
sexāgēsīmus
septuāgēsīmus
octōgēsīmus
nōnāgēsīmus
centēsīmus
ducentēsīmus
trecentēsīmus
quadrīngentēsīmus
quīngentēsīmus
sescentēsīmus
septīngentēsīmus
octīngentēsīmus
nōngentēsīmus
millēsīmus
bis millēsīmus

## PRONOUNS

580.

## PERSONAL

## FIRST PERSON

**Ego, I.**

## SECOND PERSON

**Tū, you (thou).**

## THIRD PERSON

**Is, he; ea, she;  
id, it.**

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	For declension see § 582.
<i>Nom.</i> ego	nōs	tū	vōs	
<i>Gen.</i> mei	{ nostrum nostrī	tui	{ vestrum vestrī	
<i>Dat.</i> mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	
<i>Acc.</i> mē	nōs	tē	vōs	
<i>Ab.</i> mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	

581.

## REFLEXIVE

## FIRST PERSON

**Meī**, of myself.

## SECOND PERSON

**Tuī**, of yourself (*thyself*).

These are declined like the personal pronoun of the same person, except that they have no nominative.

## THIRD PERSON

**Suī**, of himself, herself, itself.

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

<i>Gen.</i>	sui	sui
<i>Dat.</i>	sibi	sibi
<i>Acc.</i>	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē
<i>Abl.</i>	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē

582.

## DEMONSTRATIVE

**Hic**, *this*.

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>Gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

**Ille**, *that*.

## SINGULAR

## PLURAL

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illis	illis	illis
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

**Iste, that, that of yours.****Ipsē, self.****SINGULAR**

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	iste	ista	istud	•	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
<i>Gen.</i>	istius	istius	istius		ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
<i>Dat.</i>	isti	isti	isti		ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
<i>Acc.</i>	istum	istam	istud		ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
<i>Abl.</i>	istō	istā	istō		ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

The plural is regular.

**Is, that, he.****SINGULAR****PLURAL**

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id		ii (i), ei	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	elus	eius		eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ei	ei	ei		iis (is), eis	iis (is), eis	iis (is), eis
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id		eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō		iis (is), eis	iis (is), eis	iis (is), eis

**Idem, same.****SINGULAR****PLURAL**

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	idem	eadem	idem	{	Idem (iidem), eidem	eadem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem		eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eidem.	eidem	eidem		isdem (iisdem),	eisdem	
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem		eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem		isdem (iisdem),	eisdem	

**583.****RELATIVE****Qui, who, which, that.****SINGULAR****PLURAL**

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.		MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	qui	quae	quod		qui	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius		quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui		quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod		quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō		quibus	quibus	quibus

584.

## INTERROGATIVE

**Quis, who?**

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

**Qui, what,** is declined like the relative **quī**.

585.

## INDEFINITE

**Aliquis, some one.**

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M. AND F.	NEUT.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
<i>Nom.</i>	aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
<i>Gen.</i>	alicuius	alicuius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	alicui	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Acc.</i>	aliquem	aliquid	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Abl.</i>	aliquō	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

The adjective is **aliquī, aliqua, aliquod**.

## VERBS

586.

## FIRST CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **portō, portāre, portāvī, portātus.**STEMS: **portā-, portāv-, portāt-**.

## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

*I carry, am carrying, etc.**I am carried, etc.*

portō	portāmus	portor	portāmur
portās	portātis	portāris (-re)	portāmini
portat	portant	portātur	portantur

## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

## IMPERFECT

*I carried, was carrying, etc.*

portābam	portābāmus
portābās	portābātis
portābat	portābant

*I was carried, etc.*

portābar	portābāmur
portābāris (-re)	portābāmini
portābātur	portābantur

## FUTURE

*I shall carry, etc.*

portābō	portābimus
portābis	portābitis
portābit	portābunt

*I shall be carried, etc.*

portābor	portābimur
portāberis (-re)	portābimini
portābitur	portābuntur

## PERFECT

*I have carried, I carried, etc.*

portāvī	portāvimus
portāvistī	portāvistis
portāvit	portāverunt (-ēre)

*I have been (was) carried, etc.*

portātus	{ sum	portātī	{ sumus
(-a, -um)	{ es	(-ae, -a)	{ estis
	{ est		{ sunt

## PLUPERFECT

*I had carried, etc.*

portāveram	portāverāmus
portāverās	portāverātis
portāverat	portāverant

*I had been carried, etc.*

portātus	{ eram	portātī	{ erāmus
(-a, -um)	{ erās	(-ae, -a)	{ erātis
	{ erat		{ erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have carried, etc.*

portāverō	portāverimus
portāveris	portāveritis
portāverit	portāverint

*I shall have been carried, etc.*

portātus	{ erō	portātī	{ erimus
(-a, -um)	{ eris	(-ae, -a)	{ eritis
	{ erit		{ erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

portem	portēmus
portēs	portētis
portet	portent

porter	portēmur
portēris (-re)	portēmini
portētur	portentur



## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

## IMPERFECT

portārem	portārēmus	portārer	portārēmur
portārēs	portārētis	portārēris (-re)	portārēmini
portāret	portārent	portārētur	portārentur

## PERFECT

portāverim	portāverimus	portātus	{ sim	portātī	{ simus
portāveris	portāveritis	(-a, -um)	{ sis	(-ae, -a)	{ sitis
portāverit	portāverint		{ sit		{ sint

## PLUPERFECT

portāvissem	portāvissemus	portātus	{ essem	portātī	{ essemus
portāvisseis	portāvissetis	(-a, -um)	{ esseis	(-ae, -a)	{ essetis
portāvisset	portāvisserint		{ esset		{ essent

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

<i>Carry thou, etc.</i>		<i>Be thou carried, etc.</i>	
2d portā	portāte	2d portāre	portāmini

## FUTURE

<i>Thou shalt carry.</i>		<i>Thou shalt be carried.</i>	
2d portātō	portātōte	2d portātor	
3d portātō	portantō	3d portātor	portantor

## INFINITIVE

PRES. portāre, to carry.	portārī, to be carried.
PERF. portāvisse, to have carried.	portātus esse, to have been carried.
FUT. portātūrus esse, to be about to carry.	portātum irī, to be about to be carried.

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. portāns, -antis, carrying.	PERF. portātus, -a, -um, having been carried.
FUT. portātūrus, -a, -um, about to carry.	

**Active Voice****GERUND**

*Gen.* portandī, of carrying.  
*Dat.* portandō, for carrying.  
*Acc.* portandum, carrying.  
*Abl.* portandō, by carrying.

**Passive Voice****GERUNDIVE**

portandus, -a, -um, to be carried,  
 etc.

**SUPINE**

*Acc.* portātum, to carry.  
*Abl.* portātū, to carry.

**587.****SECOND CONJUGATION**

**PRINCIPAL PARTS:** moneō, monēre, monui, monitus.

**STEMS:** monē-, monu-, monit-.

**INDICATIVE****PRESENT**

*I advise, warn, etc.*

moneō	monēmus
monēs	monētis
monet	monent

*I am advised, warned, etc.*

moneor	monēmur
monēris (-re)	monēmini
monētur	monentur

**IMPERFECT**

*I advised, was advising, etc.*

monēbam	monēbāmus
monēbās	monēbātis
monēbat	monēbant

*I was advised, etc.*

monēbar	monēbāmur
monēbāris (-re)	monēbāmini
monēbātur	monēbantur

**FUTURE**

*I shall advise, etc.*

monēbō	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

*I shall be advised, etc.*

monēbor	monēbimur
monēberis (-re)	monēbimini
monēbitur	monēbuntur

**Active Voice****Passive Voice****PERFECT***I have advised, etc.**I have been advised, etc.*

monuī	monuimus	monitus (-a, -um)	{ sum es est	monitī	{ sumus estis sunt
monuisti	monuistis			moniti	
monuit	monuerunt (-re)			moniti	

**PLUPERFECT***I had advised, etc.**I had been advised, etc.*

monueram	monuerāmus	monitus (-a, -um)	{ eram erās erat	monitī	{ erāmus erātis erant
monuerās	monuerātis			moniti	
monuerat	monuerant			moniti	

**FUTURE PERFECT***I shall have advised, etc.**I shall have been advised, etc.*

monuerō	monuerimus	monitus (-a, -um)	{ erō eris erit	monitī	{ erimus eritis erunt
monueris	monueritis			moniti	
monuerit	monuerint			moniti	

**SUBJUNCTIVE****PRESENT**

moneam	moneāmus	monear	moneāmur
moneās	moneātis	moneāris (-re)	moneāmini
moneat	moneant	moneātur	moneantur

**IMPERFECT**

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris (-re)	monērēmini
monēret	monērent	monērētur	monērentur

**PERFECT**

monuerim	monuerimus	monitus (-a, -um)	{ sim sis sit	monitī	{ simus sitis sint
monueris	monueritis			moniti	
monuerit	monuerint			moniti	

## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

## PLUPERFECT

monuissem	monuissēmus	monitus	{ essem	monitī	{ essēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis	(-a, -um)	{ essēs	(-ae, -a)	{ essētis
monuisset	monuissent		{ esset		{ essent

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

*Advise thou, etc.*

2d monē monēte

*Be thou advised, etc.*

2d monēre monēminī

## FUTURE

*Thou shalt advise, etc.*

2d monētō monētōte

3d monētō monentō

*Thou shalt be advised, etc.*

2d monētor

3d monētor monentor

## INFINITIVE

PRES. monēre, to advise, etc.

PERF. monuisse, to have advised,  
etc.FUT. monitūrus esse, to be  
about to advise, etc.

monērī, to be advised, etc.

monitus esse, to have been ad-  
vised, etc.monitum irī, to be about to be ad-  
vised, etc.

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. monēns, -entis, advising,  
etc.FUT. monitūrus, -a, -um, about to  
advise, etc.PERF. monitus, -a, -um, having  
been advised, etc.

## GERUND

Gen. monendī, of advising, etc.

Dat. monendō, for advising, etc.

Acc. monendum, advising, etc.

Abl. monendō, by advising, etc.

## GERUNDIVE

monendus, -a, -um, to be advised,  
etc.

## SUPINE

Acc. monitum, to advise, etc.

Abl. monitū, to advise, etc.

588.

## THIRD CONJUGATION

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus.**STEMS: **dūce-, dūx-, duct-.**

## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

*I lead, am leading, etc.**I am led, etc.*

dūcō            dūcimus  
dūcis           dūcitis  
dūcit           dūcunt

dūcor           dūcimur  
dūceris (-re) dūciminī  
dūcitur        dūcuntur

## IMPERFECT

*I led, was leading, etc.**I was led, was being led, etc.*

dūcēbam       dūcēbāmus  
dūcēbās       dūcēbātis  
dūcēbat       dūcēbant

dūcēbar       dūcēbāmur  
dūcēbāris (-re) dūcēbāminī  
dūcēbātur     dūcēbantur

## FUTURE

*I shall lead, etc.**I shall be led, etc.*

dūcam           dūcēmus  
dūcēs           dūcētis  
dūcet           dūcent

dūcar           dūcēmur  
dūcēris (-re) dūcēminī  
dūcētur        dūcentur

## PERFECT

*I led, have led, etc.**I was led, have been led, etc.*

dūxī            dūximus  
dūxistī        dūxistis  
dūxit           dūxērunt (-ēre)

ductus { sum      ductī { sumus  
          { es        (-ae, -a) { estis  
          { est      { sunt

## PLUPERFECT

*I had led, etc.**I had been led, etc.*

dūxeram       dūxerāmus  
dūxerās       dūxerātis  
dūxerat        dūxerant

ductus { eram      ductī { erāmus  
          { erās      (-ae, -a) { erātis  
          { erat      { erant

## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have led, etc.**I shall have been led, etc.*

dūxerō	dūxerimus	ductus	{ erō	ducti	{ erimus
dūxeris	dūxeritis	(-a, um)	{ eris	(-ae, -a)	{ eritis
dūxerit	dūxerint		{ erit		{ erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

dūcam	dūcāmus	dūcar	dūcāmur
dūcās	dūcātis	dūcāris (-re)	dūcāminī
dūcat	dūcant	dūcātur	dūcantur

## IMPERFECT

dūcerem	dūcerēmus	dūcerer	dūcerēmur
dūcerēs	dūcerētis	dūcerēris (-re)	dūcerēminī
dūceret	dūcerent	dūcerētur	dūcerentur

## PERFECT

dūxerim	dūxerimus	ductus	{ sim	ducti	{ simus.
dūxeris	dūxeritis	(-a, -um)	{ sis	(-ae, -a)	{ sitis
dūxerit	dūxerint		{ sit		{ sint

## PLUPERFECT

dūxissem	dūxissemus	ductus	{ essem	ducti	{ essemus
dūxisse	dūxissetis	(-a, -um)	{ esse	(-ae, -a)	{ essetis
dūxisset	dūxissent		{ esset		{ essent

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

*Lead thou, etc.**Be thou led, etc.*

2d dūc (e)	dūcite	2d dūcere	dūciminī
------------	--------	-----------	----------

## FUTURE

*Thou shalt lead, etc.**Thou shalt be led, etc.*

2d dūcitō	dūcitōte	2d dūcitor	
3d dūcitō	dūcuntō	3d dūcitor	dūcuntor

**Active Voice****Passive Voice****INFINITIVE**

PRES. <i>dūcere, to lead.</i>	<i>dūcī, to be led.</i>
PERF. <i>dūxisse, to have led.</i>	<i>ductus esse, to have been led.</i>
FUT. <i>ductūrus esse, to be about to lead.</i>	<i>ductum iri, to be about to be led.</i>

**PARTICIPLES**

PRES. <i>dūcēns, -entis, leading.</i>	PERF. <i>ductus, -a, -um, having been led.</i>
FUT. <i>ductūrus, -a, -um, about to lead.</i>	

**GERUND****GERUNDIVE**

<i>Gen. dūcendī, of leading.</i>	<i>dūcendus, -a, -um, to be led.</i>
<i>Dat. dūcendō, for leading.</i>	
<i>Acc. dūcendum, leading.</i>	
<i>Abl. dūcendō, by leading.</i>	

**SUPINE**

<i>Acc. ductum, to lead.</i>
<i>Abl. ductū, to lead.</i>

**589.****FOURTH CONJUGATION****PRINCIPAL PARTS:** *audiō, audire, audīvī, auditus.***STEMS:** *audī-, audīv-, audit-.***INDICATIVE****PRESENT***I hear, am hearing, do hear, etc.**I am heard, etc.*

<i>audiō</i>	<i>audīmus</i>	<i>audior</i>	<i>audīmur</i>
<i>audīs</i>	<i>auditis</i>	<i>audiris (-re)</i>	<i>audīmini</i>
<i>audit</i>	<i>audiunt</i>	<i>auditur</i>	<i>audiuntur</i>

## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

## IMPERFECT

*I heard, was hearing, etc.**I was heard, etc.*

audiēbam	audiēbāmus	audiēbar	audiēbāmur
audiēbās	audiēbātis	audiēbāris (-re)	audiēbāminī
audiēbat	audiēbant	audiēbātur	audiēbantur

## FUTURE

*I shall hear, etc.**I shall be heard, etc.*

audiam	audiēmus	audiar	audiēmur
audiēs	audiētis	audiēris (-re)	audiēminī
audiet	audient	audiētur	audientur

## PERFECT

*I have heard, I heard, etc.**I have been (was) heard, etc.*

audīvī	audīvimus	audītus	sum	audītī	sumus
audīvistī	audīvistis	(-a, -um)	es	(-ae, -a)	estis
audīvit	audīverunt (ēre)		est		sunt

## PLUPERFECT

*I had heard, etc.**I had been heard, etc.*

audīveram	audīverāmus	audītus	eram	audītī	erāmus
audīverās	audīverātis	(-a, -um)	erās	(-ae, -a)	erātis
audīverat	audīverant		erat		erant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have heard, etc.**I shall have been heard, etc.*

audīverō	audīverimus	audītus	erō	audītī	erimus
audīveris	audīveritis	(-a, -um)	eris	(-ae, -a)	eritis
audīverit	audīverint		erit		erunt

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

audiam	audiāmus	audiar	audiāmur
audiās	audiātis	audiāris (-re)	audiāminī
audiat	audiant	audiātur	audiantur



## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

## IMPERFECT

audirem	audirēmus	audirer	audirēmur
audirēs	audirētis	audirēris (-re)	audirēmini
audiret	audirent	audirētur	audirentur

## PERFECT

audiverim	audiverimus	auditus	auditi
audiveris	audiveritis	(-a, -um) {sim sis sit	(-ae, -a) {simus sitis sint
audiverit	audiverint		

## PLUPERFECT

audivissem	audivissemus	auditus	auditi
audivissēs	audivissētis	(-a, -um) {essem essēs esset	(-ae, -a) {essemus essētis essent
audivisset	audivissent		

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

*Hear thou, etc.**Be thou heard, etc.*

2d audi	audite	2d audire	audimini
---------	--------	-----------	----------

## FUTURE

*Thou shalt hear, etc.**Thou shalt be heard, etc.*

2d auditō	auditōte	2d auditor	
3d auditō	audiuntō	3d auditor	audiuntor

## INFINITIVE

PRES. audire, to hear.	audiri, to be heard.
PERF. audivisse, to have heard.	auditus esse, to have been heard.
FUT. auditurus esse, to be about to hear.	auditum iri, to be about to be heard.

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. audiēns, -entis, hearing.	PERF. auditus, -a, -um, heard,
FUT. auditurus, -a, -um, about to hear.	having been heard.

**Active Voice****GERUND**

<i>Gen.</i>	audiendī, of hearing.
<i>Dat.</i>	audiendō, for hearing.
<i>Acc.</i>	audiendum, hearing.
<i>Abl.</i>	audiendō, by hearing.

**Passive Voice****GERUNDIVE**

audiendus, -a, -um, to be heard.

**SUPINE**

*Acc.* auditum, to hear.

*Abl.* auditū, to hear.

**590. THIRD CONJUGATION — VERBS IN IŌ**

**PRINCIPAL PARTS:** capiō, capere, cēpī, captus.

**STEMS:** cape-, cēp-, capt-.

**INDICATIVE****PRESENT**

*I take, am taking, do take, etc.*

capiō	capimus
capis	capitis
capit	capiunt

*I am taken, etc.*

capior	capimur
caperis (-re)	capimini
capitur	capiuntur

**IMPERFECT**

*I took, was taking, etc.*

capīsbam, etc.

*I was taken.*

capīsbar, etc.

**FUTURE**

*I shall take, etc.*

capiam	capiemus
capies	capietis
capiet	capient

*I shall be taken, etc.*

capiar	capiemur
capieris (-re)	capiemini
capietur	capientur

**PERFECT**

*I have taken, took, etc.*

cēpī, etc.

*I have been (was) taken, etc.*

captus sum, etc.

**Active Voice****Passive Voice****PLUPERFECT**

*I had taken, etc.*  
cēperam, etc.

*I had been taken, etc.*  
captus eram, etc.

**FUTURE PERFECT**

*I shall have taken, etc.*  
cēperō, etc.

*I shall have been taken, etc.*  
captus erō, etc.

**SUBJUNCTIVE****PRESENT**

capiam	capiāmus	capiar	capiāmur
capiās	capiātis	capiāris (-re)	capiāmini
capiat	capiant	capiātur	capiantur

**IMPERFECT**

caperem, etc.

caperer, etc.

**PERFECT**

cēperim, etc.

captus sim, etc.

**PLUPERFECT**

cēpisse

captus essem, etc.

**IMPERATIVE****PRESENT**

*Take (thou), etc.*

*Be (thou) taken, etc.*

2d cape          capite

2d capere          capimini

**FUTURE**

*Thou shalt take, etc.*

*Thou shalt be taken, etc.*

2d capitō          capitōte

2d capitor

3d capitō          capiuntō

3d capitor

capiuntor

**INFINITIVE**

PRES. capere, to take.

capī, to be taken.

PERF. cēpisse, to have taken.

captus esse, to have been taken.

FUT. captūrus esse, to be about to take.

captum irī, to be about to be taken.

## Active Voice

## Passive Voice

## PARTICIPLES

PRES. capiēns, -ientis, *taking*.PERF. captus, -a, -um, *taken, having been taken.*FUT. captūrus -a, -um, *about to take.*

## GERUND

## GERUNDIVE

Gen. capiendī, *of taking.*capiendus, -a, -um, *to be taken.*Dat. capiendō, *for taking.*Acc. capiendum, *taking.*Abl. capiendō, *by taking.*

## SUPINE

Acc. captum, *to take.*Abl. captū, *to take.*

## 591.

## IRREGULAR VERBS

## PRINCIPAL PARTS :

sum, esse, fui.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS :

possum, posse, potui.

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

*I am, etc.**I am able, I can, etc.*

sum	sumus
es	estis
est	sunt

possum	possumus
potes	potestis
potest	possunt

## IMPERFECT

*I was, etc.**I was able, I could, etc.*

eram	erāmus
erās	erātis
erat	erant

poteram	poterāmus
poterās	poterātis
poterat	poterant

## FUTURE

*I shall be, etc.**I shall be able, etc.*

erō	erimus
eris	eritis
erit	erunt

poterō	poterimus
poteris	poteritis
poterit	poterunt

## Sum -

## Possum

## PERFECT

*I was, have been, etc.**I have been able, I could, etc.*

fuī	fuimus	potuī	potuimus
fuistī	fuistis	potuistī	potuistis
fuit	fuērunt (-ēre)	potuit	potuērunt (-ēre)

## PLUPERFECT

*I had been, etc.**I had been able, etc.*

fueram	fuerāmus	potueram	potuerāmus
fuerās	fuerātis	potuerās	potuerātis
fuerat	fuerant	potuerat	potuerant

## FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall have been, etc.**I shall have been able, etc.*

fuerō	fuerimus	potuerō	potuerimus
fueris	fueritis	potueris	potueritis
fuerit	fuerint	potuerit	potuerint

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

sim	simus	possim	possimus
sis	sitis	possis	possitis
sit	sint	possit	possint

## IMPERFECT

essem	essēmus	possem	possemus
esses	essētis	posses	possētis
esset	essent	posset	possent

## PERFECT

fuerim	fuerimus	potuerim	potuerimus
fueris	fueritis	potueris	potueritis
fuerit	fuerint	potuerit	potuerint

## PLUPERFECT

fuissem	fuissemus	potuissem	potuissemus
fuissets	fuissetis	potuisset	potuissetis
fuisset	fuisset	potuisset	potuisset

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

*Be thou, etc.*

2d es                      este

## PRESENT

## FUTURE

*Thou shalt be, etc.*

2d estō                      estōte

3d estō                      suntō

## FUTURE

## INFINITIVE

PRES. esse, to be.

posse, to be able.

PERF. fuisse, to have been.

potuisse, to have been able

FUT. futūrus esse, }  
                   or        } to be about  
                   fore       } to be.

## PARTICIPLES

## PRESENT

## PRESENT

potēns, -entis (used as an adjective),  
 powerful.

## FUTURE

futūrus, -a, -um, about to be.

592. PRINCIPAL PARTS: volō, velle, voluī, be willing, wish.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, be unwilling.

mālō, mālle, mālui, be more willing,  
 prefer.

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

volō	volumus	nōlō	nōlumus	mālō	mālumus
vīs	vultis	nōn vīs	nōn vultis	māvīs	māvultis
vult	volunt	nōn vult	nōlunt	māvult	mālunt

## IMPERFECT

volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
---------	---------	---------

## FUTURE

volam	nōlam	mālam
-------	-------	-------

## PERFECT

voluī	nōluī	māluī
-------	-------	-------

## PLUPERFECT

volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
----------	----------	----------

## FUTURE PERFECT

voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō
---------	---------	---------

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

velim	velimus	nōlim	nōlīmus	mālim	mālīmus
velis	velitis	nōlis	nōlītis	mālis	mālītis
velit	velint	nōlit	nōlint	mālit	mālint

## IMPERFECT

vellem	nōllem	māllem
--------	--------	--------

## PERFECT

voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
----------	----------	----------

## PLUPERFECT

voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
-----------	-----------	-----------

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

—	2d nōlī nōlīte	—
---	----------------	---

## FUTURE

—	2d nōlītō nōlītōte	—
—	3d nōlītō nōluntō	—

		INFINITIVE	
PRES.	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

		PARTICIPLES	
PRES.	volēns	nōlēns	—

593. PRINCIPAL PARTS: *ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear, carry.*

		INDICATIVE	
Active		Passive	
PRESENT			
ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	fertis	ferris (-re)	ferimini
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMPERFECT			
ferēbam		ferēbar	
FUTURE			
feram		ferar	
PERFECT			
tuli		lātus sum	
PLUPERFECT			
tuleram		lātus eram	
FUTURE PERFECT			
tulerō		lātus erō	
SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRESENT			
feram		ferar	
IMPERFECT			
ferrem		ferrer	
PERFECT			
tulerim		lātus sim	



Active		Passive	
tulissem		lātus essem	
PLUPERFECT			
IMPERATIVE			
PRESENT			
2d fer	ferte	2d ferre	feriminī
FUTURE			
2d fertō	fertōte	2d fertor	
3d fertō	feruntō	3d fertor	feruntor
INFINITIVE			
PRES.	ferre		ferri
PERF.	tulisse		lātus esse
FUT.	lāturus esse		lātum iri
PARTICIPLES			
PRES.	ferēns		—
PERF.	—		lātus
FUT.	lāturus		—
GERUND		GERUNDIVE	
Gen.	ferendī	ferendus	
Dat.	ferendō		
Acc.	ferendum		
Abl.	ferendō		
SUPINE			
Acc.	lātum		
Abl.	lātū		

## 594. PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, ire, ī (ivī), itus, go.

INDICATIVE		IMPERATIVE	
PRESENT		PRESENT	
eō	imus	2d ī	ite
is	itis		
it	eunt		

<b>Active</b>		<b>Passive</b>	
<b>IMPERFECT</b>		<b>FUTURE</b>	
<b>ībam</b>		2d <b>itō</b>	<b>itōte</b>
<b>FUTURE</b>		3d <b>itō</b>	<b>euntō</b>
<b>ībō</b>		<b>INFINITIVE</b>	
<b>PERFECT</b>		<b>PRES. ire</b>	
<b>ī</b>		<b>PERF. īsse (īisse)</b>	
<b>PLUPERFECT</b>		<b>FUT. itūrus esse</b>	
<b>ieram</b>		<b>PARTICIPLES</b>	
<b>FUTURE PERFECT</b>		<b>PRES. iēns, euntis</b>	
<b>ierō</b>		<b>FUT. itūrus</b>	
<b>SUBJUNCTIVE</b>		<b>GERUND</b>	
<b>PRESENT</b>		<i>Gen.</i> <b>eundi</b>	
<b>eam</b>		<i>Dat.</i> <b>eundō</b>	
<b>IMPERFECT</b>		<i>Acc.</i> <b>eundum</b>	
<b>īrem</b>		<i>Abl.</i> <b>eundō</b>	
<b>PERFECT</b>		<b>SUPINE</b>	
<b>ierim</b>		<i>Acc.</i> <b>itum</b>	
<b>PLUPERFECT</b>		<i>Abl.</i> <b>itā</b>	
<b>īissem</b>			

**595. PRINCIPAL PARTS:** **fīō, fierī, factus sum, be made, become.**

<b>INDICATIVE</b>		<b>IMPERATIVE</b>	
<b>PRESENT</b>		<b>PRESENT</b>	
<b>fīō</b>	<b>fīmus</b>	2d <b>fī</b>	<b>fīte</b>
<b>fīs</b>	<b>fītis</b>		
<b>fīt</b>	<b>fīunt</b>		
<b>IMPERFECT</b>		<b>INFINITIVE</b>	
<b>fīōbam</b>		<b>PRES. fierī</b>	
<b>FUTURE</b>		<b>PERF. factus esse</b>	
<b>fīam</b>		<b>FUT. factum īrī</b>	

<b>Active</b>	<b>Passive</b>
<b>PERFECT</b>	<b>PARTICIPLES</b>
<b>factus sum</b>	<b>PRES. —</b>
<b>PLUPERFECT</b>	<b>PERF. factus</b>
<b>factus eram</b>	<b>GERUNDIVE</b>
<b>FUTURE PERFECT</b>	<b>faciendus</b>
<b>factus erō</b>	
<b>SUBJUNCTIVE</b>	
<b>PRESENT</b>	<b>PERFECT</b>
<b>fiam</b>	<b>factus sim</b>
<b>IMPERFECT</b>	<b>PLUPERFECT</b>
<b>fierem</b>	<b>factus essem</b>

**RULES OF SYNTAX****For Reference and Review**

The number following the rule designates the section in which it is given.

**NOMINATIVE CASE**

**596.** The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative. § 15.

**597.** A noun used in the predicate after an intransitive verb is in the nominative and is called the predicate nominative. § 28.

**GENITIVE CASE**

**598.** Possession is denoted by the genitive. § 27.

**599.** The genitive denotes the whole of which a part is taken and is called the genitive of the whole. § 260.

**600.** The quality or description of a noun may be expressed by the genitive with an adjective. § 441.

**601.** Definite measurement must be expressed by the genitive. § 441, a.

## DATIVE CASE

**602.** The indirect object is expressed by the dative. § 56.

**603.** The dative is used to limit adjectives meaning *like*, *unlike*, *equal*, *unequal*, and *near*. § 230.

**604.** Adjectives meaning *dear*, *faithful*, *friendly*, *suitable*, *useful*, etc., and their opposites, take the dative. § 269.

**605.** Many verbs meaning *benefit* or *injure*, *please* or *displease*, *command* or *obey*, *serve* or *resist*, *believe* or *distrust*, *persuade*, *pardon*, *envy*, *threaten*, *be angry*, and the like, take the dative. § 499.

**606.** The dative is used with many verbs compounded with the prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *prō*, *sub*, *super*, and sometimes *circum*. § 419.

**607.** A dative expressing purpose is used with *sum* and a few other verbs. § 508.

**608.** The dative is used with *sum* to denote the possessor, the thing possessed being the subject. § 514.

**609.** With the passive periphrastic the dative is used to denote the agent or doer of the action. § 531.

## ACCUSATIVE CASE

**610.** The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative. § 16.

**611.** Place whither is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*. § 76. See § 278 for exceptions.

**612.** Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative. § 286.

**613.** The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative. § 307.

**614.** The accusative is used with about thirty prepositions, the most common of which are *ad*, *ante*, *apud*, *circum*, *contrā*, *inter*, *per*, *trāns*. § 333.

**615.** The accusative is often used adverbially to express degree or extent. § 382.

## ABLATIVE CASE

**616.** Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. § 65.

**617.** Place in which is expressed by the ablative with **in**; place whence, by the ablative with **ā**, **ab**, **ē**, or **ex**. § 76. See § 278 for exceptions.

**618.** Accompaniment (in company with or in conflict with) is expressed by the ablative with **cum**. § 102.

**619.** Manner is expressed by the ablative with a limiting adjective or **cum**, or both. § 114.

**620.** The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**. § 140.

**621.** Time when or within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. § 147.

**622.** Cause may be expressed by the ablative usually without a preposition. § 195.

**623.** The ablative of specification may be used with a verb, noun, or adjective to define its application. It answers the question "In what respect?" § 204.

**624.** The comparative is followed by the ablative when **quam** (*than*) is omitted. § 221.

**625.** Degree of difference is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. § 247, 383.

**626.** The ablative with **dē** or **ex** is sometimes used instead of the genitive of the whole, especially after cardinal numbers. § 260, Note.

**627.** Separation is expressed by the ablative either with or without a preposition. § 316.

**628.** The ablative is always used with,

**ā** or **ab**, **dē**,  
**cum**, **ex** or **ē**,  
**sine**, **prō**, **prae**. § 332.

**629.** Two prepositions, *in* and *sub*, govern both the accusative and the ablative; with the accusative they denote motion *toward* a place, and with the ablative, rest *in* a place. § 334.

**630.** The verbs *ûtor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vêscor*, and their compounds, regularly govern the ablative. § 375.

**631.** The quality or description of a noun is expressed by the genitive or ablative with an adjective. § 441.

**632.** The ablative absolute consists of two words in the ablative case grammatically independent of the rest of the sentence. It expresses time, cause, condition, or concession. § 463.

#### VOCATIVE CASE

**633.** The vocative case is used as the case of address. §§ 2; 6, *a*; 23, *a* and *b*; 494, *a*.

#### LOCATIVE CASE

**634.** With names of *cities* and *towns*, *domus* and *rûs*, place at which is expressed by the locative, which is like the genitive in the singular of the first and second declensions, otherwise like the ablative. § 278.

#### AGREEMENT

**635.** A noun or pronoun in apposition with another noun or pronoun agrees with it in case. § 187.

**636.** A verb agrees with its subject in person and number. § 17.

**637.** An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number and case. § 40.

**638.** A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case is determined by its use in its own clause. § 395.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

**639.** Sequence of tenses. Principal tenses in the indicative are generally followed by principal tenses in the subjunctive and historical tenses by historical tenses. § 364.

**640.** The subjunctive may be used in independent sentences to express something as willed. It is then called the volitive subjunctive. § 348.

**641.** Purpose is expressed by the subjunctive introduced by *ut* or *nē*. § 353. After verbs of fearing *ut* is translated *that not*; and *nē* *that*. 353<sup>1</sup>.

**642.** Result is expressed by the subjunctive introduced by *ut* or *ut nōn*. § 379.

**643.** A clause governed by *cum* takes the subjunctive to denote the circumstances under which an action took place. This use is found only in the imperfect and pluperfect tenses. § 470.

**644.** A clause governed by *cum* and expressing cause is regularly in the subjunctive. § 471.

**645.** A clause governed by *cum* and expressing concession is in the subjunctive. 472.

**646.** In conditional sentences expressing a doubt in future time, the conclusion states that something *would* take place if a certain condition *should* be fulfilled. § 480.

**647.** In a conditional sentence expressing a thought contrary to fact, the imperfect subjunctive is used for present time, and the pluperfect subjunctive for past time. § 482.

## INFINITIVE MOOD

**648.** The time denoted by the infinitive is always relative, depending on the principal verb. The future infinitive denotes time after, the perfect time before, and the present the same time as the principal verb. § 304.

**649.** *Possum* and a few other verbs require a complementary infinitive to complete their meaning. § 176.

**650.** A statement in indirect discourse is expressed by the infinitive with its subject in the accusative. § 303.

**651.** An infinitive or clause used substantively is neuter singular. § 476<sup>1</sup>.

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**652.** In indirect discourse, that is, when the thought of the speaker is given without his exact words, a statement is expressed by the infinitive; questions, commands, and subordinate clauses, by the subjunctive. §§ 554, 303.

### ENGLISH GRAMMAR

#### As an Aid to the Study of Latin

#### NOUNS

**653.** A *Noun* is the name of some person or thing.

**654.** A *Common Noun* is the name of one of a class of objects: *picture, story*.

**655.** A *Proper Noun* is the name of a particular person or object: *Caesar, Rome*.

**656.** A *Collective Noun* is one which, singular in form, may apply to a group of objects: *family, army*.

**657.** A *Verbal Noun* is the name of an action. *Walking* is good exercise.

**658.** An *Abstract Noun* is the name of a quality or condition: *goodness, wealth*.

#### PRONOUNS

**659.** A *Pronoun* (Latin *prō*, *for*, and *nōmen*, *name*) is a word used for a noun. I saw James as *he* was coming.

**660.** A *Personal Pronoun* shows by its form whether it refers to the speaker (first person, *I*); the one spoken to (second person, *you*); or the one spoken of (third person, *he*).



**661.** A *Relative Pronoun* refers to a word in a preceding clause called the antecedent.

- (a) The relative connects the two clauses. The man *whom* I saw was blind.
- (b) The relative pronouns are *who*, *which*, *what*, and *that*.

**662.** An *Interrogative Pronoun* asks a question. *Who* are you? The interrogative pronouns are *who*, *which*, *what*.

**663.** A *Demonstrative Pronoun* points out a particular person or thing: *this*, *these*; *that*, *those*.

**664.** An *Indefinite Pronoun* does not refer to any definite person or thing: *some*, *any one*.

**665.** A *Reflexive Pronoun* refers back to the subject. The man praises *himself*.

**666.** Nouns and Pronouns have *gender*, *person*, *number*, and *case*.

**667.** *Gender* distinguishes sex.

- (a) Names of males are *masculine*; names of females, *feminine*; names of things are *neuter*.

(In Latin the gender is often determined by the ending of the noun.)

**668.** *Number* shows how many persons or things are referred to. *Singular* number denotes but one; *plural* number denotes more than one.

**669.** *Case* shows the relation of the noun or pronoun to the other words of the sentence.

- (a) There are three cases in English: *Nominative*, *Possessive*, *Objective*.

**670.** The *Nominative Case* is used as the subject of a sentence or in the predicate after an intransitive or passive verb. The *boy* ran home. You are a wise *man*. The man was called *general*.

**671.** The *Possessive Case* denotes possession. *Caesar's* soldiers were brave.

**672.** The *Objective Case* is used as the object of a verb or preposition. Caesar sent the *army* to the *city*.

**673.** *Inflection* is the change in the form of a word to show its relation to the other words of a sentence. The inflection of a noun or pronoun is called *Declension*: Nom. *who*, Poss. *whose*, Obj. *whom*. The inflection of a verb is called *Conjugation*.

### ADJECTIVES

**674.** An *Adjective* is used to limit or describe a noun or its equivalent. *Five* boys came. The soldiers were *brave*. To err is *human*.

**675.** *A*, *an*, and *the* are called *Articles*. *The* is the definite article; *a* and *an* are indefinite articles.

**676.** Adjectives denoting number are called *Numeral Adjectives*. They are either *Cardinals*, denoting how many: *three*, *ten*; or *Ordinals*, denoting which one in order: *third*, *tenth*.

**677.** *Comparison* of Adjectives is a change in form by which degree of quality is expressed.

- (a) The degrees of comparison are called *positive*, *comparative*, and *superlative*.
- (b) The *Positive* denotes the quality in the simple state: *large*, *good*.
- (c) The *Comparative* denotes the quality in a greater or less degree: *larger*, *better*, *less beautiful*.
- (d) The *Superlative* denotes the quality in greatest or least degree: *largest*, *best*, *least beautiful*.

**678.** Adjectives are compared *regularly* by adding to the positive *-er* for the comparative, and *-st* or *-est* for the superlative; *irregularly*; and by adding *more* and *most*, *less* and *least* to the positive. Most adjectives of more than one syllable are compared in this last way. *Large*, *larger*, *largest*; *good*, *better*, *best*; *beautiful*, *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*.

(For comparing adjectives regularly in Latin, see § 214.)

## VERBS

**679.** A *Verb* is a word used to assert action or state of being: *to sing, to be.*

**680.** A *Transitive Verb* is one which commonly requires an object to complete its meaning. He *killed* his enemy.

(Transitive is from the Latin *trāns*, *across*, and *eō*, *go*, because the action goes over from the subject to the object of the verb.)

**681.** An *Intransitive Verb* is one which does not require an object to complete its meaning. They  *dwell* in Gaul.

**682.** An *Impersonal Verb* is one which does not take a personal subject and is used only in the third person singular. *It rains.*

**683.** An *Auxiliary Verb* (Latin *auxilium*, *aid*) is one which aids in the conjugation of other verbs. I *was* reading. *Does* he read?

**684.** Verbs have *voice, mood, tense, person, and number.*

**685.** The inflection of a verb is called *Conjugation*. The *Conjugation* gives the forms of a verb in all voices, moods, tenses, persons, and numbers.

**686.** The *Synopsis* of a verb gives its forms in any required person and number through all moods and tenses.

## VOICE

**687.** A verb is in the *Active Voice* when the subject performs the action. Caesar *has fought*.

**688.** A verb is in the *Passive Voice* when the subject is acted upon. The boys *were punished*.

NOTE. — Intransitive verbs are used only in the active voice.

## MOOD

**689.** By *Mood* (Latin *modus*, *manner*) we mean the manner of making a statement.

**690.** A verb is in the *Indicative Mood* when it states a fact or asks whether something is a fact. Rome *was* a great city. *Did* Caesar *conquer* the Gauls?

**691.** The *Subjunctive Mood* states something as *demand*ed, *wish*ed for, *poss*ible, *contingent*, or *contrary to fact*.

He *shall* pay me. Heaven *help* us! If it *should* rain, they *would* not go. If we *were* better, we *should* be happier.

**692.** The *Imperative Mood* expresses a command. Soldiers, *draw* your swords.

- (a) With the imperative the subject is usually not expressed. The person addressed is put in the Nominative Independent. (Vocative in Latin.)

**693.** The *Infinitive* is a form of the verb not limited by person and number. *To forgive* is divine.

- (a) It may be used as a noun, an adjective, or an adverb.

- (b) It has the *present* and *perfect* tenses only.

- (c) The *Present Infinitive* represents an action as taking place *at the time* of the principal verb. He wishes (wished, will wish) *to fight*.

- (d) The *Perfect Infinitive* represents an action as *completed* at the time of the principal verb. The man is said (was said, will be said) *to have fought*.

**694.** The *Infinitive* with subject in the objective (Latin Accusative) case is used after verbs meaning wish, prefer, and the like when its subject is not the same as that of the governing verb. I wish *you to go*.

- (a) When the subject of both verbs is the same, the subject of the infinitive is not expressed. I wish *to go*.

#### TENSE (INDICATIVE)

**695.** The *Present Tense* represents an action as taking place at the present time (Latin Present). The soldiers *fight*.

**696.** The *Past Tense* represents something as having occurred in the past. (Latin Imperfect and Perfect.) The soldiers *were fighting, fought*.

**697.** The *Future Tense* represents something that will occur in the future. (Latin Future.) The soldiers *will fight*.

**698.** The *Present Perfect* represents an action as completed at the present time. (Latin Perfect.) The soldiers *have fought*.

**699.** The *Past Perfect* represents an action as having been completed before some past time. (Latin Pluperfect.) The soldiers *had fought*.

**700.** The *Future Perfect* represents an action as having taken place before some definite time in the future. (Latin Future Perfect.) The soldiers *will have fought* long before they conquer.

#### PERSON AND NUMBER

**701.** A Verb agrees with its *subject* in *person* and *number*.

- (a) A verb having two or more subjects connected by *and* must be in the plural. The boy and the girl *are* my friends.
- (b) A verb having two or more singular subjects separated by *or* or *nor* must be in the singular. Neither the boy nor the girl *is* happy.

#### PARTICIPLES

**702.** A *Participle* is a *Verbal Adjective*. Like a verb it may take an object and have adverbial modifiers. We saw the man *beating* the horse *severely*.

Like an adjective, it may modify a noun. A *babbling* brook flows through the meadow.

#### ADVERBS

**703.** *Adverbs* modify *verbs*, *adjectives*, and *other adverbs*. He ran *swiftly*. He is *nearly* blind. They fought *very* bravely.

**704.** An *Adverb* may express: *Time*, recently; *Manner*, swiftly; *Place*, here; *Degree*, very; *Affirmation*, yes; *Negation*, no, not.

**705.** An *Interrogative Adverb* asks a question with reference to *time*, *place*, *manner*, or *reason*. *When* shall we go? *Where* shall we go? *How* shall we go? *Why* shall we go?

**706.** A *Conjunctive Adverb* is used to introduce an adverbial clause. *While* there is life, there is hope.

### PREPOSITIONS

**707.** A *Preposition* (Latin *prae*, *before*, and *pōnō*, *place*) is a word placed before a noun or pronoun to show its relation to the rest of the sentence. He lived *in* Italy. He went *to* Rome.

### CONJUNCTIONS

**708.** A *Conjunction* (Latin *con*, *together*, and *iungō*, *join*) is a word used to connect words, phrases, or clauses.

- (a) A *Coördinate* Conjunction connects elements of equal rank or importance: *and*, *but*, *nor*.
- (b) A *Subordinate* Conjunction connects elements of unequal rank or importance: *because*, *if*.

### INTERJECTIONS

**709.** An *Interjection* (Latin *inter*, *between*, and *iaciō*, *throw*) is a word thrown into a sentence to express surprise or emotion and used independently of the rest of the sentence: *ah*, *oh*, *halloo*.

### RULES OF SYNTAX

**710.** The *Subject* of a verb is in the *Nominative* case. *Rome* was a large city.

**711.** The *Direct Object* of a verb is in the *Objective* (Latin *Accusative*) case. Virgil wrote *poetry*.

**712.** A noun or adjective used in the predicate after an intransitive or passive verb agrees with the subject in case and is called the *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective*. They were *children*. They were *good*. He was chosen *king*. He was called *wise*.

- (a) It may be stated thus: An Intransitive or Passive verb takes the same case after it as before it.

**713.** *Possession* is denoted by the *Possessive* (Genitive) case or *of* with an object. We read *Horace's* poems. We read the poems *of Horace*.

**714.** Some transitive verbs having the general meaning of giving, telling, etc., take two objects, a *direct* and an *indirect*.

(a) The *Direct Object* receives the full effect of the action; the *Indirect Object* is that *to* or *for* which something is done or happens. We gave (to) *Caesar* the letter. We told *him* the reason.

**715.** The *Objective* (Latin *Accusative*) case is used as the subject of an infinitive. *Caesar* ordered *him to fight*.

# C. IULII CAESARIS

## DE BELLO GALLICO

### SELECTIONS FROM BOOK I

#### *Divisions of Gaul*

Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs, quarum<sup>1</sup> ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam, quī ipsōrum linguā<sup>2</sup> Celtae, nostrā Galli appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garumna flūmen, ā Belgis Matrona et Sēquana dividit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, proximīque sunt Germānis,<sup>3</sup> quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte<sup>4</sup> praecedunt, quod ferē cotidiānis proeliis<sup>5</sup> cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus<sup>6</sup> eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt.

#### *The Helvetians decide to migrate*

Undique loci nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānis dividit, alterā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs, tertiā lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit. His rēbus flēbat,<sup>7</sup> ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile finitimis<sup>8</sup> bellum inferre possent. Prō multitūdine autem

<sup>1</sup> § 599.

<sup>2</sup> § 616.

<sup>3</sup> § 603.

<sup>4</sup> § 623.

<sup>5</sup> § 619.

<sup>6</sup> § 627.

<sup>7</sup> The

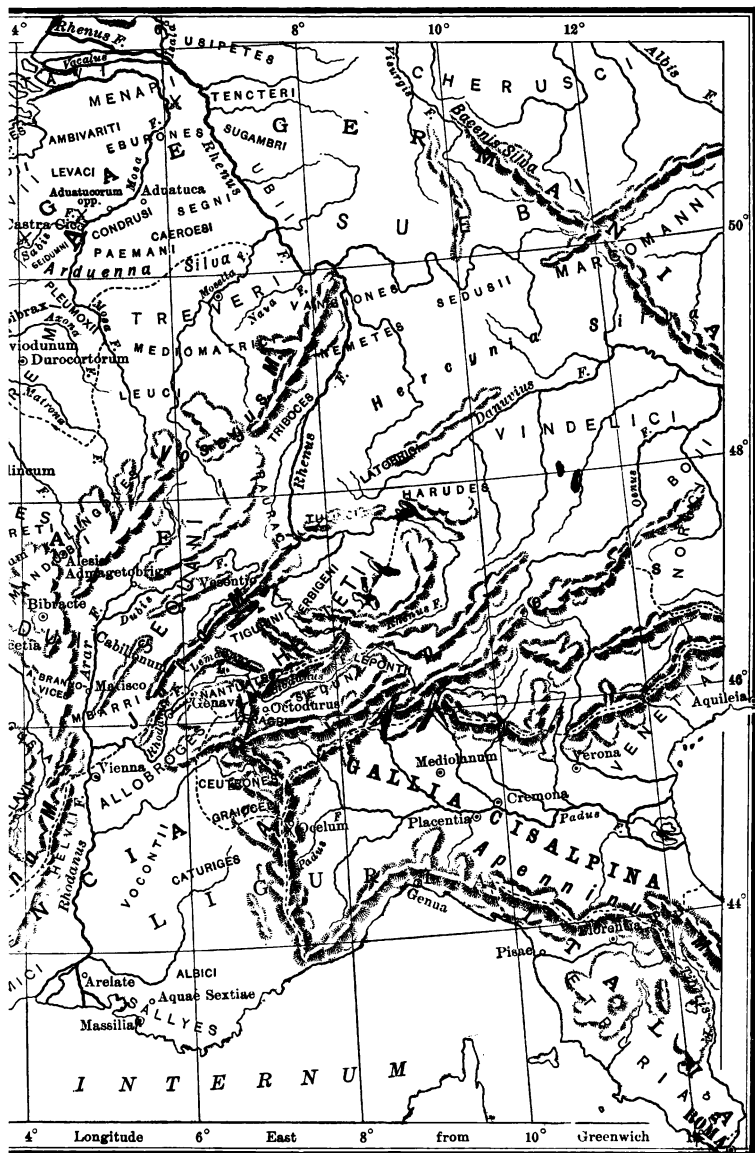
.. possent.

<sup>8</sup> § 606.











hominum et pro gloriā belli angustos se finis habere arbitrabantur.

*They prepare to depart*

Constituērunt ea, quae ad proficiendum pertinērent, comparāre, iumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam cōfirmāre. Ad eas res cōficiendās<sup>1</sup> biennium sibi satis esse duxērunt; in tertium annum perfectionem lēge cōfirmant.

Ubi iam se ad eam rem parātos esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt, frumentum omne, praeterquam quod secum portātūrī erant, combūrunt.

*Two ways to depart*

Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent;<sup>2</sup> ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur;<sup>2</sup> mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpauci prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius, propterea quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllis locis vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātis, diem dicunt, quā diē ad ripam Rhodani omnēs conveniant.

*Caesar learns their plans*

Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eos per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficiēci et, quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Ubi de eius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs

<sup>1</sup> § 522, 3.

<sup>2</sup> Subjunctive of Characteristic.

facti sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātis, qui dicerent,<sup>1</sup> sibi<sup>2</sup> esse in animō sine ullō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum. Ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum milites, quōs imperāverat, convenirent, lēgātis respondit, diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmp-tūrum.

Interea eā legiōne,<sup>3</sup> quam sēcum habēbat, militibusque,<sup>4</sup> qui ex prōvincia convēnerant, & lacū Lemannō, qui in flūmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iūram, qui finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētis dividit, mūrum fossamque perducit.

### *He thwarts their plans*

Ubi ea diēs, quam cōstituerat cum lēgātis, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē posse iter ulli per prōvinciam dare et, si vim facere cōentur, prohibitūrum<sup>4</sup> ostendit. Helvētī eā spē dēiecti, nāvibus iunctis ratibusque complūribus factis, alii vadis Rhodanī quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, si perrumpere possent,<sup>5</sup> cōnātī, militum concursū<sup>6</sup> et telis<sup>6</sup> repulsi hōc cōnātū<sup>7</sup> dēstitērunt.

## SELECTIONS FROM BOOK II

### *The Belgians conspire against the Romans*

Cum esset<sup>8</sup> Caesar in citeriōre Galliā crēbri ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēni certior fiēbat, omnēs Belgās<sup>9</sup> contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare.

His nūntiis<sup>10</sup> litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et initā aestāte,<sup>11</sup> in ulteriōrem Galliam qui<sup>12</sup> dēdūceret,<sup>12</sup> Q. Pedium lēgātum misit. Ipse, cum primum pābuli cōpia esse inciperet,<sup>14</sup> ad exercitum vēnit. Dat

<sup>1</sup> § 641.<sup>2</sup> § 608.<sup>3</sup> § 616.<sup>4</sup> Prohibitūrum = sē prohibitūrum esse.<sup>5</sup> § 402.<sup>6</sup> § 616.<sup>7</sup> § 627.<sup>8</sup> § 643.<sup>9</sup> § 613.<sup>10</sup> § 622.<sup>11</sup> § 632.<sup>12</sup> § 396<sup>1</sup>.<sup>13</sup> § 641.<sup>14</sup> § 643.

negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea, quae apud eos gerantur, cognoscant<sup>1</sup> seque de his rebus certiores faciant.<sup>1</sup> Hi constanter omnes nuntiaverunt, manus<sup>2</sup> cōgi,<sup>3</sup> exercitum in unum locum conducī. Rē frumentariā comparatā<sup>4</sup> castra movet diebusque<sup>5</sup> circiter quindecim ad finēs Belgārum pervēnit.

*The Remi declare their loyalty to Caesar*

Eō cum venisset, Remi ad eum legatos Iccium et Andecum-  
brium, primos civitatis, miserunt, qui dicerent,<sup>1</sup> se suaque omnia in fidem atque potestatem populi Romani permittere, neque se cum reliquis Belgis consensisse neque contra populum Romanum coniurasse, paratosque esse et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare; reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse, Germanosque, qui cis Rhenum incolant,<sup>6</sup> sese cum his coniunxisse.

*Caesar finds out the strength of the enemy*

Cum ab his quaereret, quae civitates quantaque in armis essent<sup>7</sup> et quid in bello possent, sic reperiēbat: plerosque Belgas<sup>2</sup> esse ortos ab Germanis Rhenumque antiquitus traductos propter loci fertilitatem ibi consedissee. Plurimum<sup>8</sup> inter eos Bellovacos et virtute<sup>9</sup> et auctoritate et hominum numero valere;<sup>3</sup> hos posse conficere armata milia centum; pollicitos ex eo numero electa sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulare. Suessiones suos esse finitimos; latissimos feracissimosque agros possidere. Apud eos fuisse regem nostram etiam memoriam Diviciacum, totius Galliae potentissimum; nunc esse regem Galbam: oppida habere numero XII, polliceri milia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervios; quindecim milia Atrebatēs, Ambianos decem milia, Morinos xxv milia, Menapios vii milia, Caletos x milia, Vellocassēs et Viromanduos totidem,

<sup>1</sup> § 641.

<sup>2</sup> § 613.

<sup>3</sup> § 650.

<sup>4</sup> § 632.

<sup>5</sup> § 621.

<sup>6</sup> § 652.

<sup>7</sup> § 402.

<sup>8</sup> § 615.

<sup>9</sup> § 623.

Aduatucōs XIX milia; Condrūsos, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Cae-  
manōs, qui unō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL  
milia.

*Caesar gives directions to the Remi*

Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus omnem senātum<sup>1</sup> ad sē convenire  
principumque liberōs obsidēs<sup>2</sup> ad sē addūci iussit. Quae  
omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciācum  
Aeduum magnopere cohortātus docet, quantō opere rei publi-  
cae commūnisque salutis<sup>3</sup> intersit<sup>4</sup> manūs hostium distinēri.  
Id fieri posse,<sup>5</sup> si suās cōpiās Aedui in finēs Bellovacōrum  
intrōdūxerint<sup>6</sup> et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. His datis  
mandātis eum ā sē dimittit.

*Caesar crosses the river and fortifies his camp*

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās<sup>1</sup> ad sē venire vidit, flūmen  
Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum  
trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. In eō flūmine  
pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis  
Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit.  
Castra in altitudinem pedum<sup>7</sup> XII vāllō<sup>8</sup> fossāque duodēviginti  
pedum mūnīre iubet.

*The Belgians attack Bibrax*

Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine<sup>9</sup> Bibrax aberat  
milia passuum octō. Id ex itinere Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt.  
Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec.  
Ubi, circumiectā<sup>10</sup> multitūdine hominum tōtis moenibus,<sup>11</sup> undi-  
que in mūrum lapidēs iaci coepti sunt,<sup>12</sup> mūrusque dēfēnsōribus<sup>13</sup>  
nūdātus est, testūdine factā succēdunt mūrumque subruunt.  
Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac

<sup>1</sup> § 613.

<sup>2</sup> § 635.

<sup>3</sup> Genitive after the impersonal verb *intersit*.

<sup>4</sup> § 402.

<sup>5</sup> § 650.

<sup>6</sup> § 652.

<sup>7</sup> § 601.

<sup>8</sup> § 616.

<sup>9</sup> § 623.

<sup>10</sup> § 632.

<sup>12</sup> Passive voice when followed by a passive infinitive.

<sup>11</sup> § 606.

<sup>13</sup> § 627.



tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōsistendi<sup>1</sup> potestās erat nūlli.<sup>2</sup> Cum finem oppugnandi nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, qui tum oppidō<sup>3</sup> prae fuerat, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur,<sup>4</sup> sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.<sup>5</sup>

*Caesar sends relief to the town, and the Belgians march  
against him*

Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem<sup>6</sup> ducibus<sup>7</sup> ūsus, qui nūntiū<sup>7</sup> ab Iccio vēnerant, sagittāriōs et funditōrēs subsidio<sup>8</sup> oppidanīs mittit; quōrum adventū hostibus<sup>9</sup> spēs potiundī<sup>10</sup> oppidi discessit. Paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs<sup>11</sup> aedificiisque, quōs adire potuerant, incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiis<sup>12</sup> contendērunt et ab milibus passuum minus duobus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

*Caesar prepares for battle*

Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proelio<sup>13</sup> supersedēre statuit; cotidiē tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis virtūte posset<sup>14</sup> et quid nostrī audērent, periclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, ab utrōque latere eius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum cō et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē hostēs ab lateribus pugnantes suōs circumvenire possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōscripserat, in castris relictis, ut subsidio<sup>15</sup> dūci possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castris ēductās instrūxerant.

<sup>1</sup> § 517.

<sup>2</sup> § 608.

<sup>3</sup> § 606.

<sup>4</sup> § 652.

<sup>5</sup> § 650.

<sup>6</sup> § 630.

<sup>7</sup> § 635.

<sup>8</sup> § 607.

<sup>9</sup> § 627.

<sup>10</sup> § 519.

<sup>11</sup> § 632.

<sup>12</sup> § 618.

<sup>13</sup> § 627.

<sup>14</sup> § 402.

<sup>15</sup> § 607.

*The Belgians attempt to cut off Caesar's supplies*

Palus erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt Caesar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contenderunt. Ibi vadis repertis partem suarum copiarum traducere conati sunt, eo consilio,<sup>1</sup> ut, si possent,<sup>2</sup> castellum, cui<sup>3</sup> praeerat Q. Titurius legatus, expugnarent<sup>4</sup> pontemque interscinderent, si minus potuissent, agros Remorum popularentur,<sup>4</sup> qui magno nobis usus<sup>5</sup> ad bellum gerendum<sup>6</sup> erant, commeatusque<sup>7</sup> nostros prohiberent.

*The Belgians are defeated and disperse*

Caesar certior factus ab Titurio omnem equitatum et funditores sagittariosque pontem traducit atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est.<sup>8</sup> Hostes impeditos nostri<sup>9</sup> in flumine aggressi magnum eorum numerum occiderunt. Hostes ubi et de expugnando oppido<sup>10</sup> et de flumine transeundo spem se fefellisse intellexerunt<sup>11</sup> neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progredi pugnandi causam viderunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficere coepit, consilio convocato, constituerunt optimum esse, domum<sup>12</sup> suam quemque reverti, quod Aeduos finibus Bellocorum appropinquare cognoverant.

Ea res constituta<sup>13</sup> secunda vigilia<sup>14</sup> magno cum strepitu<sup>15</sup> ac tumultu castris<sup>7</sup> egressi nullo certo ordine neque imperio, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret<sup>16</sup> et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt, ut consimilis fugae<sup>17</sup> profectio videretur.<sup>18</sup>

*They are pursued by the Roman army, and many are slain*

Hac res statim Caesar per speculatores cognita, insidias veritus, quod, quam de causam discederent,<sup>19</sup> nondum perspexerat,

<sup>1</sup> § 622.<sup>2</sup> Subjunctive by attraction.<sup>3</sup> § 606.<sup>4</sup> § 641.<sup>5</sup> § 607.<sup>6</sup> § 522, 3.<sup>7</sup> § 627.<sup>8</sup> § 534, 2.<sup>9</sup> § 420<sup>a</sup>.<sup>10</sup> § 519.<sup>11</sup> § 473, 1.<sup>12</sup> § 278.<sup>13</sup> § 632.<sup>14</sup> § 621.<sup>15</sup> § 619.<sup>16</sup> § 644.<sup>17</sup> § 603.<sup>18</sup> § 642.<sup>19</sup> § 402.

exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Primâ luce<sup>1</sup> confirmatâ rē ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum, qui novissimum agmen moraretur,<sup>2</sup> praemisit. His<sup>3</sup> Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praefecit. T. Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimos adorti et multa milia passuum prosecuti magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt. Sub occasum solis sequi destiterunt seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, recepērunt.

*Caesar attacks the Suessiones, and their chief town, Noviodunum, surrenders*

Caesar, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit et magno itinere<sup>4</sup> ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare conatus, quod vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat, propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem, paucis defendentibus,<sup>5</sup> expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis, vineas agere coepit. Interim omnis ex fuga Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proximâ nocte convenit. Celeriter vineis<sup>6</sup> ad oppidum actis, aggere iacto turribusque constitutis, magnitudine<sup>7</sup> operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate<sup>7</sup> Romanorum permoti legatos ad Caesarem de ditione mittunt et, petentibus Remis, ut conservarentur, impetrant.

*The Bellovacii come and seek peace*

Caesar, obsidibus acceptis primis<sup>8</sup> civitatis atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in ditionem Suessiones accepit exercitumque in Bellovacos ducit. Qui cum se suaeque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppido Caesar cum exercitu circiter milia passuum quinque abesset, omnes maiores natu<sup>9</sup> ex oppido

<sup>1</sup> § 621.

<sup>2</sup> § 641.

<sup>3</sup> § 606.

<sup>4</sup> Supply *confecto*.

<sup>5</sup> § 463, 4.

<sup>6</sup> § 632.

<sup>7</sup> § 622.

<sup>8</sup> § 635.

<sup>9</sup> § 623.

ēgressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre<sup>1</sup> coepērunt, sēsē<sup>2</sup> in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset<sup>3</sup> castraque ibi pōneret, pueri mulierēsque ex mūrō passis<sup>4</sup> manibus suō mōre<sup>5</sup> pācem ab Rōmānis petiērunt.

*Divicius pleads for the Bellovaci*

Prō his Diviciācus facit verba: Bellovacōs omni tempore in fidē atque amicitia civitātis Aeduae fuisse: impulsōs ā suis principibus et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Qui<sup>6</sup> eius cōsiliū principēs fuissent, quod intellegent quantam calamitātem civitatī<sup>7</sup> intulissent,<sup>8</sup> in Britanniam profūgissee. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō his Aeduōs, ut suā clēmentia<sup>9</sup> ac mānsuetūdine in eos utātur.

*Caesar accepts the surrender*

Caesar honoris Diviciāci atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē eos in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dixit; quod erat civitas magnā inter Belgās auctoritāte atque hominum multitudine praestābat, sescentōs obsidēs poposcit. His traditis omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātis, ab eō locō in finēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, qui sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

SELECTIONS FROM BOOK IV

*Caesar plans an expedition to Britain*

Caesar in Britanniam proficisci contendit. Neque praeter mercātōrēs illō<sup>10</sup> adit quisquam, neque his ipsīs quicquam praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātis ad sē undique mercātōri-

<sup>1</sup> § 649.

<sup>2</sup> § 613.

<sup>3</sup> § 643.

<sup>4</sup> § 632.

<sup>5</sup> § 619.

<sup>6</sup> Supply eos as subject of profūgissee and antecedent of qui.

<sup>7</sup> § 606.

<sup>8</sup> § 402.

<sup>9</sup> § 630.

<sup>10</sup> Adverb.

bus, neque quanta esset<sup>1</sup> Insulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent<sup>1</sup> neque quī essent<sup>1</sup> ad maiōrum nāvium multitudinem idōnei portūs, reperīre poterat.

*He finds out all he can about the island*

Ad haec cognōscenda, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvi longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut ad sē quam primum revertātur. Interim cōsiliō eius cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus Insulae cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur<sup>2</sup> obsidēs dare atque imperiō populi Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītis, eōs domum remittit, et cum iīs Commium, cuius et virtūtem et cōsiliū probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur, mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit,<sup>3</sup> adeat cīvitatēs sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet.

*He crosses, and on landing is attacked by the Britons*

Hōrā diēi circiter quartā cum primis nāvibus Britanniam attingit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōspexit. Cuius locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur, utī ex locis superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Interim lēgātīs convocātis et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset,<sup>1</sup> et quae fieri vellet,<sup>1</sup> ostendit.

At barbari, cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitatū reliquīs cōpiis<sup>4</sup> subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus egredi prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem nisi in altō cōstituī nōn poterant, militibus<sup>5</sup> autem ignōtis locis, magnō et gravi onere armōrum pressis,<sup>6</sup> simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum<sup>7</sup> et in fluctibus cōsistendum<sup>7</sup> et cum hostibus erat pugnandum,<sup>7</sup> cum illi aut ex aridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressi omnibus membrīs expeditis, nōtissimis locis audācter tēla conicerent.

<sup>1</sup> § 402.

<sup>2</sup> § 641.

<sup>3</sup> Subjunctive by attraction.

<sup>4</sup> § 618.

<sup>5</sup> § 609.

<sup>6</sup> Agrees with militibus.

<sup>7</sup> § 534.

*The standard bearer of the tenth legion sets an example of  
bravery*

Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maximè propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferèbat, "Désilite," inquit, "commilitonès, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus pròdere: ego certè meum rei publicae atque imperatōri officium prae-stiterò." Hoc cum vòce magnà dixisset, sè ex nāvi pròiëcit atque in hostès aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrì cohortāti inter sè ex nāvi désiluērunt.

*After a bitter struggle the Britons are forced to flee*

Pugnātum est ab utrisque ācriter. Nostrì tamen, quod neque ordinès servāre neque signa subsequi poterant, magnopere perturbābantur; hostès vērò, nōtis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulārēs ex nāvi ēgredientēs cōspexerant, plūrēs paucos circumsistēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, his subsidia submittēbat. Nostrì, simul in aridō cōstitērunt, in hostès impetum fēcērunt atque eos in fugam dedērunt.

*They make peace*

Hostès proeliō superāti, simul atque sè ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs, quaeque imperāssent factūrōs sēsē polliciti sunt. Caesar quod bellum sine causā intulissent obsidēs imperāvit; quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt.

#### SELECTIONS FROM BOOK VI

*The two classes of Gallic nobility; the Knights and the  
Druids*

In omni Galliā eōrum hominum, qui, aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre, genera sunt duo. Dē his duobus generibus alterum est druidum,<sup>1</sup> alterum equitum.<sup>1</sup> Illi rēbus divinis

---

<sup>1</sup> Genitive after est, meaning composed of.

intersunt, ad eos magnus adulescentium numerus disciplinae causam concurrit, magnoque hi sunt apud eos honore. Ferè de omnibus contròversis publicis privatisque constituunt. His autem omnibus druidibus<sup>1</sup> praeest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Huc omnes undique, qui contròversias habent, conveniunt eorumque decretis iudicis parent.

### *Privileges of the Druids*

Druides à bellò abesse consueverunt neque tributa una cum reliquis pendunt. Tantis excitati praemiis multi in disciplinam conveniunt et à parentibus mittuntur. Multa de sideribus atque eorum motu, de terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de deorum immortalium vi ac potestate disputant.

### *The gods of the Gauls and their attributes -*

Deorum<sup>2</sup> maximè Mercurium colunt: huius sunt plurima simulacra; hunc omnium inventorem artium ferunt, hunc viarum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestus pecuniae mercaturasque habere vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Martem et Iovem et Minervam. De his eandem ferè, quam reliquae gentes, habent opinionem: Apollinem morbos depellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia tradere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenere, Martem bella regere. Huic, cum proelio dimicare constituerunt, ea, quae bellò ceperint, plerumque devovent: cum superaverunt, animalia capta immolant, reliquas res in unum locum conferunt. Multis in civitatibus harum rerum tumultus conspici licet; neque saepe accidit, ut quispiam aut capta apud se occultare aut posita tollere auderet, gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciatu constitutum est.

---

<sup>1</sup> § 606.

<sup>2</sup> § 599, depending on *maximè*.





# LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

## A

**ā**, **ab**, prep. (with abl.), *from, by*.  
**ab**, adv., *off*.

**absum**, -esse, **āfui**, *to be away, absent, to be exempt*.

**ac**, conj., *and, and also*.

**accēdō**, -ere, -cessi, -cessus, *approach*.

**accidō**, -ere, **accidī**, —, *happen*.

**accipio**, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptus, *receive, accept*.

**ācer**, **ācris**, **ācre**, adj., *sharp, active*.

**aciēs**, -iī, f., *line of battle*.

**ācriter**, adv., *sharply, fiercely*.

**ad**, prep. (with acc.), *to, near, toward, for, about* (with words of number), *according to*.

**adducō**, -ere, -dūxi, -ductus, *lead to, influence*.

**adeō**, -ire, -ivi, -itus, *go to, approach, visit* (followed by acc.).

**adigō**, -ere, **ēgi**, -actus, *drive*.

**adorior**, -iri, -ortus sum, *attack*.

**Aduatuci**, -ōrum, m., *Aduatuci, a people of Gaul*.

**adulēscēns**, -centis, m., *a youth*.

**adventus**, -ūs, m., *arrival, approach*.

**adversus**, -a, -um, adj., *turned toward, facing, face to face*.

**aedificium**, -i, n., *building*.

**aedificō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *build*.

**Aeduus**, -i, m., *Aeduan*.

**aegrē**, adv., *with difficulty*.

**Aenēas**, -ae, m., *Aeneas*.

**aequus**, -a, -um, *equal, serene*.

**āēr**, **āēris**, m., *air*.

**aestās**, -tātis, f., *summer*.

**aetās**, -tātis, f., *age*.

**afferō**, -ferre, **attuli**, **allātus**, *bring*.

**ager**, **agri**, m., *field*.

**agger**, **aggeris**, m., *rampart*.

**aggredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, *approach, attack*.

**agmen**, -minis, n., *army* (on the march); **novissimum agmen**, *rear*; **primum agmen**, *van*.

**agō**, **agere**, **ēgi**, **actus**, *do, act, drive, treat; move forward*.

**agricola**, -ae, m., *farmer*.

**ala**, -ae, f., *wing*.

**albus**, -a, -um, adj., *white*.

**ālea**, -ae, f., *a die*.

**aliās**, adv., *at another time*.

**alibi**, adv., *at another place*.

**alii** . . . **alii**, *some . . . others*.

**aliquis**, **aliquid**, *some one, something*.

**alius**, -a, -ud, gen. **alius** (often **alterius**), adj., *another, other*.

**alius** . . . **alius**, *one . . . another*.

**Allobrogēs**, -um, m., *Allobroges*.

**almus**, -a, -um, adj., *nourishing*.

**alter**, **altera**, **alterum**, *the other*.

**alter** . . . **alter**, *the one . . . the other*.

altitūdō, -inis, f., *height, depth*.  
 altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, deep, tall*.  
 Ambianī, -ōrum, m., *Ambiani*.  
 ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *walk*.  
 America, -ae, f., *America*.  
 amicitia, -ae, f., *friendship*.  
 amicus, -a, -um, adj., *friendly*.  
 amicus, -i, m., *friend*.  
 amittō, -ere, amisi, amissus, *send away, lose*.  
 amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *love*.  
 amoenus, -a, -um, *pleasant, delightful*.  
 amplius, adv., *more*.  
 an, conj., *or*.  
 Andecomborius, -i, m., *a prominent man among the Remi*.  
 angustus, -a, -um, *narrow*.  
 angustē, adv., *closely*.  
 animadvertō, -ere, -ti, -sus, *notice*.  
 animal, -alis, n., *animal*.  
 animus, -i, m., *mind, heart, spirit*; *esse in animō, to intend*.  
 annōn, *or not*.  
 annus, -i, m., *year*.  
 ante, adv., *before, ago*.  
 ante, prep. (with acc.), *before*.  
 antepōnō, -ere, -posui, -positus, *place before, prefer*.  
 antiquitus, adv., *in ancient times*.  
 antiquus, -a, -um, *ancient*.  
 anulū, -i, m., *finger-ring*.  
 apertus, -a, -um, *uncovered*.  
 Apollō, -inis, m., *Apollo*.  
 appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *address, call, name*.  
 Appius, -a, -um, *Appian*.  
 appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *approach*.  
 apud, prep., *among*.

aqua, -ae, f., *water*.  
 aquaeductus, -ūs, m., *aqueduct*.  
 aquila, -ae, f., *eagle, standard*.  
 Aquitānia, -ae, f., *Aquitania*.  
 Aquitānus, -i, m., *an Aquitanian*.  
 āra, -ae, f., *altar*.  
 arbitror, -āri, -ātus sum, *think*.  
 arbor, -oris, f., *tree*.  
 arduum, -i, n., *difficulty*.  
 āridum, -i, n., *dry land*.  
 āridus, -a, -um, *dry*.  
 arma, -ōrum, n., *arms, implements of war*.  
 armātus, -a, -um, *armed*.  
 armilla, -ae, f., *armlet, bracelet*.  
 arō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *plow*.  
 ars, artis, f., *art, skill*.  
 artificium, -i, n., *art, trade*.  
 aspera, -ōrum, n., *difficulties*.  
 astrum, -i, n., *star*.  
 atque, conj. (same as ac), *and also*.  
 Atrebās, -ātis, m., *an Atrebatian*; *pl. Atrebatians*.  
 ātrium, -i, n., *atrium (the principal apartment of a Roman house)*.  
 atrōciter, adv., *fiercely, cruelly*.  
 attingō, -ere, attigi, attāctus, *touch, border on*.  
 attribuō, -uere, -ui, -ātus, *assign*.  
 auctor, -ōris, m., *author*.  
 auctoritās, -tātis, f., *authority, influence*.  
 audācter, adv., *boldly*.  
 audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *dare*.  
 audiō, -ire, -ivi, -itus, *hear, hear of*.  
 aureus, -a, -um, *golden*.  
 auris, -is, f., *ear*.  
 Aurunculēius, -i, m., *Auruncu-*

*leius Cotta*, a lieutenant of Caesar.  
**aut**, conj., or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or.  
**autem**, conj., but, moreover.  
**auxilium**, -i, n., aid, help; pl., auxiliary forces, troops.  
**aveō**, -ēre, —, —, in the imperative, ave, hail.  
**Axona**, -ae, f., the Aisne (river).

## B

**barbari**, -ōrum, m., foreigners.  
**Belgae**, -ārum, m., Belgians.  
**Bellovacī**, -ōrum, m., Bellovaci.  
**bellum**, -i, n., war.  
**bene**, adv., well.  
**Bibrax**, -actis, f., Bibrax, a town of the Remi.  
**biennium**, -i, n., period of two years.  
**bis**, num. adj., twice.  
**bonus**, -a, -um (comp., melior; sup., optimus), adj., good.  
**Brātuspantium**, -i, n., a stronghold of the Bellovaci.  
**brevis**, -e, adj., short, brief.  
**Britanni**, -ōrum, m., Britons.  
**Britannia**, -ae, f., Britain.  
**Brūtus**, -i, m., Brutus.

## C

**C.**, abbreviation for **Gāius**, -i, m., (Eng.) Caius.  
**caedēs**, -is, f., slaughter.  
**caelestēs**, -ium, m., gods.  
**Caemani**, -ōrum, m., a small state in Belgic Gaul.  
**Caerōsī**, -ōrum, m., a people in Belgic Gaul.  
**Caesar**, -aris, m., Caesar.

**calamitās**, -tātis, f., calamity.  
**calathus**, -i, m., basket.  
**Caleti**, -ōrum, m., a tribe living near the mouth of the Sequana.  
**Campāna**, -ae, f., Campana.  
**canis**, -is, m. and f., dog.  
**cantilēna**, -ae, f., old song.  
**capiō**, -ere, -cēpi, -captus, take, seize, capture.  
**Capitōlium**, -i, n., Capitoline hill.  
**captivus**, -i, m., captive.  
**captivus**, -a, -um, adj., captive.  
**captō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, catch.  
**caput**, -itis, n., head.  
**cāritās**, -ātis, f., esteem.  
**carmen**, -minis, n., song, poem.  
**Carolus**, -i, m., Charles.  
**carpō**, -ere, -sī, -tus, grasp.  
**carrus**, -i, m., cart, wagon.  
**Carthāgō**, -inis, f., Carthage (a city in Africa).  
**cārus**, -a, -um, adj., dear.  
**Cassius**, -i, m., Cassius.  
**castellum**, -i, n., stronghold.  
**castra**, -ōrum, n., camp.  
**Catilina**, -ae, m., Catiline.  
**Catō**, -ōnis, m., Cato.  
**cauda**, -ae, f., tail.  
**causa**, -ae, f., cause, reason.  
**causā** (with gen.), for the sake of.  
**caveō**, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, beware.  
**cēdō**, -ere, cessī, cessūrus, yield.  
**celebrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, practice, engage in; celebrate.  
**celer**, celeris, celere, adj., quick, swift.  
**celeritās**, -tātis, f., swiftness.  
**celeriter**, adv., quickly.  
**cēlō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, conceal.  
**Celtae**, -ārum, m., Celts.

centum, indecl. num., <i>one hundred.</i>	cōgō, -ere, cōgī, cōactus, <i>collect, compel.</i>
centuriō, -ōnis, m., <i>centurion.</i>	cohors, cohortis, f., <i>cohort</i> (the tenth part of a legion).
certē, adv., <i>certainly.</i>	cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, <i>encourage.</i>
certus, -a, -um, adj., <i>certain; certiorē facere, inform.</i>	collis, -is, m., <i>hill.</i>
cēterus, -a, -um, adj., <i>the other.</i>	collocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>place together, arrange.</i>
Christus, -ī, m., <i>Christ.</i>	colō, colere, colui, cultus, <i>cultivate, worship.</i>
Cicerō, -ōnis, m., <i>Cicero.</i>	columna, -ae, f., <i>column, pillar.</i>
Cincinnātus, -ī, m., <i>Cincinnatus.</i>	combūrō, -ere, -ussī, -ūstus, <i>burn.</i>
circiter, adv., <i>about.</i>	comedō, -ere, -ēdī, -ēsus, <i>eat up.</i>
circum, prep. (with acc.), <i>around, about; adv., about, around.</i>	comes, -itis, m. and f., <i>companion, associate.</i>
circumiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, <i>place around.</i>	commeātus, -ūs, m., <i>supplies.</i>
circumsistō, -ere, -stetī, —, <i>stand around.</i>	commilitō, -ōnis, m., <i>fellow soldier, comrade.</i>
circumspiciō, -ere, -exī, -ectus, <i>look around.</i>	committō, -ere, -misi, -missus, <i>join; committere proelium, join battle, begin an engagement.</i>
circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, <i>come around.</i>	Commīus, -ī, m., <i>Commīus.</i>
cis, prep. (with acc.), <i>on this side of.</i>	commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, <i>disturb, alarm.</i>
citerior, -ius, adj., <i>hither.</i>	communis, -e, adj., <i>common.</i>
cito, adv., <i>quickly.</i>	comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>prepare.</i>
cīvis, -is, m. and f., <i>citizen.</i>	compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, <i>fill, cover, complete.</i>
cīvitās, -tātis, f., <i>state.</i>	complūrēs, -a, adj., <i>several, very many.</i>
clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>call, cry out.</i>	compos, -otis, adj., <i>having control.</i>
clāmor, -ōris, m., <i>shout, noise.</i>	cōnātus, -ūs, m., <i>attempt.</i>
clārus, -a, -um, <i>clear, honorable.</i>	concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus, <i>yield.</i>
classis, -is, f., <i>a fleet.</i>	concidō, -ere, cidī, —, <i>fall, be slain.</i>
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, <i>shut, close.</i>	concordia, -ae, f., <i>concord.</i>
clēmētia, -ae, f., <i>clemency.</i>	concurrō, -ere, -cucurri, -cursus, <i>run together.</i>
coēmō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmtus, <i>buy.</i>	
coepī, -isse (def., found mainly in perfect stem tenses), <i>began.</i>	
cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, <i>consider.</i>	
cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus, <i>become acquainted with, learn.</i>	

**concurſus**, -ŭs, m., *onset*.  
**condō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *form, found, establish*.  
**Condrŭsī**, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe.  
**condūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *bring together*.  
**cōnferō**, -ferre, -tulī, collātus, *bring together, collect; (with sē), to betake one's self*.  
**cōnficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *do thoroughly, accomplish, furnish*.  
**cōnfirmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *declare, arrange for, strengthen, assert*.  
**cōnfigō**, -ere, -fixī, -flictus, *fight, contend*.  
**congregō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *gather, collect*.  
**coniciō**, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, *hurl together, hurl*.  
**coniungō**, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus, *join together, unite*.  
**coniūrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *conspire*.  
**cōnor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *try, attempt*.  
**cōnſcribō**, -ere, -ſcripſī, -ſcriptus, *enroll, enlist, levy*.  
**conſenſus**, -ŭs, m., *agreement*.  
**cōnſentiō**, -ire, -ſēnſī, -ſēnſus, *agree, conspire*.  
**cōnſervō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *spare, preserve*.  
**cōnsidō**, -ere, ſēdī, —, *encamp, settle*.  
**cōnſilium**, -ī, n., *plan, advice, counsel*.  
**cōnſimilis**, -e, adj., *very like*.  
**cōnſiſtō**, -ſiſtere, -ſtitī, —, *stand, make a stand*.

**cōnſpectus**, -ŭs, m., *sight, view, presence*.  
**cōnſpiciō**, -ere, -ſpexī, -ſpectus, *observe*.  
**cōnſpīcor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *see*.  
**cōnſtanter**, adv., *uniformly*.  
**cōnſtat** (impers.), *it is evident*.  
**cōnſtituō**, -ere, -ſtituī, -ſtitūtus, *determine, found, station, draw up in line, erect, settle; of ships, moor*.  
**cōnſtitutiō**, -ōnis, f., *constitution*.  
**cōnſuēſcō**, -ere, -ēvī, -ētus, *be accustomed*.  
**cōnſuētūdō**, -inis, f., *habit, custom*.  
**cōnſul**, -ulis, m., *consul*.  
**contendō**, -ere, -dī, -tentus, *hasten, contend*.  
**continenter**, adv., *constantly*.  
**contineō**, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *hold together, hem in, keep in*.  
**contrā**, adv., *against, opposite*.  
**contrōverſia**, -ae, f., *dispute*.  
**conveniō**, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *assemble*.  
**conventus**, -ŭs, m., *assembly, meeting*.  
**convocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call together, summon*.  
**cōpia**, -ae, f., *abundance, plenty, supply; pl., forces*.  
**Cornēlia**, -ae, f., *Cornelia*.  
**cornū**, -ŭs, n., *horn; wing (of an army)*.  
**corōnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *crown*.  
**corpus**, -oris, n., *body*.  
**cotidiānus**, -a, -um, adj., *daily*.  
**cotidiē**, adv., *daily*.  
**Cotta**, -ae, see *Aurunculēius*.  
**Crassus**, -ī, m., *Crassus*.

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *frequent, numerous.*

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *trust, believe.*

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, *increase.*

cruciātus, -ūs, m., *torture.*

culpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *blame, censure.*

cultus, -ūs, m., *civilization.*

cum, prep. (with abl.), *with; conj., when, since, although.*

cum primum, *as soon as.*

cunctāns, -ntis, adj., *hesitating, delaying.*

cūr, adv., *why? wherefore?*

cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *cure.*

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus, *run.*

custōdiō, -ire, -ivī, -ītus, *watch.*

custōs, -ōdis, m., *guard, watch, keeper.*

## D

dē, prep. (with abl.), *about, concerning, from.*

dea, -ae, f., *goddess.*

dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus, *ought, must, (followed by infin.).*

decem, num. adj. (indecl.), *ten.*

decimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *tenth.*

dēciplō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *deceive.*

decōrus, -a, -um, *fitting, seemly.*

dēcrētum, -ī, n., *decree, decision.*

dēditō, -ōnis, f., *surrender.*

dēdō, -ere, didī, -ditus, *give up, surrender.*

dēducō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead down, conduct.*

dēfendō, -ere, -fendī, -fēnsus, *defend, guard.*

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, f., *defense.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris, m., *defender.*

dēfessus, -a, -um, adj., *tired, weary, worn out.*

dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *fail, desert.*

dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw down, disappoint.*

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus, *destroy.*

dēliberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *consult.*

dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, *choose from, gather, select.*

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *point out, explain.*

depellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *drive away, ward off.*

dēpopulor, -āri, -ātus sum, *lay waste, plunder.*

dēprecor, -āri, -ātus sum, *beg to escape, ask for quarter.*

dēscendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, *descend.*

dēsertus, -a, -um, adj. *deserted.*

dēsiliō, -ire, -uī, -ultus, *leap down.*

dēsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitus, *leave off, cease.*

dēspērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *despair.*

deus, -ī, m., *god.*

dēvoveō, -ēre, -vōvī, -vōtus, *vow, consecrate.*

dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., *right, right hand.*

dicō, -ere, dixī, dictus, *say, speak.*

dictātor, -ōris, m., *dictator.*

dictitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *say repeatedly.*

diēs, -ēī, m. and f., *day; multo diē, late in the day; posterō diē, the following day.*

**differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātus,** scatter, differ.

**difficilis, -e, adj.,** difficult.

**difficultās, -tātis, f.,** difficulty.

**diligenter, adv.,** carefully, diligently.

**diligentia, -ae, f.,** diligence, care.

**dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** fight.

**dimittō, -ere, -misi, -missus,** send in different directions, dismiss, lose.

**discēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus,** go apart, scatter, depart, leave.

**disciplina, -ae, f.,** instruction.

**discipulus, -i, m.,** pupil.

**disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** discuss.

**dissimilis, -e, adj.,** unlike.

**dissitus, -a, -um, adj.,** remote.

**distineō, -ēre, -tinui, -tentus,** keep apart, separate.

**diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, adv.,** long, for a long time; **quam diū,** how long.

**dividō, -ere, -vīsi, -vīsus,** divide.

**dīvinus, -a, -um,** divine, sacred.

**Diviciācus, -i, Diviciācus,** an Aeduan of great influence.

**dō, -are, dedi, datus,** give; **in fugam dare,** to put to flight.

**doceō, -ēre, -ui, doctus,** teach, show.

**domesticus, -a, -um,** domestic.

**domina, -ae, f.,** mistress, matron.

**dominus, -i, m.,** master, lord.

**domus, -ūs, f. (locative, domī),** house, home.

**dōnum, -i, n.,** gift, present.

**drāma, -atis, n.,** drama, play.

**Druidēs, -um, m.,** Druids.

**dubius, -a, -um,** doubtful.

**ducenti, -ae, -a,** two hundred.

**dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductus,** lead, consider.

**dulcis, -e, adj.,** pleasant, sweet.

**dum, conj.,** while, until.

**duo, duae, duo, adj.,** two.

**duodecim, twelve.**

**duodēviginti, eighteen.**

**dūrus, -a, -um,** hard.

**dux, ducis, m.,** leader, guide.

## E

**ē or ex, prep. (with abl.),** out of, from, on account of.

**Eburōnēs, -um, m.,** a Belgic tribe.

**ecce, adv.,** behold.

**ēdoceō, -ēre, -cui, -doctus,** inform, instruct.

**ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus,** train, educate.

**ēdūcō, -ere, ēdūxi, ēductus,** lead out.

**efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātus,** bring out, carry away, produce.

**efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus,** accomplish, bring about.

**ego, mei, pers. pron.,** I.

**ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum,** go out, disembark.

**ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectus,** cast out, expel.

**ēlēctus, -a, -um,** chosen, picked.

**emptor, -ōris, m.,** buyer.

**Ennius, -i, m.,** Ennius.

**ensis, -is, m.,** sword.

**eō, ire, ii (ivī), iturus, go.**

**eō, adv.,** there.

**epistula, -ae, f.,** a letter, an epistle.

**epulae, ārum, pl.,** feast, banquet.

**eques, -itis, m.,** horseman, knight; **pl.,** cavalry.

equester, -tris, -tre, adj., of cavalry.  
 equitatus, -ūs, m., cavalry.  
 equus, -i, m., horse.  
 errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, err.  
 et, conj., and, also; et . . . et, both . . . and.  
 etiam, adv., also, even.  
 exaudiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, hear.  
 excelsus, -a, -um, adj., high, lofty.  
 excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, rouse.  
 exemplum, -i, n., example.  
 exeō, -īre, -īi (-īvi), -ītus, go out, withdraw.  
 exercitus, -ūs, m., army.  
 eximius, -a, -um, distinguished, excellent.  
 existimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, think, reckon.  
 expeditus, -a, -um, unincumbered.  
 expellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsus, drive out.  
 experientia, -ae, f., experience.  
 explorātor, -ōris, m., scout, spy.  
 expōnō, -ere, -posui, positus, set out, array.  
 expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, take by storm.  
 exterus, -a, -um, adj., outer, last; ad extrēmum, at the end, finally.  
 extrā, prep., outside, beyond.

## F

fābula, -ae, f., story.  
 fac, imperative of facio.  
 faciēs, -ēi, f., appearance, sight.  
 facile, adv., easily.  
 facilis, -e, adj., easy.

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, make, do, accomplish; with iter, march.  
 factum, -i, n., deed.  
 facultās, -tātis, f., opportunity, ability.  
 fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus, disappoint, deceive.  
 familiāris, -e, adj., belonging to the family.  
 fās, indecl. n., right, justice.  
 fēmina, -ae, f., woman.  
 fenestra, -ae, f., window.  
 ferāx, -ācis, adj., fertile, productive.  
 ferē, adv., almost, quite.  
 feriālis, -e, adj., festival.  
 ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, bear, carry, report, say.  
 fertilitās, -ātis, f., fertility.  
 festinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, make haste.  
 festus, -a, -um, adj. festive, joyous, (of a) holiday.  
 fidēlis, -e, adj., faithful, loyal.  
 fidēs, -ei, f., faith, pledge, confidence.  
 fidus, -a, -um, faithful, reliable.  
 filia, -ae, f., daughter.  
 filius, -i, m., son.  
 finiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, limit, stop, put an end to.  
 finis, -is, m., end; pl., territory.  
 finitimī, -ōrum, m., neighbors.  
 finitimus, -a, -um, adj., neighboring.  
 fiō, fieri, factus sum, become, be made, happen.  
 firmus, -a, -um, adj., firm, solid.  
 fleō, flēre, flēvi, flētus, weep, lament.  
 floreō, -ēre, ui, —, flourish, prosper.



flōs, flōris, m., *flower*.  
 fluctus, -ūs, m., *wave, billow*.  
 flūmen, -inis, n., *river*.  
 fluō, -ere, fluxī, fluxus, *flow*.  
 focus, -i, m., *hearth*.  
 fōns, fontis, m., *fountain*.  
 fōrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *form*.  
 fortis, -e, adj., *brave*.  
 fortiter, adv., *bravely*.  
 fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune*.  
 forum, fori, m., *forum*.  
 fossa, -ae, f., *ditch, trench*.  
 frāter, -tris, m., *brother*.  
 frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj., *of grain; with rēs, supply of grain*.  
 frūmentum, -i, n., *grain*.  
 fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *enjoy*.  
 frūstrā, adv., *in vain*.  
 fuga, -ae, f., *flight*.  
 fugiō, -ere, fūgī, —, *flee*.  
 fūmus, -i, m., *smoke*.  
 funditor, -ōris, m., *slinger*.  
 fungor, fungī, fūctus sum, *perform*.

## G

Gaius, -i, m., *Gaius*.  
 Galba, -ae, m., *Galba*.  
 Galli, -ōrum, m., *Gauls*.  
 Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*.  
 Gallicus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic, of Gaul*.  
 Garumna, -ae, f., *the Garonne (river)*.  
 gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, *re-joice*.  
 Genava, -ae, f., *Geneva*.  
 generālis, -e, adj., *general*.  
 gēns, gentis, f., *family, nation*.  
 genus, -eris, n., *kind, class*.  
 Germānia, -ae, f., *Germany*.

Germānus, -a, -um, adj., *German*.  
 Germānus, -i, m., *a German*.  
 gerō, -ere, gessi, gestus, *carry on, wear; with bellum, wage war*.  
 gladius, -i, m., *sword*.  
 glōria, -ae, f., *glory*.  
 Gracchus, -i, m., *Gracchus*.  
 Graecus, -a, -um, adj., *Greek*.  
 grānum, -i, n., *grain*.  
 grātia, -ae, f., *influence, favor; abl., for the sake of*.  
 gravis, -e, adj., *heavy, severe*.

## H

habeō, -ēre, habuī, -itus, *have, hold, consider; with orātiō, deliver*.  
 Helvētīi, -ōrum, m., *Helvetians*.  
 Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., *Helvetian*.  
 hiberna, -ōrum, n., *winter quarters*.  
 hic, adv., *here*.  
 hic, haec, hoc, gen., huius, dem. pron., *this*.  
 hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *pass the winter, winter*.  
 hiems, hiemis, f., *winter, stormy weather*.  
 hinc, adv., *from this place*.  
 hodiē, adj., *today*.  
 homō, -inis, m. and f., *human being, man*.  
 honor, -ōris, m., *honor, esteem, glory*.  
 hōra, -ae, f., *hour*.  
 hortus, -i, m., *garden*.  
 hostis, -is, m., *enemy; pl., the enemy*.  
 hūc, adv., *hither*.  
 hūmānitās, -ātis, f., *refinement, humanity*.

**hūmānus**, -a, -um, adj., *human*.  
**humus**, -i, f., *earth, soil; grave*.

## I

**iaciō**, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *throw*,  
*throw up, banish*.

**iam**, adv., *already*.

**iānitor**, -ōris, m., *doorkeeper*,  
*porter*.

**iānuā**, -ae, f., *door*.

**ibi**, adv., *there, in that place*.

**Iccius**, -i, m., a leader of the Remi.

**idem**, *eadem*, *idem*, dem. pron.,  
*same*.

**idōneus**, -a, -um (comp., *magis*  
*idōneus*; sup., *maximē idō-*  
*neus*), adj., *fit, suitable*.

**Iēsus**, -i, m., *Jesus*.

**igitur**, conj., *therefore*.

**ignis**, -is, m., *fire*.

**ignōtus**, -a, -um, adj., *unknown*.

**ille**, *illa*, *illud*, dem. pron., *that*.

**illō**, adv., *to that place*.

**immolō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *sacrifice*.

**immortālis**, -e, adj., *immortal*.

**impār**, -paris, adj., *unequal*.

**impedimentum**, -i, n., *hindrance*;  
 pl., *heavy baggage*.

**impediō**, -ire, -ivī, -itus, *hinder*.

**impellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, *urge*  
*on, incite*.

**impendeō**, -ēre, —, —, *hang over*.

**imperātor**, -ōris, m., *commander-*  
*in-chief, general, emperor*.

**imperātum**, -i, n., *command*,  
*order*.

**imperium**, -i, n., *command, con-*  
*trol, military authority, empire*.

**imperō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *order*  
*(governs dat., followed by ut*  
*with the subjunctive).*

**impetrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *obtain*  
*by request*.

**impetus**, -ūs, m., *attack*.

**impluvium**, -i, n., *impluvium*  
*(the square basin in which the*  
*rain water was received).*

**impudens**, -ntis, adj., *impudent*.

**impūne**, adv., *without punishment*.

**in**, prep. (with abl.), *in, on, upon*,  
*across, over*; (with acc.), *into*,  
*against, upon*.

**incendō**, -ere, -cendī, -cēnsus, *set*  
*on fire, burn*.

**incipiō**, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, *begin*,  
*undertake*.

**inclūdō**, -ere, -sī, -sus, *keep in*.

**incola**, -ae, f., *inhabitant*.

**incolō**, -ere, -uī; —, (intrans.), *live*,  
*dwel*; (trans.), *inhabit, dwell in*.

**incrēdibilis**, -e, adj., *incredible*.

**ineō**, -ire, -iī (-ivī), -itus, *enter*,  
*begin*.

**inferō**, -ferre, intulī, illātus,  
*bring in, upon, or against*;  
**bellum inferre**, *make war on*;  
**signa inferre**, *advance (to the*  
*attack).*

**inferus**, -i, m., *inhabitant of the*  
*lower world*.

**inferus**, -a, -um (comp., *inferior*;  
 sup., *infimus* or *imus*), adj.,  
*low*.

**infinitum**, -i, n., *that which is*  
*boundless, infinity*.

**inflūō**, -ere, -fluxī, -fluxus, *flow*  
*into*.

**inimicus**, -a, -um, adj., *unfriendly*.

**inimicus**, -i, m., *a personal enemy*.

**iniquus**, -a, -um, *uneven, unfavor-*  
*able*.

**initium**, -i, n., *beginning*.

**iniūria**, -ae, f., *injury, wrong*.  
**inopia**, -ae, f., *want, scarcity*.  
**inquam**, **inquis**, **inquit**, *say*.  
**insidiae**, -ārum, f., *ambush*.  
**insidior**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *lie in wait*.  
**institutum**, -ī, n., *institution, custom*.  
**instruō**, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, *draw up, construct, furnish*.  
**insula**, -ae, f., *island*.  
**intellegō**, -ere, -ēxī, -lēctus, *understand*.  
**inter**, prep. (with acc.), *between, among*.  
**intercēdō**, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, *intervene*.  
**interea**, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile*.  
**interest**, impers., *it concerns*.  
**interficiō**, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *kill*.  
**interim**, adv., *in the meantime*.  
**interior**, -ius (sup., intimus), adj., *inner*.  
**interscindō**, -ere, -scidī, -scissus, *cut down, destroy*.  
**intersum**, -esse, -fuī, *take part in*.  
**intrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *enter*.  
**introducō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead into*.  
**inūtilis**, -e, adj., *useless*.  
**inventor**, -ōris, m., *inventor*.  
**invictus**, -a, -um, adj., *unconquerable, invincible*.  
**invitus**, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling*.  
**invocō**, -āre, -āvī, -atus, *call upon, invoke*.  
**iocus**, -ī, m., *joke*.  
**ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, gen., **ipsius**, dem. pron., *self, himself, etc.*

**is**, **ea**, **id**, gen., **eius**, dem. pron., *that, he*.  
**iste**, **ista**, **istud**, gen., **istius**, dem. pron., *that, that of yours*.  
**ita**, adv., *so (manner)*.  
**Italia**, -ae, f., *Italy*.  
**itaque**, adv., *and so*.  
**item**, adv., *in like manner*.  
**iter**, **itineris**, n., *journey, march*.  
**iubeō**, -ēre, **iussī**, **iussus**, *order, command*.  
**iūcundus**, -a, -um, adj., *joyful*.  
**Iūdaeī**, -ōrum, m., *Jews*.  
**iūdex**, -icis, m., *judge*.  
**iūdicium**, -ī, n., *decision*.  
**iūdicō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *judge*.  
**iugum**, -ī, n., *yoke, (of mountains) ridge, summit*.  
**Iūlia**, -ae, f., *Julia*.  
**iumentum**, -ī, n., *beast of burden*.  
**iungō**, -ere, **iūnxī**, **iūctus**, *join*.  
**Iuppiter**, **Iovis**, m., *Jupiter*.  
**Iūra**, -ae, m., *Jura (a range of mountains)*.  
**iūs**, **iūris**, n., *right, law*.  
**iūsiūrandum**, **iūrisiūrandī**, n., *oath*.  
**iūstitia**, -ae, f., *justice*.  
**iuvenis**, -e (comp., **iūnior**; sup., **minimus nātū**), adj., *young*.  
**iuventūs**, -ūtis, f., *youth*.  
**iuvō**, -āre, **iūvī**, **iūtus**, *help, aid, assist*.

L

**L** = **Lūcius**.  
**Labiēnus**, -ī, m., *Titus Labienus, Caesar's lieutenant*.  
**labor**, -ōris, m., *toil, labor*.  
**labōrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *labor*.  
**laccessō**, -ere, -ivī, -ītus, *arouse, provoke, harm*.

lacus, -ūs, m, *lake*.  
 lætitia, -ae, f., *joy*.  
 lapis, -idis, m., *stone*.  
 lapsus, -ūs, m., *a slip, error*.  
 lātē, adv., *widely*.  
 lātitudō, -inis, f., *width*.  
 latus, -eris, n., *side*.  
 lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide*.  
 laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *praise*.  
 laus, laudis, f., *praise*.  
 lectus, -ī, m., *couch, bed*.  
 lēgātus, -ī, m., *lieutenant, ambassador*.  
 legiō, -ōnis, f., *legion*.  
 legō, -ere, lēgi, lēctus, *read, choose*.  
 Lemannus, -ī, m., *Geneva*.  
 lentē, adv., *slowly*.  
 Lentulus, -ī, m., *Lentulus*.  
 lepus, -oris, m., *hare*.  
 levis, -e, adj., *light* (in weight).  
 lēx, lēgis, f., *law*.  
 libenter, adv., *gladly*.  
 liber, libri, m., *book*.  
 liber, -era, -erum, adj., *free*.  
 liberī, -ōrum, m., *children*.  
 liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *set free*.  
 libertās, -ātis, f., *freedom, liberty*.  
 licet, -ēre, -uit, impers. (with dat.), *it is permitted*.  
 limen, -inis, n., *threshold*.  
 lingua, -ae, f., *tongue, language*.  
 littera, -ae, f., *letter of the alphabet*;  
 pl., *letter, an epistle, literature*.  
 litus, -oris, n., *shore* (of the sea).  
 locus, -ī, m., pl., loca, n., *place, location*.  
 longē, adv., *far, by far; quam longē, how far*.  
 longitūdō, -inis, f., *length*.  
 longus, -a, -um, adj., *long, tall*.

loquor, loqui, locūtus sum, *speak, say*.  
 lūdus, -ī, m., *game, play*.  
 lūmen, -inis, n., *light*.  
 lūna, -ae, f., *moon*.  
 lūx, lūcis, f., *light*.

## M

maculō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *spot, spoil*.  
 Maecēnās, -ātis, m., *Maecenas*, a famous Roman patron of letters, hence any patron of letters.  
 magister, -tri, m., *teacher*.  
 magnitūdō, -inis, f., *greatness, size*.  
 magnopere (comp., magis; sup., maximē), adv., *greatly*.  
 magnus, -a, -um (maior, maximus), adj., *large, great*.  
 maiōrēs, -um, m. pl., *forefathers, ancestors*.  
 maleficium, -ī, n., *harm*.  
 mālō, mālī, mālui (magis and volō), *prefer*.  
 malum, -ī, n., *evil*.  
 malus, -a, -um, (comp., peior; sup., pessimus), adj., *bad*.  
 mandātum, ī, n., *commission, order*.  
 mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *command*.  
 maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, *remain*.  
 mānsuētūdō, -inis, f., *compassion*.  
 manus, -ūs, f., *hand, band*.  
 Mārcus, -ī, m., *Marcus*.  
 mare, -is, n., *sea*.  
 marmoreus, -a, -um, adj., *made of marble*.  
 Mārs, Mārtis, m., *Mars*.  
 māter, -tris, f., *mother*.

- Matrona**, -ae, f., *Marne* (river).  
**mātūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *make haste, hasten*.  
**maximē**, see *magnopere*.  
**medius**, -a, -um, adj., *middle*;  
**mediā nocte**, *midnight*; **mediō colle**, *halfway up the hill*.  
**mei** (gen.), reflex. pron., *of myself*.  
**membrum**, -i, n., *limb*.  
**memoria**, -ae, f., *memory*.  
**Menapii**, -ōrum, m., a *Belgic people*.  
**mēns, mentis**, f., *mind, purpose*.  
**mēnsa**, -ae, f., *table*.  
**mercātor**, -ōris, m., *merchant*.  
**mercātūra**, -ae, f., *trade*.  
**Mercurius**, -i, m., *Mercury*.  
**mereō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *deserve*.  
**meridiēs**, -ēi, m., *midday, noon*.  
**meus**, -a, -um, poss. pron., *my, mine*.  
**miles**, -itis, m., *soldier*.  
**milia**, -ium, n., *thousands*.  
**mille**, adj., indecl., *a thousand*.  
**Minerva**, -ae, f., *Minerva*.  
**ministrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *attend*.  
**ministerium**, -i, n., *office, service*.  
**minor**, *less*; see *parvus*.  
**minus**, adv., *less, not*.  
**mirābilis**, -e, adj., *wonderful*.  
**miser**, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched*.  
**mittō**, -ere, mīsi, missus, *send*.  
**modus**, -i, m., *manner*.  
**moenia**, -ium, n., *fortifications, walls of a city*.  
**molestus**, -a, -um, adj., *troublesome, irksome*.  
**moneō**, -ēre, -uī, -itus, *advise, warn*.  
**mōns, montis**, m., *mountain*.  
**mōnstrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *show*.  
**montānus**, -i, m., *mountaineer*.  
**monumentum**, -i, n., *monument*.  
**mora**, -ae, f., *delay*.  
**morbis**, -i, m., *disease, sickness*.  
**Morini**, -ōrum, m., a *Belgic people*.  
**morior, mori, mortuus sum**, *die*.  
**moror**, -āri, -ātus sum, *delay*.  
**mors, mortis**, f., *death*.  
**mōs, mōris**, m., *custom*; pl., *character, manners, habits*.  
**mōtus**, -ūs, m., *movement, revolt*.  
**moveō**, -ēre, mōvi, mōtus, *move*; with *castra*, *break up*.  
**mox**, adv., *soon*.  
**mulier**, -eris, f., *woman*.  
**multitūdō**, -inis, f., *great number, multitude*.  
**multus**, -a, -um, *much*; pl., *many*.  
**mundus**, -i, m., *world*.  
**mūniō**, -īre, -īvi, -itus, *fortify*.  
**mūnitiō**, -ōnis, f., *fortification*.  
**mūrus**, -i, m., *wall*.  
**mūtō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *change*.

## N

- nam**, conj., *for*.  
**nārrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *tell*.  
**nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum**, *be born*.  
**Nāsica**, -ae, m., *Nasica*.  
**Naso, ōnis**, m., *Naso, P. Ovidius Naso, the Roman poet, Ovid*.  
**nātiō**, -ōnis, f., *nation*.  
**nātūra**, -ae, f., *nature*.  
**nauta**, -ae, m., *sailor*.  
**nāvigō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *sail*.  
**nāvis**, -is, f., *ship*.  
**Nazarēnus**, -a, -um, *of Nazareth*.  
**nē**, conj., *that not, lest*; **ne**, interrog. particle (enclitic); **nē**

. . . *quidem*, *not . . . even*, the emphatic word standing between *nē* and *quidem*.

*nec*, conj., and *not*.

*negō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *deny, say not*.

*negōtium*, -ī, n., *business, trouble*.

*nēmō*, —, dat., *nēmīnī*, m., *no one*.

*neque*, conj., *neither*; *neque . . . neque*, *neither . . . nor*.

*Nerviī*, -ōrum, m., *the Nervii, a warlike Belgic people*.

*neuter*, -tra, -trum, gen., *neutrius*, adj., *neither*.

*niger*, -gra, -grum, adj., *black*.

*nihil*, also *nil*, indecl., n., *nothing*.

*nisi*, conj., *if not, unless, except*.

*nōbīlis*, -e, adj., *noble, high rank*.

*noceō*, -ēre, -uī, —, *do harm, injure*.

*nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōlūi*, *to be unwilling*.

*nōmen*, -inis, n., *name*.

*nōn*, adv., *not*.

*nōndum*, adv., *not yet*.

*nōnne*, interrog. particle, expecting the answer "*yes*."

*nōnnūllus*, -a, -um, adj., *some*.

*nōnnumquam*, adv., *sometimes*.

*nōn solum*, . . . *sed etiam*, adv., *not only, . . . but also*.

*nōs*, *nostrum*, pron., *we*.

*nōscō*, -ere, *nōvī*, *nōtus*, *learn, know*.

*noster*, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., *our, ours*.

*notō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *mark, note*.

*nōtus*, -a, -um, adj. *familiar*.

*novem*, num. adj., indecl., *nine*.

*Noviodūnum*, -ī, n., *a town of the Suessiones*.

*novissimī*, -ōrum, m., *those in the rear*.

*novus*, -a, -um, adj., *new*; *novus miles*, *recruit*.

*nox*, *noctis*, f., *night*.

*nubila*, -ōrum, n., *clouds*.

*nūdō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *strip, leave unprotected*.

*nūllus*, -a, -um, gen., *nūllius*, adj., *no, none, no one*.

*num*, interrog. particle, expecting the answer "*no*"; *whether*.

*numen*, -inis, n., *divinity*.

*numerus*, -ī, m., *number, account*.

*numquam*, adv., *never*.

*nunc*, adv., *now*.

*nūntiō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *announce, report*.

*nūntius*, -ī, m., *messenger, message*.

## O

*ob*, prep. with acc., *on account of*.

*obducō*, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *extend*.

*obses*, -idis, m. and f., *hostage, pledge, security*.

*obtemperō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *obey*.

*occāsus*, -ūs, m., *setting*.

*occidō*, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsus, *kill, slay*.

*occultō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *hide*.

*occupō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *seize, take possession of*.

*occurrō*, -ere, -currī, -cursus, *meet*.

*octō*, num. adj., indecl., *eight*.

*officium*, -ī, n., *office, official employment, duty*.

*olus*, -eris, n., *vegetables, greens*.

*ōmen*, -inis, n., *omen*.

omniñō, adv., *in all*.  
 omnis, -e, adj., *all, every*.  
 onus, -eris, n., *burden, weight*.  
 opera, -ae, f., *work*.  
 operor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *work*.  
 opiniō, -ōnis, f., *belief, reputation, expectation*.  
 oppidānī, -ōrum, m., *townspeople*.  
 oppidum, -ī, n., *town*.  
 opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, *weigh down*.  
 oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f., *assault, besieging*.  
 oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *storm, attack, besiege*.  
 optimus, *excellent*; see bonus.  
 opus, operis, n., *work, labor*.  
 ōra, -ae, f., *coast*; ōra maritima, *sea coast*.  
 ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *speech, oration*.  
 ōrdinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *appoint, settle*.  
 ōrdō, -inis, m., *rank, order, row*.  
 orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *spring from, rise*.  
 ōrnāmentum, -ī, n., *ornament, jewel*.  
 ōrnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *adorn*.  
 ostendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, *show*.  
 ostium, -ī, n., *door, entrance*.

## P

pābulum, -ī, n., *fodder*.  
 pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *pacify, subdue*.  
 paene, adv., *almost, nearly*.  
 pāgina, -ae, f., *page*.  
 Palātium, -ī, n., *Palatine hill*.  
 palma, -ae, f., *palm, reward*.  
 palūs, -ūdis, f., *swamp, marsh*.

pandō, -ere, pandī, passus, *stretch out*.  
 parcō, ere, peperci, parsus, *to spare*.  
 pār, paris, adj., *equal*.  
 parēns, -entis, m. and f., *parent*.  
 pārēō, -ēre, -uī, —, *obey*.  
 pariēs, -etis, m., *wall (of a house)*.  
 parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *prepare*.  
 pars, partis, f., *part, side, direction*.  
 parum (comp., minus; sup. minimē), adv., *little, too little*.  
 parvulus, -a, -um, *tiny*.  
 parvus, -a, -um (comp., minor; sup., minimus), adj., *small*.  
 passus, -ūs, m., *pace*; mille passūs, *a mile*.  
 pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, *lie open, extend*.  
 pater, -tris, m., *father*.  
 patior, patī, passus sum, *suffer, permit*.  
 patria, -ae, f., *native land*.  
 paucī, -ae, -a, adj., *few*.  
 paulisper, adv., *for a short time*.  
 paulō, adv., *by a little, a little*.  
 paulum, adv., *a little, somewhat*.  
 pāx, pācis, f., *peace*.  
 pecūnia, -ae, f., *riches, wealth*.  
 pedes, -itis, m., *foot soldier*; pl., *infantry*.  
 Pedius, -ī, m., *Quintus Pēdius*.  
 peior, peius, *worse*; see malus.  
 pellō, -ere, pepuli, pulsus, *drive out, put to flight, defeat*.  
 pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, *pay*.  
 pēninsula, -ae, f., *peninsula*.  
 per, prep. (with acc.), *through, by, on account of*.  
 perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead through, construct*.

perfectus, -a, -um, adj., *perfect*.  
 perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *report*.  
 perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, *finish*.  
 periclitōr, -ārī, -ātus sum, *prove, make trial of*.  
 periculum, -ī, n., *danger, peril*.  
 peristylum, -ī, n., *peristyle*.  
 permittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, *intrust, commit*.  
 permovēō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, *alarm, influence*.  
 perpauci, -ae, -a, adj., *very few*.  
 perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, *break through*.  
 persōna, -ae, f., *character*.  
 perspicīō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, *look, observe*.  
 persuādēō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsus, *persuade, governs the dat. followed by ut with the subjunctive*.  
 pertinēō, -ēre, -uī, —, *extend*.  
 perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *disturb greatly*.  
 perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, *arrive (at)*.  
 pēs, pedis, m., *foot*.  
 petō, -ere, -īvī or -īī, -ītus, *seek, ask; takes acc. of the thing and abl. of the person*.  
 Phoebus, -ī, m., *Phoebus*.  
 pictūra, -ae, f., *picture*.  
 pilum, -ī, n., *javelin*.  
 placeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus, *please; used impersonally, placet, it seems good*.  
 placidus, -a, -um, adj., *calm*.  
 Plancus, -ī, m., *Plancus*.  
 plēnus, -a, -um, adj., *full*.  
 plērique, -ōrumque, m., *the majority, most*.

plērumque, adv., *generally*.  
 plūrēs, -ium, adj., *more, several*.  
 plūrimus, see multus.  
 plūs posse, *to be more powerful; plūrimus posse, to be most powerful, have great influence*.  
 pluvia, -ae, f., *rain*.  
 poēta, -ae, m., *poet*.  
 polliceor, -ēri, -ītus sum, *promise (with fut. infin.)*.  
 Pompēius, -ī, m., *Pompey*.  
 pōmum, -ī, n., *fruit, apple*.  
 pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, *put, place; (with castra), pitch*.  
 pōns, pontis, m., *bridge*.  
 pontifex, -icis, m., *pontifex (a Roman high priest)*.  
 populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *lay waste, devastate*.  
 populus, -ī, m., *people, nation*.  
 porta, -ae, f., *gate*.  
 portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *carry*.  
 portus, -ūs, m., *harbor, port*.  
 poscō, -ere, poposci, — *demand*.  
 possideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, *occupy, possess*.  
 possum, posse, potuī, can, *able*.  
 post, adv., *afterwards, after*.  
 post, prep. (with acc.) (of place), *behind; (of time), after*.  
 posteritās, -ātis, f., *posterity*.  
 posterus, -a, -um (comp., posterior; sup., postrēmus), adj., *following, last*.  
 postquam, conj., *after, after that*.  
 postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *claim, demand*.  
 potēns, potentis, adj., *powerful*.  
 potestās, -tātis, f., *power, opportunity*.



**potior**, -īri, -itus sum, *get possession of.*

**praeambulō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *walk before.*

**praecēdō**, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus, *surpass.*

**praeficiō**, -ere, -fēci, -fectus, *place over or in command of.*

**praemittō**, -ere, -misi, -missus, *send ahead.*

**praemium**, -i, n., *reward.*

**praepōnō**, -ere, -posui, -itus, *place in command of.*

**praesidium**, -i, n., *guard, garrison.*

**praestō**, -āre, -stiti, -stitus, *excel; to be responsible for; impers., praestat, it is better; officium praestāre, to do one's duty.*

**praesum**, -esse, -fui, *have command of, be at the head of.*

**praeter**, prep. (with acc.), *except.*

**praeterquam**, adv., *besides, other than.*

**primō**, -ere, pressi, pressus, *press; pass., be weighed down.*

**primus**, -a, -um, adj., *first, chief; primā luce, at daybreak; quam primum, as soon as possible; primō, at first.*

**princeps**, -cipis, m., *chief.*

**prior**, -ius, adj., *former.*

**privātus**, -a, -um, adj., *private.*

**prō**, prep. (with abl.), *in front of, in proportion to.*

for { *instead of.*  
*in defense of.*  
*in behalf of.*

**probō**, -āre, -āvi, ātus, *approve.*

**prōdō**, -ere, -didi, -ditus, *surrender.*

**proelium**, -i, n., *battle.*

**profectiō**, -ōnis, f., *departure.*

**prōficiō**, -ere, -fēci, -fectus, *go forward.*

**proficiscor**, **proficisci**, **profectus sum**, *set out.*

**profugiō**, -fugere, -fūgi, —, *flee.*

**prōgredior**, -i, -gressus sum, *advance.*

**prohibeō**, -ēre, -ui, -itus, *keep off, hinder, prohibit.*

**prōiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus, *throw forward; sē prōicere, leap down.*

**prōmō**, -ere, -prōmpsi, **prōmptus**, *bring forth, produce, render.*

**prōmoveō**, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtus, *move forward, promote.*

**prope**, adv., *near, nearly, almost.*

**properō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *hurry, hasten.*

**propior**, -ius, (sup., **proximus**), adj., *nearer; proximā nocte, on the following night.*

**proprius**, -a, -um, adj., *one's own.*

**propter** (with acc.), *on account of.*

**propterea quod**, *because.*

**prōsequor**, -sequi, -secutus sum, *follow, pursue.*

**prōtegō**, -ere, -tēxi, -tēctus, *protect.*

**prōvideō**, -ēre, -vidi, -visus, *provide.*

**prōvincia**, -ae, f., *province.*

**proximē**, adv., *next, most recently.*

**proximus**, -a, -um, *next; see propior.*

**psallō**, -ere, -i, —, *play the harp; rejoice.*

**pūblicus**, -a, -um, *public.*

**puella**, -ae, f., *girl.*

**puer**, **pueri**, m., *boy.*

**pugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, *fight.*

**pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, adj., *beautiful.*

*pulchrē*, adv., *beautifully*.  
*putō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *think, believe*.

## Q

Q. = Quintus.  
*quā*, adv., *where*.  
*quadringenti*, -ae, -a, *four hundred*.  
*quaerō*, -ere, -sivī, -situs, *ask, seek*; takes the acc. of the thing and the abl. of the person with *ē*, *ex*, *ā*, *ab*, or *dē*.  
*quaestus*, -ūs, m., *getting of money, gain*.  
*quam*, adv. and conj., *than, as*; with superlatives, *as much as possible*; *how*.  
*quamobrem*, adv., *why*.  
*quantō opere*, *how much*.  
*quantus*, -a, -um, adj., *how great, how much*.  
*quārtus*, -a, -um, *fourth*.  
*quattuor*, num. adj., indecl., *four*.  
*que* (an enclitic), *and*.  
*quī*, *quae*, *quod*, rel. pron., *who, which, that*.  
*quia*, conj., *because*.  
*quicquid* (*quisquis*), n., *whatever*.  
*quicumque*, *quaecumque*, *quodcumque*, indef. pron., *whoever*.  
*quidam*, *quaedam*, *quiddam*, indef. pron., *a certain one*.  
*quies*, -ētis, f., *repose*.  
*quīn*, conj., *that not, but that*.  
*quīndecim*, indecl., num. adj., *fifteen*.  
*quīnquāgintā*, num. adj. indecl., *fifty*.  
*quīnque*, num. adj., indecl., *five*.  
*quīntus*, -a, -um, *fifth*.  
*quis*, *quid*, interrog. pron., *who?*

*what?* *quī*, *quae*, *quod*, used adjectively.  
*quispiam*, —, *quidpiam*, indef. pron., *any one, anything*.  
*quisquam*, —, *quicquam*, indef. pron., *any one, anything*.  
*quisque*, *quidque*, *each one, every one*.  
*quō*, adv., *where*.  
*quod*, conj., *because*; *that*.  
*quōmodō*, interrog. adv., *how?*  
*quoque*, conj., *also*.  
*quot*, adj., indecl., *how many?*

## R

*rapīō*, -ere, -uī, *raptus*, *seize, carry off*.  
*ratis*, -is, f., *raft*.  
*ratus*, -a, -um, *reckoned, fixed by calculation*.  
*recipiō*, -ere, -cēpi, *receptus*, *take back, receive*; with *sē*, *retreat, recover*.  
*recūsō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *refuse*.  
*redūcō*, -ere, *redūxī*, *reductus*, *lead back, withdraw*.  
*referō*, -ferre, *rettulī*, -lātus, *bring back, report, reconsider*.  
*rēgina*, -ae, f., *queen*.  
*rēgiō*, -ōnis, f., *region, boundary*.  
*rēgnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *rule*.  
*rēgnum*, -ī, n., *royal power, kingdom*.  
*regō*, -ere, *rēxī*, *rēctus*, *rule, manage*.  
*reiciō*, -ere, *reiēcī*, *reiectus*, *throw back, repulse*.  
*relinquō*, -ere, *reliquī*, *relictus*, *leave*.  
*reliquus*, -a, -um, *remaining, the rest*.

**Rēmus**, -ī, m., *one of the Remi*.  
**remittō**, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, *send back*.  
**repellō**, -ere, reppulī, repulsus, *repulse*.  
**reperiō**, -ire, repperī, repertus, *find, discover*.  
**requiēscō**, -ere, requiēvī, requiētus, *rest, repose*.  
**requirō**, -ere, -quisivī, -quisitus, *require*.  
**rēs**, rei, f., *thing, affair*.  
**resistō**, -ere, restitī, —, *resist, oppose*.  
**respondeō**, -ēre, -dī, respōsus, *answer, reply, respond*.  
**rēspūblica**, reipūblicae, f., *state, republic*.  
**retineō**, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *restrain, detain, retain*.  
**revertō**, -ere, -tī, -sus, and re-  
 vertor, -ī, reversus sum, *turn back, return*; the perfect stem  
 tenses are from the active  
 forms, the others from the  
 deponent.  
**rēx**, rēgis, m., *king*.  
**Rhēnus**, -ī, m., *Rhine*.  
**Rhodanus**, -ī, m., *Rhone*.  
**ripa**, -ae, f., *bank (of a river)*.  
**rogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *ask*.  
**Rōma**, -ae, f., *Rome*.  
**Rōmānus**, -a, -um, adj., *Roman*;  
 as a subst., Rōmānus, -ī, m., a  
*Roman*.  
**rosa**, -ae, f., *rose*.  
**rōstrum**, -ī, n., *beak*; pl., *rostra*.  
**ruīna**, -ae, f., *ruin*.  
**rūmor**, -ōris, m., *rumor, re-  
 port*.  
**rūrsus**, adv., *again, anew*.

## S

**Sabīnī**, -ōrum, m., *Sabines*.  
**Sabinus**, -ī, m., *Sabinus*.  
**sacer**, sacra, sacrum, adj., *sacred*.  
**saepe**, adv., *often*.  
**sagittārius**, -ī, m., *archer, bowman*.  
**sāl**, -is, m., *salt*.  
**saltus**, -ūs, m., *leap, bound*.  
**salūs**, -ūtis, f., *safety*.  
**salūtō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *salute*.  
**salvātor**, -ōris, m., *savior*.  
**salveō**, -ēre, —, —, *to be well*;  
 salve (imperative), *welcome*.  
**salvus**, -a, -um, adj., *safe*; **salvam**  
 fac, *keep, preserve, save*.  
**sānus**, -a, -um, adj., *sound, sane*.  
**sapiens**, -entis, m., *a wise person*.  
**sapienter**, adv., *wisely*.  
**satis**, (also sat), adv., *enough, sufficient*.  
**scientia**, -ae, f., *knowledge*.  
**sciō**, -ire, -ivī, -itus, *know*.  
**scribō**, -ere, scripsī, scriptus, *write*.  
**scūtum**, -ī, n., *shield*.  
**secundus**, -a, -um, *second, follow-  
 ing*.  
**sēcūrus**, -a, -um, adj., *safe, secure*.  
**sed**, conj., *but*.  
**sēmentis**, -is, f., *sowing*.  
**semper**, adv., *always, ever*.  
**senātor**, -ōris, m., *senator*.  
**senectūs**, -ūtis, f., *old age*.  
**senātus**, -ūs, m., *senate*.  
**senex**, -is, (comp., senior; sup.,  
 maximus nātū), adj., *old*.  
**Senonēs**, -um, m., *a people of Gaul*.  
**septem**, num. adj., indecl., *seven*.  
**Séquana**, -ae, f., *the Seine*.  
**Séquanus**, -ī, m., *a Sequanian*.

<b>sequor, sequi, secutus sum, follow.</b>	<b>Spartānus, -a, -um, adj., Spartan.</b>
<b>serva, -ae, f., slave (female).</b>	<b>spatium, -i, n., space, time.</b>
<b>serviō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, be slave to, serve.</b>	<b>speculātor, -ōris, m., scout.</b>
<b>servitūs, -ūtis, f., slavery.</b>	<b>spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, hope.</b>
<b>servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, save, protect, maintain.</b>	<b>spēs, spei, f., hope.</b>
<b>servus, -i, m., slave, servant.</b>	<b>spirō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, breathe.</b>
<b>sescenti, -ae, -a, num. adj., six hundred.</b>	<b>stabiiliō, -īre, -īvi, -ītus, make firm, establish.</b>
<b>sex, num. adj., indecl., six.</b>	<b>statim, adv., immediately.</b>
<b>sexāgintā, num. adj., indecl., sixty.</b>	<b>statuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtus, determine, decide.</b>
<b>sī, conj., if.</b>	<b>status, -ūs, m., state, condition.</b>
<b>sic, adv., so (manner), in this way.</b>	<b>stella, -ae, f., star.</b>
<b>sīdus, -eris, n., constellation; pl., heavenly bodies.</b>	<b>stilus, -i, m., stilus; pen.</b>
<b>significō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, show, indicate.</b>	<b>stō, -āre, steti, stātus, stand.</b>
<b>signum, -i, n., signal, standard.</b>	<b>strepitus, -ūs, m., noise, uproar.</b>
<b>silva, -ae, f., forest, woods.</b>	<b>studium, -i, n., pursuit.</b>
<b>similis, -e, adj., like, similar.</b>	<b>sub, prep. (with acc. after verbs of motion), under; (with abl. to denote place at which), at the foot of, under; (with words denoting time), about, towards.</b>
<b>simul, adv., at once, as soon as.</b>	<b>submittō, -ere, -misi, -missus, send secretly.</b>
<b>simulācrum, -i, n., image, statue.</b>	<b>subruō, -ere, -rui, -rutus, undermine.</b>
<b>simulāns, -antis, adj., pretending.</b>	<b>subsequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, follow close upon.</b>
<b>sine, prep. (with abl.), without.</b>	<b>subsidiū, -i, n., aid, support.</b>
<b>singuli, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., one by one.</b>	<b>succēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessurus, approach.</b>
<b>sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left.</b>	<b>Suēbī, -ōrum, m., Swabians.</b>
<b>siquis, siqua, siquid, if any one or thing.</b>	<b>Suessiōnēs, -um, m., Suessiones.</b>
<b>situs, -ūs, m., situation.</b>	<b>sui, (gen.), reflex. pron., of himself, herself, itself, themselves.</b>
<b>sōl, sōlis, m., sun; sōlis occāsū, at sunset.</b>	<b>sum, esse, fui, be.</b>
<b>solum, -i, n., ground, floor.</b>	<b>summus, see superus.</b>
<b>sōlus, -a, -um, gen., sōlius, only, alone.</b>	<b>sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptus, take, assume, put on.</b>
<b>soror, -ōris, f., sister.</b>	<b>super, prep., over, above.</b>
<b>spargō, -ere, sparsi, sparsus, scatter.</b>	
<b>Sparta, -ae, f., Sparta.</b>	

**superō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *surpass, conquer, overcome, excel.*  
**supersedeō**, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessus, *refrain from.*  
**supersum**, -esse, -fui, *be left over, survive.*  
**superus**, -ī, m., *inhabitant of the upper world.*  
**superus**, -a, -um, (comp., **superior**; sup., **suprēmus** or **summus**), *high.*  
**suppetō**, -ere, -ivī, -itus, *be at hand.*  
**supplicium**, -ī, n., *punishment.*  
**suspiciō**, -ōnis, f., *suspicion.*  
**sustineō**, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, *check, withstand, sustain.*  
**suus**, -a, -um, poss. pron., *his, her, their, etc.*

## T

**T.** = **Titus.**

**taberna**, -ae, f., *shop, booth.*  
**tablinum**, -ī, n., *tablinum* (apartment of a Roman house where the family records were kept).  
**tabula**, -ae, f., *tablet, document.*  
**tam**, adv. of degree, *so.*  
**tamen**, conj., *nevertheless, still.*  
**tantum**, adv., *only.*  
**tantus**, -a, -um, *so great, such.*  
**Tarpēia**, -ae, f., *Tarpeia.*  
**tectum**, -ī, n., *roof.*  
**tēlum**, -ī, n., *dart, weapon.*  
**tempestās**, -tātis, f., *storm, bad weather.*  
**templum**, -ī, n., *temple.*  
**tempus**, -oris, n., *time.*  
**tendō**, -ere, tetendī, **tentus** or **tēnsus**, *extend.*  
**teneō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *hold.*  
**tentō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *attempt.*

**terra**, -ae, f., *earth, land.*  
**tertius**, -a, -um, *third.*  
**testūdō**, -inis, f., *testudo.*  
**Tiberius**, -ī, m., *Tiberius.*  
**timeō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *fear.*  
**timor**, -ōris, m., *fear, dread.*  
**Titurius**, -ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus.*  
**toga**, -ae, f., *toga.*  
**togātus**, -a, -um, *wearing a toga.*  
**tollō**, **tollere**, **sustulī**, **sublātus**, *remove.*  
**tormentum**, -ī, n., *engine of war.*  
**totidem**, adj., *just as many.*  
**tōtus**, -a, -um, gen., **tōtius**, *whole.*  
**trādō**, -ere, -didī, -ditus, *give up, surrender, impart, hand down, teach.*  
**trādūcō**, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, *lead across.*  
**tranquillitās**, -ātis, f., *tranquillity.*  
**trāns**, prep. (with acc.), *across* (on the farther side of).  
**trānseō**, -īre, -ivī (-īi), -itus, *go across, cross.*  
**trānsferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, *carry across.*  
**trānsversus**, -a, -um, adj., *cross-wise, oblique.*  
**trēs**, **trēs**, **tria**, *three.*  
**tribūtum**, -ī, n., *tax, tribute.*  
**trīgintā**, num. adj., indecl., *thirty.*  
**tū**, **tui**, pers. pron., *you.*  
**tuba**, -ae, f., *trumpet.*  
**tui** (gen.), reflex. pron., *of yourself.*  
**tum**, adv., *then.*  
**tumultus**, -ūs, m., *disturbance, tumult.*  
**tumulus**, -ī, m., *mound.*

turba, -ae, f., uproar, commotion;  
crowd.

turris, -is, f., tower.

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., safe.

tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron., your,  
yours.

tyrannus, -i, m., tyrant.

## U

ubi, adv., where (place), when  
(time).

ūllus, -a, -um, gen., ūllius, any.

ulterior, -ius, (sup., ultimus), adj.,  
farther.

ultimus, -a, -um, last, extreme.

ūnā, adv., along with.

undique, adv., on all sides.

ūniō, -īre, -iī, -ītus, unite.

ūniversi, -ōrum, m., all together.

ūnus, -a, -um, gen., ūnius, one;  
pl., only, alone.

urbs, urbis, f., city.

ūsus, -ūs, m., use.

ut, conj., that, in order that,  
as (when followed by indica-  
tive).

uter, utra, utrum, gen., utrius,  
adj., which (of two).

uterque, -traque, -trumque, each,  
every.

utī, see ut.

ūtīlis, -e (comp., -ior; sup., -issi-  
mus), adj., useful.

utinam, adv. (introducing a wish),  
would that, O that.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, use.

utrum, conj., not translated in  
direct questions; in indirect  
questions, whether.

## V

vacuus, -a, -um, adj., empty;

vacuus ab, destitute of.

vadum, -ī, n., shoal, ford.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, wander.

valeō, -ēre, -uī, —, be powerful,  
strong.

vāllum, -ī, n., rampart.

valor, -ōris, m., value.

vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus, lay waste.

vel, conj., or; vel . . . vel, either  
. . . or.

Veliocassēs, -ium, m., the Velio-  
casses.

vēlōciter (comp., vēlōcius; sup.,  
vēlōcissimē), adv., swiftly.

vēlōx, vēlōcis, adj., swift.

vēlum, -ī, n., curtain.

venerātiō, -ōnis, f., worship.

Veneti, -ōrum, m., Veneti.

veniō, -īre, vēni, ventus, come.

ventus, -ī, m., wind.

verbum, -ī, n., word.

vereor, -ēri, -itus sum, fear,  
dread.

vērō, adv., in truth, but.

vēritās, -ātis, f., truth.

vertō, -ere, verti, versus, turn.

vērus, -a, -um, adj., true.

Vesta, -ae, f., Vesta.

Vestālīs, -e, adj., Vestal.

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron.,  
your, yours.

vēstibulum, -ī, n., vestibule.

vēstīgium, -ī, n., trace, vestige.

via, -ae, f., road, way, journey.

vice, f. (abl. of vicis, change), in  
turn.

victor, -ōris, m., victor, conqueror.

victōria, -ae, f., victory.

**vīcus**, -ī, m., *village*.

**videō**, -ēre, **vidī**, **vīsus**, *see*.

**videor**, -ēri, **vīsus** **sum**, *seem, appear*.

**vigilia**, -ae, f., *watch* (part of the night).

**vīginti**, num. adj., indecl., *twenty*.

**vincō**, -ere, **vīcī**, **victus**, *conquer, defeat*.

**vīnea**, -ae, f., *vine*.

**vir**, -ī, m., *man*.

**virgō**, -inis, f., *virgin, maiden*.

**Viromandui**, -ōrum, m., *Viro-mandui*.

**virtūs**, -tūtis, f., *virtue, valor, courage, bravery*.

**vīs** (gen. and dat. sing. wanting), **vim**, **vī**, f., *force*; pl., **virēs**, **vīrium**, etc., *strength*.

**vīta**, -ae, f., *life*.

**vivō**, -ere, **vixī**, **victus**, *live*.

**vix**, adv., *scarcely*.

**vocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *call*.

**volō**, **velle**, **volui**, —, *be willing, wish*.

**volō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *fly*.

**Volusēnus**, -ī, m., *Volusenus*.

**vōtum**, -ī, n., *vow, wish*.

**vōx**, **vōcis**, f., *voice*; pl., *words*.

**vulgus**, -ī, n., *the crowd*.

**vulnerō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, *wound*.

**vulnus**, -eris, n., *wound*.





# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

## A

ability, *facultās*.  
 able, *possum*.  
 about, *dē, ad, circum*.  
 abundance, *cōpia*.  
 accept, *accipiō*.  
 accomplish, *cōficiō, efficiō*.  
 across, *trāns, in*.  
 act, *agō*.  
 active, *ācer*.  
 advance, *prōgredior, signa in-  
 ferre*.  
 advise, *moneō*.  
 affair, *rēs*.  
 after, *post*.  
 again, *rūrsus*.  
 against, *in, contrā*.  
 ago, *ante*.  
 aid, *auxilium, subsidium*.  
 all, *omnis*.  
 allow, *patior*.  
 almost, *prope, paene, ferē*.  
 alone, *sōlus*.  
 already, *iam*.  
 although, *cum*.  
 always, *semper*.  
 ambassador, *lēgātus*.  
 Ambiani, *Ambiānī*.  
 among, *inter*.  
 and, *et, ac, atque, -que*.  
 anew, *rūrsus*.  
 animal, *animal*.

announce, *nūntiō*.  
 another, *alius*.  
 answer, *respondeō*.  
 any, *ullus*.  
 approach, *n., adventus*.  
 approach, *v., adeō*.  
 Aquitania, *Aquītānia*.  
 Ariovistus, *Ariovistus*.  
 arms, *arma*.  
 army, *exercitus*.  
 around, *circum*.  
 arrange, *ordinō*.  
 arrival, *adventus*.  
 as, . . . *ut*.  
 as soon as, *cum primum*.  
 ascertain, *cognōsco, reperiō*.  
 ask, *petō, quaerō*.  
 assemble, *conveniō*.  
 assembly, *conventus*.  
 assert, *cōfirmō*.  
 associate, *comes*.  
 assume, *sūmō*.  
 at, *abl. of time or place, locative*.  
 attack, *n., impetus*.  
 attack, *v., oppugnō*.  
 attempt, *cōnor*.  
 authority, *auctoritās*.  
 auxiliary forces, *auxilia*.

## B

bad, *malus*.  
 band, *manus*.

bank, *ripa*.  
 battle, *proelium*.  
 be, *sum*.  
 bear, *ferō*.  
 beautiful, *pulcher*.  
 because, *quod*.  
 become, *fiō*.  
 before, *ante*.  
 begin, *coepi, incipio, in eo*.  
 beginning, *initium*.  
 behalf of, *pro*.  
 behind, *post*.  
 Belgians, *Belgae*.  
 believe, *credō*.  
 Bellovaci, *Bellovaci*.  
 besides, *praeterquam*.  
 besiege, *oppugnō*.  
 best, see *bonus*.  
 better (it is), *praestat*.  
 better, see *bonus*.  
 between, *inter*.  
 black, *niger*.  
 blame, *culpō*.  
 body, *corpus*.  
 book, *liber*.  
 born, (be), *nāscor*.  
 both . . . and, *et . . . et*.  
 boundary, *regiō, finis*.  
 boy, *puer*.  
 brave, *fortis*.  
 bravely, *fortiter*.  
 bravery, *virtūs*.  
 break (camp), *movo*.  
 bridge, *pōns*.  
 brief, *brevis*.  
 bring, *ferō, afferō*.  
 bring back, *redūcō, referō*.  
 bring in or upon, *inferō*.  
 bring out, *effero*.  
 bring together, *cōnferō*.  
 bring (war on), *inferō*.

broad, *lātus*.  
 brother, *frāter*.  
 Brutus, *Brūtus*.  
 build, *aedificō*.  
 building, *aedificium*.  
 burn, *incendō*.  
 but, *sed*.  
 by, *a, ab*.

## C

Caesar, *Caesar*.  
 call, *vocō*.  
 call together, *convocō*.  
 camp, *castra*.  
 can, *possum*.  
 captive, *captivus*.  
 capture, *capio, expugnō*.  
 care, *diligentia*.  
 carefully, *diligenter*.  
 carry, *ferō, portō*.  
 carry away, *effero*.  
 carry on war, *bellum gerō*.  
 carry out, *effero*.  
 Cassius, *Cassius*.  
 Catiline, *Catilīna*.  
 Cato, *Catō*.  
 cause, *causa*.  
 cavalry, *equitēs, equitātus*.  
 censure, *culpō*.  
 centurion, *centurio*.  
 certain, adj., *certus*.  
 certain one, pron., *quidam*.  
 character, *mōrēs*.  
 check, *sustineō*.  
 chief, *princeps*.  
 children, *liberī*.  
 choose, *diligō*.  
 Cicero, *Cicero*.  
 citizen, *civis*.  
 city, *urbs*.  
 close, *claudō*.

cohort, *cohors*.  
 collect, *cōnferō, cōgō*.  
 come, *venīō*.  
 command, n., *imperium*.  
 command, v., *imperō, iubeō*.  
 command of (be in), *praesum*.  
 commander-in-chief, *imperātor*.  
 companion, *comes*.  
 compel, *cōgō*.  
 conceal, *cēlē*.  
 concerning, *dē*.  
 confidence, *fidēs*.  
 conquer, *superō, vincō*.  
 conqueror, *victor*.  
 consider, *cōgitō, habēō*.  
 construct, *instruō*.  
 consul, *cōsul*.  
 contend, *contendō*.  
 control, *imperium*.  
 country, *patria, finēs*.  
 courage, *virtūs*.  
 cover, *compleō*.  
 Crassus, *Crassus*.  
 cross, *trānseō*.  
 custom, *mōs*.

D

daily, adj., *cotīdiānus*.  
 daily, adv., *cotīdiē*.  
 danger, *periculum*.  
 dare, *audeō*.  
 daughter, *filia*.  
 day, *diēs*; late in the day, *multō diē*; following day, *posterō diē*.  
 daybreak, *primā lūce*.  
 dear, *cārus*.  
 death, *mors*.  
 deceive, *fallō*.  
 decide, *cōstituō, statuō*.  
 declare, *cōnfīrmō*.  
 deep, *altus*.

defeat, *superō, vincō*.  
 defend, *dēfendō*.  
 defender, *dēfēnsōr*.  
 defense of, *prō*.  
 delay, n, *mora*.  
 delay, v., *moror*.  
 deliver, (a speech), *habēō*.  
 deny, *negō*.  
 departure, *profectiō*.  
 deprive, *nūdō*.  
 destroy, *dēlēō*.  
 detain, *retineō*.  
 determine, *cōstituō, statuō*.  
 devastate, *populor*.  
 differ, *differō*.  
 difficult, *difficilis*.  
 difficulty, *difficultās*.  
 diligence, *diligentia*.  
 diligently, *diligenter*.  
 direction, *pars*.  
 disappoint, *fallō*.  
 discover, *reperiō*.  
 dismiss, *dīmīttō*.  
 ditch, *fossa*.  
 do, *agō, faciō*.  
 draw up, *instruō*.  
 dread, n., *timor*.  
 dread, v., *vereor*.  
 drive, *agō, pellō*.  
 drive out, *expellō, pellō*.  
 dwell, *incolō*.

E

each, *quisque*.  
 early, *primus* (with noun).  
 earth, *terra*.  
 easy, *facilis*.  
 easily, *facile*.  
 eight, *octō*.  
 either . . . or, *vel . . . vel, aut . . . aut*.

encamp, *cōnsidō*.  
 encourage, *cohortor*.  
 end, *finis*.  
 enemy, *hostis, inimicus*.  
 engage (in battle), *committō*.  
 enjoy, *fruor*.  
 enlist, *cōnscribō*.  
 enroll, *cōnscribō*.  
 enter, *ineō*.  
 epistle, *epistula*.  
 equal, *pār*.  
 esteem, *honor*.  
 every, *omnis*; every one, *quisque*.  
 evident (it is), *cōstat*.  
 evil, *malus*.  
 excel, *superō, praestō*.  
 excellent, *optimus*.  
 extend, *pateō*.

## F

face to face, *adversus*.  
 facing, *adversus*.  
 fail, *dēficiō*.  
 faith, *fidēs*.  
 faithful, *fidus*.  
 far, *longē*.  
 farmer, *agricola*.  
 farther, *ulterior*.  
 father, *pater*.  
 fear, n., *timor*.  
 fear, v., *timeō, vereor*.  
 few, *paucī*.  
 field, *ager*.  
 fiercely, *ācriter*.  
 fight, *pugnō*.  
 fill, *compleō*.  
 find out, *reperiō, cognōscō*.  
 fire, *ignis*.  
 first, *primus*.  
 fit, *idōneus*.  
 five, *quīque*.

flee, *fugiō*.  
 fleet, *classis*.  
 flight, *fuga*.  
 follow, *sequor*.  
 following, *posterus*.  
 foot, (at), *sub*.  
 foot, *pēs*.  
 foot-soldier, *pedes*.  
 for, *prō*.  
 force, *vīs*.  
 forces, *cōpiae*.  
 forest, *silva*.  
 former, *prior*.  
 fortifications, *moenia, mūniri*.  
 fortify, *mūniō*.  
 four, *quattuor*.  
 free, v., *liberō*.  
 free, adj., *liber*.  
 frequent, *crēber*.  
 friend, *amicus*.  
 friendly, *amicus*.  
 frighten, *terreō*.  
 from, *a, ab, ē, ex*.  
 front of, *prō*.

## G

Galba, *Galba*.  
 garrison, *praesidium*.  
 gate, *porta*.  
 gather, *dēligō*.  
 Gaul, *Gallia*.  
 Gauls, *Galli*.  
 general, *imperātor*.  
 German, *Germānus*.  
 get possession of, *potior*.  
 gift, *dōnum*.  
 girl, *puella*.  
 give, *dō*.  
 give up, *dēdō, trādō*.  
 gladly, *libenter*.  
 glory, *glōria, honor*.

go, *eō*.  
 go across, *trānsēdō*.  
 go out, *exēdō*.  
 go to, *adeō*.  
 god, *deus*.  
 goddess, *dea*.  
 good, *bonus*.  
 grain, *frūmentum*.  
 great, *magnus*; so great, *tantus*;  
     how great, *quantus*.  
 greatly, *magnopere*.  
 guard, n., *cūstōs*, *praesidium*.  
 guard, v., *dēfendō*.  
 guide, *dux*.

H

hand, *manus*.  
 happen, *fiō*.  
 harm, *noceō*.  
 hasten, *properō*, *contendō*.  
 have, *habēdō*.  
 he, *is*.  
 head, *caput*.  
 hear, *audiō*.  
 heavy, *gravis*.  
 heavy baggage, *impedimenta*.  
 height, *altitūdō*.  
 help, *auxilium*.  
 Helvetians, *Helvētīi*.  
 hem in, *contineō*.  
 her, *suus*.  
 high, *altus*, *superus*.  
 hill, *collis*.  
 himself, *suī*, *ipse*.  
 hinder, *prohibeō*.  
 hindrance, *impedimentum*.  
 his, *suus*.  
 hither, *citerior*.  
 hold, *habēdō*, *teneō*.  
 hold together, *contineō*.  
 home, *domus*.

honor, *honor*.  
 hope, *spēs*.  
 horn, *cornū*.  
 horse, *equus*.  
 horseman, *eques*.  
 hostage, *obses*.  
 hour, *hōra*.  
 house, *domus*.  
 how, *quam*, *quōmodo*.  
 how great, *quantus*.  
 how long, *quam diū*.  
 how many, *quot*.  
 how much, *quantus*.  
 hurl, *iaciō*.  
 hurl together, *coniciō*.  
 hurry, *properō*.

I

I, *ego*.  
 if, *si*.  
 if not, *nisi*.  
 immediately, *statim*.  
 immortal, *immortālis*.  
 in, *in*.  
 incredible, *incrēdibilis*.  
 infantry, *peditēs*.  
 inferior, *inferior*.  
 influence, n., *auctōritās*.  
 influence, v., *adducō*.  
 inform, *certiōrem facere*, *ēdoceō*.  
 inhabit, *incolō*.  
 injure, *noceō*.  
 injury, *iniūria*.  
 inner, *interior*.  
 instruct, *ēdoceō*.  
 into, *in*.  
 invincible, *invictus*.  
 it, *id*.

J

javelin, *pilum*.  
 join, *coniungō*, *committō*.

journey, *iter, via*.  
 judge, *iūdex*.  
 Julia, *Iūlia*.  
 Jura, *Iūra*.

## K

keep from, *prohibeō*.  
 keep in, *contineō*.  
 keeper, *cūstōs*.  
 kill, *interficiō, occidō*.  
 king, *rēx*.  
 know, *sciō*.

## L

labor, n., *labor*.  
 labor, v., *labōrō*.  
 land, *terra*.  
 language, *lingua*.  
 large, *magnus*.  
 last, *extrēmus*.  
 law, *lēx*.  
 lay waste, *vāstō, populor*.  
 lead, *dūcō*.  
 lead across, *trādūcō*.  
 lead back, *redūcō*.  
 lead out, *ēdūcō*. lead to, *addūcō*.  
 leader, *dux*.  
 learn, *cognōscō*.  
 leave, *relinquō*.  
 left, *sinister*.  
 legion, *legiō*.  
 length, *longitūdō*.  
 Lentulus, *Lentulus*.  
 less, *minor*.  
 lest, *nē*.  
 letter, *littera, epistula*.  
 lie open, *pateō*.  
 lieutenant, *lēgātus*.  
 life, *vīta*.  
 light, n., *lūx*.  
 light, adj., *levis*.

like, *similis*.  
 line of battle, *aciēs*.  
 line of march, *agmen*.  
 little, adv., *paulum*.  
 live, *vivō*.  
 live in, *incolō*.  
 location, *locus*.  
 long, adj., *longus*.  
 long, adv., *diū*.  
 lord, *dominus*.  
 lose, *amittō, dimitto*.  
 love, *amō*.  
 low, *inferus*.

## M

make, *faciō*.  
 man, *vir, homō*.  
 manage, *regō*.  
 manners, *mōrēs*.  
 many, *multī*.  
 march, v., *iter facere*.  
 march, n., *iter*.  
 Marcus, *Mārcus*.  
 marsh, *palūs*.  
 master, *dominus, magister*.  
 me, see *ego*.  
 meantime, *intereā*.  
 meet, *occurrō*.  
 meeting, *conventus*.  
 memory, *memoria*.  
 merchant, *mercātor*.  
 message, *nūntius*.  
 messenger, *nūntius*.  
 middle, *medius*.  
 midnight, *media nox*.  
 mile, *mille passūs*.  
 mistress, *domina*.  
 mother, *māter*.  
 mountain, *mōns*.  
 move, *moveō*.  
 move forward, *prōmoveā*.

movement, *mōtus*.  
much, *multus*.  
must, *dēbeō* or pass. periphrastic.  
my, *meus*.  
myself, *meī*.

N

name, *nōmen*.  
nation, *nātiō*.  
native land, *patria*.  
nature, *nātūra*.  
near, *ad, prope*.  
nearer, *propior*.  
nearly, *paene, prope*.  
neither, conj., *neque*.  
neither, adj., *neuter*.  
nevertheless, *tamen*.  
new, *novus*.  
next, *proximus*.  
night, *nox*.  
nine, *novem*.  
no, *nūllus*.  
no one, *nūllus, nēmō*.  
noise, *clāmor*.  
none, *nūllus*.  
nor, *neque*.  
not, *nōn*.  
not only . . . but also, *nōn solum*  
. . . *sed etiam*.  
nothing, *nihil*.  
number, *numerus*.  
numerous, *crēber*.

O

oath, *iūstūrandum*.  
obey, *pāreō*.  
of (concerning), *dē*.  
often, *saepe*.  
old, *senex*.  
on, *in*.  
on all sides, *undique*.

one, *ūnus*.  
one hundred, *centum*.  
only, *sōlus*.  
opportunity, *facultās, potestās*.  
oppose, *resistō*.  
or, *aut, vel, an*.  
oration, *orātiō*.  
order, *iubeō* (with acc.), *imperō*  
. (with dat.).  
other, *alius*.  
ought, *dēbeō*.  
our, *noster*.  
out of, *ē, ex*.  
outer, *exterus*.  
over, *in*.  
overcome, *superō*.

P

pace, *passus*.  
pacify, *pācō*.  
part, *pars*.  
pass the winter, *hiemō*.  
peace, *pāx*.  
people, *populus*.  
peril, *periculum*.  
permit, *licet, patior*.  
persuade, *persuādeō*.  
picture, *pictūra*.  
pitch (camp), *pōnō*.  
place, n., *locus*.  
place, v., *pōnō*.  
place before, *antepōnō*.  
place in command of, *praeficiā*  
*praepōnō*.  
plan, *cōnsilium*.  
please, *placeō*.  
pledge, *fidēs*.  
plenty, *cōpia*.  
Pompey, *Pompēius*.  
port, *portus*.  
possession (get), *potior*.

possible (as), *quam* with superlative.

power, *potestās*.

powerful, *potēns*.

praise, *laudō*.

prefer, *mālō*, *antepōnō*.

prepare, *parō*.

presence, *cōnspectus*.

present, *dōnum*.

private, *privātus*.

prohibit, *prohibeō*.

promise, *polliceor*.

promote, *prōmoveō*.

protection, *praesidium*.

province, *prōvincia*.

pupil, *discipulus*.

put, *pōnō*.

put to flight, *pellō*.

## Q

quick, *celer*.

quickly, *celeriter*.

## R

rank, *ordō*.

rather (comparative).

read, *legō*.

rear, *novissimum agmen*.

receive, *accipio*.

recently (most), *proximē*.

reckon, *existimō*.

recruit, *novus miles*.

region, *regiō*.

remain, *maneō*.

remaining, *reliquus*.

Remi, *Rēmī*.

reply, *respondeō*.

report, n., *rūmor*.

report, v., *nūntiō*, *referō*.

republic, *rēspūblica*.

repulse, *reiciō*.

resist, *resistō*.

respects, in all, *omnibus rebus*

respond, *respondeō*.

rest, *reliquus*.

restrain, *retineō*.

retain, *retineō*.

retreat, *recipio*.

return, *revertō*, *revertor*.

revolt, *motus*.

revolution, *rēs novae*.

Rhine, *Rhēnus*.

Rhone, *Rhodanus*.

ridge, *iugum*.

right, *dexter*.

river, *flūmen*.

road, *via*.

Roman, *Rōmānus*.

Rome, *Rōma*.

rose, *rosa*.

row, *ordō*.

royal power, *rēgnum*.

rule, *regō*.

rumor, *rūmor*.

run, *currō*.

## S

Sabinus, *Sabīnus*.

safe, *tūtus*.

safety, *salūs*.

sail, *nāvigō*.

sailor, *nauta*.

sake of, *causā*.

same, *idem*.

save, *servō*.

say, *dīcō*, *loquor*.

scarcity, *inopia*.

scatter, *differō*.

scout, *explōrātor*.

sea, *mare*.

seashore, *lītus*.

see, *videō*.



seek, *petō*.  
 seem, *videor*.  
 seize, *capio*, *occupō*.  
 select, *dēligō*.  
 senate, *senātus*.  
 senator, *senātor*.  
 send, *mittō*.  
 send ahead, *praemittō*.  
 send away, *amittō*.  
 send back, *remittō*.  
 send in different directions, *di-*  
     *mittō*.  
 Sequanian, *Sēquanus*.  
 servant, *servus*, *serva*.  
 set fire to, *incendō*.  
 set free, *liberō*.  
 set out, *proficiscor*.  
 setting, *occāsus*.  
 settle, *cōnsidō*.  
 seven, *septem*.  
 several, *complūrēs*.  
 severe, *gravis*.  
 sharp, *ācer*.  
 sharply, *ācriter*.  
 ship, *nāvis*.  
 shore, *litus*.  
 short, *brevis*.  
 shout, *clāmor*.  
 show, *doceō*, *mōnstrō*.  
 shut, *claudō*.  
 side, *pars*, *latus*.  
 sight, *cōspectus*.  
 signal, *signum*.  
 since, *cum*.  
 sister, *soror*.  
 six, *sex*.  
 six hundred, *sescentī*.  
 size, *magnitūdō*.  
 slaughter, *caedēs*.  
 slave, *servus*.  
 slavery, *servitūs*.

slay, *occidō*, *interficiō*.  
 small, *parvus*.  
 so, *ita*, *tam*.  
 so great, *tantus*.  
 soldier, *miles*.  
 some one, *aliquis*.  
 some . . . others, *aliī . . . alī*.  
 somewhat, *paulum*.  
 son, *filius*.  
 speak, *loquor*.  
 speech, *orātiō*.  
 speed, *celeritās*.  
 spend winter, *hiemō*.  
 spy, *explōrātor*.  
 stand, *stō*.  
 standard, *signum*.  
 star, *stella*.  
 state, *civitas*, *rēspublica*.  
 stone, *lapis*.  
 storm, *v.*, *oppugnō*.  
 storm, *n.*, *tempestās*.  
 stormy weather, *hiema*.  
 story, *fābula*.  
 strength, *virēs*.  
 strengthen, *cōfirmō*.  
 strip, *nūdō*.  
 subdue, *pācō*.  
 such, *tantus*.  
 Successiones, *Suessiōnēs*.  
 suffer, *patior*.  
 suitable, *idōneus*.  
 summer, *aestās*.  
 summon, *convocō*.  
 sun, *sōl*.  
 sunset at, *sōlis occāsū*.  
 superior, *superior*.  
 supplies, *commedtus*.  
 supply, *cōpia*.  
 surpass, *superō*, *praestō*.  
 surrender, *n.*, *deditiō*.  
 surrender, *v.*, *dēdō*, *trādō*.

survive, *supersum*.  
 suspicion, *suspiciō*.  
 swamp, *palūs*.  
 swift, *celer*, *vēlōx*.  
 swiftly, *celeriter*.  
 swiftness, *celeritās*.  
 sword, *gladius*.

## T

table, *mēsa*,  
 take, *capiō*, *sūmō*.  
 take back, *recipiō*.  
 take by storm, *expugnō*.  
 tall, *altus*, *longus*.  
 teach, *doceō*.  
 teacher, *magister*.  
 tell, *nārrō*.  
 ten, *decem*.  
 tenth, *decimus*.  
 territory, *fīnēs*.  
 than, *quam*.  
 that, conj., *ut*; not expressed after  
     verbs of saying, thinking, and  
     the like.  
 that, demon. pron., *is*, *ille*.  
 that of yours, *iste*.  
 that, rel. pron., *quī*.  
 theirs, *suus*.  
 there, *ibi*.  
 thing, *rēs*.  
 think, *putō*, *arbitror*, *existimō*.  
 third, *tertius*.  
 this, *hic*.  
 thousand, *mille*.  
 three, *trēs*.  
 through, *per*.  
 throw, *iaciō*.  
 throw back, *reiciō*.  
 time, *tempus*.  
 tired, *dēfessus*.  
 to, *ad*.

toll, *labor*.  
 tongue, *lingua*.  
 top, *summus*.  
 torture, *cruciātus*.  
 toward, *ad*.  
 tower, *turris*.  
 town, *oppidum*.  
 tree, *arbor*.  
 trench, *fossa*.  
 troops, *cōpiae*.  
 trumpet, *tuba*.  
 trust, *crēdō*.  
 try, *cōnor*.  
 tumult, *tumultus*.  
 twenty-five, *viginti quinque*.  
 two, *duo*.  
 two hundred, *ducenti*.

## U

unconquerable, *invictus*.  
 under, *sub*.  
 understand, *intelligō*.  
 undertake, *incipiō*.  
 unfriendly, *inimicus*.  
 unite, *coniungō*.  
 unless, *nisi*.  
 unlike, *dissimilis*.  
 unwilling, *nōlō*.  
 upon, *in* (with acc. or abl.).  
 upper, *superior*.  
 us, *nōs*.  
 use, *utor*.  
 useful, *utilis*.  
 useless, *inutilis*.

## V

vain (in), *frustrā*.  
 valor, *virtūs*.  
 van, *primum agmen*.  
 Veneti, *Venetī*.  
 very (superlative).

victor, *victor*.  
victory, *victōria*.  
view, *cōspectus*.  
village, *vīcus*.  
violence, *vīs*.  
virtue, *virtūs*.  
visit, *adeō*.  
voice, *vōx*.

W

wage, *gerō*.  
wall, *mūrus*.  
want, *inopia*.  
war, *bellum*.  
warn, *moneō*.  
war-ship, *nāvis longa*.  
watch, *vigilia, cūstōs*.  
water, *agua*.  
way, *via*.  
we, *nōs*.  
weapon, *telum*.  
weary, *dēfessus*.  
weather (stormy), *hiems, tempestās*.  
well, *bene*.  
what, *quis*.  
when, *cum, ubi*.  
where, *ubi*.  
wherefore, *cūr*.  
whether, *utrum, num*.  
which, *quī*.  
which of two, *uter*.  
white, *albus*.  
who, *quī, quis*.  
whole, *tōtus*.  
why, *cūr, quamobrem*.

wide, *lātus*.  
width, *lātītūdō*.  
willing, *volō*.  
wind, *ventus*.  
wing (of an army), *cornū*.  
winter, n., *hiems*.  
winter quarters, *hiberna*.  
wisely, *sapienter*.  
wish, *volō*.  
with, *cum*.  
withdraw, *exeō, reducō*.  
without, *sine*.  
withstand, *sustineō*.  
woman, *fēmina*.  
woods, *silva*.  
word, *verbum*.  
work, n., *opera*.  
work, v., *labōrō*.  
worn out, *dēfessus*.  
worse, *peior*.  
would that, *utinam*.  
wound, n., *vulnus*.  
wound, v., *vulnerō*.  
wretched, *miser*.  
write, *scribō*.  
wrong, *iniūria*.

Y

year, *annus*.  
yet, *tamen*.  
yoke, *iugum*.  
you, *tū, vōs*.  
young, *iuvenis*.  
young man, *adulēscēns*.  
your, *tuus, vester*.  
yourself, *tuī*.



# INDEX

*References are to sections*

## A

**ā** or **ab** with ablative of agent,  
140, 620;

place whence, 76, 617;

place in which, 76, 617.

**abbreviations**, 561.

**ablative case**,

absolute, 463, 464, 632;

adverbially, 383;

of accompaniment, 102, 618;

after a comparative, 221, 624;

of agent, 140, 620;

of cause, 195, 622;

of degree of difference, 247,  
383, 625;

of manner, 114, 619;

of means, 65, 616;

of quality, 441, 631;

of separation, 316, 627;

of specification, 204, 623;

of time, 147, 621;

with *utor*, etc., 375, 630;

with prepositions, 332, 628;

with *dē* or *ex* instead of the  
genitive of the whole, 260,  
626;

with *quaerō* and *petō*, 400, 439.

**accent**, see Introduction.

**accompaniment**, 102, 618.

**accusative case**,

adverbially, 382, 615;

of direct object, 16, 610;

duration of time, 286, 612;

extent of space, 286, 612;

place whither, 76, 278, 611;

subject of infinitive, 307, 613;

with prepositions, 333, 614.

**acer**, declension, 570;

comparison, 576.

**ācriter**, comparison, 578.

**ad**, with accusative, place to  
which, 76, 611.

**adjectives**, 674, 678;

agreement of, 40, 637;

kinds of, 36, 144;

of first and second declen-  
sions, 36;

of third declension, one termi-  
nation, 158; two termina-  
tions, 152; three termina-  
tions, 144, *a*;

of peculiar declension, 290;

comparison, regular, 214, 678,  
irregular, 225, 226, 234, 235,  
236, 237, 577; with *magis*  
and *maximē*, 237.

meaning of comparatives, 214,  
*a*;

meaning of superlatives, 214, *a*;  
declension of comparatives,  
217, 573;

declension of superlatives, 218;  
ending in *er*, 225;

five ending in *lis*, 226;

with dative, 230, 269, 603, 604;  
numerals, 326, 579, 676.

*References are to sections*

- adverbs**, 703-706; derivation, 243;  
 formation, 243;  
 comparison, 244;  
 adverbial accusative, 382, 615.  
**agent**, expressed by ablative with *a* or *ab*, 140, 620;  
 expressed by dative with passive periphrastic, 531, 609.  
**ager**, declension, 564.  
**agreement of adjectives**, 40, 637;  
 of appositives, 187, 635;  
 of possessive pronouns, 415, *a*, 418;  
 of relative pronouns, 395, 638;  
 of verb with subject, 17, 636.  
**aliquis**, declension, 585.  
**alius**, declension, 574.  
**alphabet**, see Introduction.  
**amicus**, declension, 564.  
**answers**, 20, 68, 97.  
**article**, see Introduction.  
**audiō**, 589.
- B**
- base**, 6, *b*.  
**bellum**, declension, 564.  
**bene**, comparison, 578.  
**bonus**, declension, 569.  
 comparison, 577.
- C**
- Caesar Phrases**, 151, 175, 242, 250, 281, 331, 339, 437, 462, 526.  
**capiō**, conjugation, 590.  
**caput**, declension, 106.  
**cardinals**, 676; list of, 326, 579;  
 indeclinable, 326, *a*.  
**cases**, names and uses, 2, 669-672.  
**causal clauses**, 471; 473, 2; 644.  
**cause**, expressed by ablative, 195, 622.  
**circumstantial clauses**, 470, 643.  
**citerior**, comparison, 236, 577.  
**commands**, 496.  
**comparative**, declension, 216, 217, 573; followed by ablative, 221, 624; meaning, 214, *a*.  
**comparison of adjectives**, regular, 214;  
 irregular, 225, 226, 234, 235, 236, 237, 577;  
 positive wanting, 236;  
 ending in *er*, 225;  
 six ending in *lis*, 226;  
 of adverbs, 243, 578.  
**complementary infinitive**, 176, 649.  
**composition**, 150, 179.  
**compound nouns**, 266, *a*, *b*.  
**compound verbs**, 419.  
**concessive clauses**, 472, 645.  
**conditional sentences**, 478-482, 646, 647.  
**conjugations**, 107;  
 how distinguished, 107;  
*portō*, 586;  
*moneō*, 587;  
*dūcō*, 588;  
*audiō*, 589;  
*capiō*, 590;  
*sum*, *possum*, 591;  
*volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*, 592;  
*ferō*, 593;  
*eō*, 594;  
*fiō*, 595.  
**conjunctions**, 708.

*References are to sections*

**consonants**, how pronounced, see Introduction.  
**consul**, declension, 565.  
**cornū**, declension, 566.  
**corpus**, declension, 106.  
**cum clauses**, 469.

**D**

**dative case**,  
 of agent, 531, 609;  
 with adjectives, 230, 269, 603, 604;  
 with compound verbs, 419, 606;  
 of indirect object, 56, 602;  
 with intransitive verbs, 499, 605;  
 of possessor, 514, 608;  
 of purpose, 508, 607.  
**dē or ex**, with ablative instead of genitive of the whole, 260, 626.  
**dea**, declension, 568.  
**declensions**, how distinguished, 22.  
 first, 5, 563;  
 second, 22, 32, 564;  
 third, 90, 91, 99, 106, 118, 119, 565;  
 fourth, 256, 566;  
 fifth, 264, 567.  
**definite measurements**, 441, a, 601.  
**demonstrative pronouns**, 431, 582.  
**deponent verbs**, 370.  
**descriptive**, ablative, or genitive, 441, 600, 631.  
**deus**, declension, 568.  
**diēs**, declension, 265, 567.

**difficilis**, comparison, 226.  
**diphthongs**, pronunciation, see Introduction.  
**direct object**, 16, 610.  
**diū**, comparison, 578.  
**domus**, declension, 568;  
 in expressions of place, 278, 634.  
**double questions**, 438.  
**dūcō**, conjugation, 588.  
**duo**, declension, 575.

**E**

**ē or ex**, place out of which, 76, 617.  
**ego**, declension, 580.  
**English Grammar**, 653-715.  
**English-Latin Letter**, 556.  
**eō**, conjugation, 594.  
**esse**, often omitted, 447<sup>2</sup>.  
**ex** with ablative instead of genitive of the whole, 260, 626.  
**exercitus**, declension, 566.  
**extent of space**, 286, 612.  
**exterus**, comparison, 577.

**F**

**facile**, comparison, 578.  
**facilis**, comparison, 576.  
**fearing**, verbs of, 353<sup>1</sup>.  
**feminine gender**, see Introduction.  
**ferō**, conjugation, 593.  
**filius**, vocative, 23, b.  
**fiō**, conjugation, 595.  
**flūmen**, declension, 565.  
**fortis**, declension, 571;  
 comparison, 576.  
**fortiter**, comparison, 578.  
**frāter**, declension, 565.

## References are to sections

**fruur**, followed by ablative, 375, 630.  
**future tense**, formation, 51, 181.  
**future perfect**, formation, 72, 135.

## G

**gender**, 667; rules for, see Introduction;  
 in first declension, 5;  
 in second declension, 22, 32;  
 in third declension, 90;  
 in fourth declension, 256;  
 in fifth declension, 264.  
**genitive case**,  
 of description or quality, 441, 600;  
 of definite measurement, 441, *a*, 601;  
 of the whole, 260, 599;  
 of possession, 27, 598.  
**gerund**, 517.  
**gerundive**, 518.  
 gerundive construction, 519;  
 takes dative of agent, 531, 609;  
 used with *ad* to express purpose, 522<sup>1</sup>;  
 used with *causa* to express purpose, 522<sup>4</sup>;  
 used with *sum* to form passive periphrastic, 528;  
 with *sum* implies duty or necessity, 528.

## H

**hic**, declension, 582.  
**historical tenses**, 363.  
**hostis**, declension, 565;  
 distinguished from *inimicus*, 267.

## I

**i**, takes place of *j*, Introduction.  
**i-stems**, 118, 119.  
**idem**, declension, 582.  
**idoneus**, comparison, 577.  
**ignis**, declension, 565.  
**ille**, declension, 582.  
**imperative**, 494, 692.  
**imperfect**, distinguished from perfect, 50<sup>1</sup>, 73<sup>1</sup>.  
**imperō**, governs dative and subjunctive, 361.  
**impersonal verbs**, 534.  
**in**, with accusative and ablative, 334.  
**indefinite pronouns**, 444.  
**indirect discourse**, 303, 304, 402, 554, 652.  
**indirect object**, 56, 602.  
**indirect question**, 402, 652.  
**inferus**, comparison, 577.  
**infinitives**, 693, 694;  
 formation, 302;  
 complementary, 176, 649;  
 used as subject, 476<sup>1</sup>;  
 in indirect discourse, 303, 554, 652;  
 takes accusative as subject, 307, 613;  
 time denoted by, 304, 648;  
 in compounds *esse* omitted, 447<sup>2</sup>;  
 not used to express purpose, 353.  
**inflection**, 673, 685.  
**inimicus**, distinguished from *hostis*, 267.  
**instrumental ablative**, 65, 616.  
**intensive pronoun**, 432.  
**interior**, comparison, 577.



*References are to sections*

interjections, 709.  
 interrogative pronouns, 399.  
 iō verbs of the third conjugation, 320, 590.  
 ipse, declension, 582.  
 irregular adjectives, comparison, 225, 226, 234, 235, 236, 237, 577.  
 irregular verbs, *sum*, 591.  
     *possum, eō, ferō, fiō, volō, nōlō, mālō*, 591-595.  
 is, declension, 582;  
     used as pronoun, 406.  
 iste, declension, 582.  
 iubeō, governs infinitive, 433.  
 iūdex, declension, 99.  
 iuvenis, comparison, 577.

## J

j, supplied by i, see Introduction.

## L

lātē, comparison, 578.  
 Latin Phrases, 560.  
 Latin in Science, 557.  
 Latin words in the Constitution, 559.  
 Latin Quotations, 562.  
 Latin Songs, pages 215-218.  
 length of syllables, Introduction.  
 length of vowels, Introduction.  
 liber } English derivatives, 100.  
 liberō }  
 locative case, 278.  
 locus, gender, 267.  
 long vowels, see Introduction.  
 longior, declension, 217.

## M

magis, used in comparison, 237.  
 magnopere, comparison, 578.

magnus, comparison, 577;  
     declension, 37.  
 male, comparison, 578.  
 mālō, conjugation, 592.  
 malus, comparison, 577.  
 manner, ablative of, 114, 619.  
 mare, declension, 565.  
 masculine gender, see Introduction.  
 means, ablative of, 65, 616.  
 melior, declension, 573.  
 meus, 415.  
 mile, how expressed, 283, *a*.  
 miles, declension, 565.  
 mille, how used, 283.  
 miser, declension, 60;  
     comparison, 576.  
 miserē, comparison, 578.  
 moneō, 587.  
 multus, comparison, 577.

## N

nē, introducing negative clause  
     of purpose, 353;  
     introducing negative com-  
     mands, 348, 496;  
     after verbs of fearing, 353<sup>1</sup>.  
 ne, enclitic, 20.  
 neuter gender, see Introduction.  
 nōlō, conjugation, 592.  
 nominative case, 670;  
     subject of finite verb, 15, 596;  
     of pronouns expressed only  
     for emphasis, 412<sup>1</sup>;  
     predicate nominative, 28, 597,  
     712.  
 nōnne, 68.  
 nōs, declension, 580.  
 noster, formation and declen-  
     sion, 415, *a*.

*References are to sections*

- nouns**, 653-658 ;  
 first declension, 5, 563 ;  
 second declension, 22, 32, 564 ;  
 third declension, 90, 99, 106, 118, 565.  
 fourth declension, 256, 566 ;  
 fifth declension, 264, 567 ;  
 compound nouns, 266 ;  
 parsing, 94.  
**num**, 68.  
**number**, 668.  
**numerals**, list of, 579 ;  
 indeclinable, 326, *a*.
- O**
- object**, direct, 16, 610, 672, 711 ;  
 indirect, 56, 602.  
**Oral Exercises**, 21, 31, 59, 69, 83, 98, 105, 117, 125, 143, 166, 191, 198, 207, 224, 233, 272, 289, 295, 312, 319, 325, 351, 358, 369, 378, 386, 398, 405, 414, 422, 430.  
**ordinals**, list of, 579.
- P**
- pāreō**, governs dative, 499.  
**parsing**, nouns, 94 ;  
 verbs, 188.  
**participles**, 455, 702 ;  
 agreement, 456 ;  
 declension, 456 ;  
 time denoted, 457 ;  
 how translated, 456, *a* ;  
 future, with *sum* to form active periphrastic, 527 ;  
 in deponent verbs, 370, *a*.  
**partitive genitive**, 260<sup>1</sup>.  
**parum**, comparison, 578.  
**parvus**, comparison, 577.  
**passive**, compound forms, 135.  
**penult**, when accented, see Introduction.  
**perfect**, distinguished from imperfect, 50<sup>1</sup>, 73<sup>2</sup>.  
**periphrastic conjugations**, 527, 528.  
**personal endings**, 11, 71, 132.  
**personal pronouns**, 406, 660 ;  
 supplied by *is*, 406.  
**petō**, governs accusative and ablative, 439.  
**phrases**, Latin, 560.  
**place**, whence, where, whither, 76 ;  
 with names of towns, etc., 278.  
**portō**, conjugation, 586.  
**possession**, genitive of, 27, 598.  
**possessive pronouns**, 415.  
**possessor**, dative of, 514, 608.  
**possum**, composition, 173 ;  
 conjugation, 591.  
**posterus**, comparison, 577.  
**postquam**, in temporal clauses, 473<sup>1</sup>.  
**potēns**, declension, 572.  
**potior**, governs ablative, 375, 630.  
**predicate nominative**, 28, 597, 712.  
**prepositions**, 707 ; govern accusative, 333, 614 ; govern ablative, 332, 628.  
**principal parts of verbs**, 45 ;  
 why so called, 45.  
**principal tenses**, 363.  
**prior**, comparison, 577.  
**pronouns**, personal, 406, 660 ;  
 order, 412<sup>1</sup> ;

*References are to sections*

**pronouns**, reflexive, 407, 665;  
 possessive, 415;  
 agreement, 415, a;  
 gender, 418; used substantively, 420<sup>2</sup>; demonstrative, 431, 663; intensive, 432; interrogative, 399, 662; relative, 392, 395, 661; indefinite, 444, 664.  
**pronunciation**, see Introduction.  
**propior**, comparison, 577.  
**puer**, declension, 564.  
**pulcher**, declension, 61.  
**pulchrē**, comparison, 578.  
**purpose**, clauses of,  
     subjunctive with *ut* or *nē*, 353; 522, 1; 641;  
     subjunctive with *quī*, 396<sup>1</sup>, 522, 2;  
 gerundive construction with *ad*, 522, 3;  
 gerundive construction with *causā*, 522, 4;  
 expressed by the dative, 508–607;  
 not expressed by infinitive, 353.

**Q**

**quaerō**, governs accusative and ablative, 400.  
**quality**, genitive, 441, 600; ablative, 441, 631.  
**quam**, omitted after comparative, 221, 624;  
     when used, 221<sup>1</sup>.  
**quamquam**, with indicative, 473, 3.  
**quantity**, vowels and syllables, see Introduction.

**questions**, direct, 20; indirect, 402; double, 438.  
**quī**, declension, 583.  
**quī**, equivalent to *ut* and personal pronoun, 396<sup>1</sup>.  
**quis**, declension, 584.  
**quod**, in causal clauses, 473, 2.  
**quoniam**, in causal clauses, 473, 2.  
**quotations**, Latin, 562.

**R**

**Readings:**

Via Appia, 44;  
 Carolus et Poma, 89;  
 Equus Marci, 131;  
 Cincinnatus, 172;  
 Magnus Imperator, 212;  
 Cornelia et Ornamenta, 255;  
 Forum Romanum, 301;  
 Tarpeia, 346;  
 Nasica et Ennius, 391;  
 Fabulae Faciles, 454;  
 Domus Romana, 493;  
 Virgines Vestales, 539;  
 Caesar, pages 262–273.  
**reflexive pronouns**, 407, 665.  
**relative pronouns**, 392, 661.  
**rēs**, declension, 567.  
**result**, clauses of, 379, 642.  
**review**, Lessons 9, 14, 19, 24, 29, 35, 41, 47, 56, 61, 68, 69, 70, 71.  
     of cases, Lessons 68, 69.  
     of subjunctives, Lesson 70.

**S**

**semi-deponent verbs**, 511.  
**senex**, comparison, 577.  
**separation**, ablative of, 316, 627.  
**sequence of tenses**, 364.

*References are to sections*

- si**, introducing conditions, 478.  
**Sight Reading**, 88, 130, 171, 211, 254, 263, 300, 345, 390, 453, 492.  
**similis**, governing dative, 230; governing genitive, 230<sup>1</sup>.  
**Songs**, pages 215-218.  
**soror**, declension, 91.  
**space**, extent of, 286, 612.  
**specification**, ablative of, 204, 623.  
**State Mottoes**, 558.  
**stem**, of nouns, 118, *a*; of verbs, 46.  
**sub** with accusative and ablative, 334.  
**subject**, of finite verb, 15, 596; agreement of verb, 17, 636; of infinitive, 307, 613; not expressed, 11.  
**subjunctive**, translation, 347, *a*; in causal clauses, 471, 644; in circumstantial clauses, 470, 643; in concessive clauses, 492, 645; in conditional clauses, 480, 482, 646, 647; in purpose clauses, 353, 641; in result clauses, 379, 642; in temporal clauses, 470<sup>1</sup>; in indirect discourse, 554, 551, 652; in indirect questions, 402, 652; volitive, 348, 640.  
**sui**, declension, 581.  
**sum**, conjugation, 591.  
**superus**, comparison, 577.  
**suus**, formation and declension, 415.  
**syllables**, how many, how divided, quantity, see Introduction.  
**synopsis**, 686.
- T**
- temporal clauses**, 470<sup>1</sup>.  
**tenses**, 695-700; principal and historical, 363; sequence of, 364.  
**time**, when, 147, 621; duration of, 286, 612.  
**towns**, construction with names of, 278, 634.  
**trēs**, declension, 575.  
**tū**, declension, 580.  
**tuba**, declension, 563.  
**tuus**, formation and declension, 415.
- U**
- ubi**, in temporal clauses, 473, 1.  
**ulterior**, comparison, 577.  
**ūnus**, declension, 574.  
**urbs**, declension, 565.  
**ut**, introducing clauses of purpose, 353, 641; of result, 379, 642; of negative result (*ut nōn*), 379, 642; with verbs of fearing, 353<sup>1</sup>, 641; translated "as" when followed by the indicative, see Vocabulary.  
**ūtor**, governs ablative, 375, 630.  
**utrum . . . an**, 438.
- V**
- vēlōx**, comparison, 576.  
**verbs**, 679-702; agreement with subject, 17, 636;

*References are to sections*

- verbs, personal endings, 11, 71, 132;**  
 first conjugation, 586;  
 second conjugation, 587;  
 third conjugation, 588;  
 fourth conjugation, 589;  
 conjugations distinguished, 107;  
 stems, how found, 47, 70, 135;  
 deponents, 370;  
     why so called, 370<sup>1</sup>;  
 how distinguished, 370;  
 compounded with preps., 419, 606;  
 impersonal, 534, 682;  
 parsing, 188;
- irregular, see *sum, possum, eō, ferō, fūd, volō, nōlō, mālō.*  
**vester**, formation and declension, 415.  
**vir**, declension, 564.  
**vis**, declension, 568.  
**Vocabularies**, Latin-English, page 295;  
     English-Latin, page 299.  
**vocative case**, 2, 6, *a*, 633; form of, 23, *a* and *b*.  
**volitive subjunctive**, 348, 640.  
**volō**, conjugation, 592.  
**vowels**, quantity, long, short, see Introduction.

---

## Latin Composition

---

By BERNARD M. ALLEN and JOHN L. PHILLIPS, of Phillips Academy, Andover. 16mo, cloth, 304 pages. Price, \$1.00. Bound separately:

Part I, 16mo, cloth, 156 pages. Price, 60 cents.

Parts II-III, 16mo, cloth, 188 pages. Price, 60 cents.

**T**HIS book combines the best features of manuals based on the text read with the strong points of those based on systematic study of the grammar.

Part I is based on the first four books of Cæsar. Here the most common constructions are taken up in the order of the frequency with which they occur in Cæsar. This was determined by a tabulation of all the constructions occurring in Cæsar. The arrangement makes it possible to drill thoroughly on constructions which are really to be of use. These common constructions are taken up four times—once in connection with Book I, once in connection with Books I-II, and twice in reviews based on Book IV. The lessons are so arranged that one may begin either with Book I or with Book II.

Part II consists of lessons based on the four orations against Catiline. Here the syntax is taken up in the regular order of the Latin grammars. These lessons are followed by exercises based on Pompey's Command and on Archias, in which this same systematic presentation is given, these exercises being for the benefit of those teachers who wish to make a special study of Pompey's Command and of Archias. All these exercises are followed by additional lessons on Pompey's Command and Archias, which constitute a review and which furnish practice in translating connected passages.

Part III consists of additional exercises based on the Defence of Milo for those who wish to continue Latin Composition beyond the Cæsar and Cicero years. These exercises furnish a review of constructions and continue the pupils' practice in the writing of connected discourse.

The points of syntax are re-stated in simple language by the authors. Every third lesson is a review, furnishing practice in translating connected passages.

## LATIN

### Cæsar's Gallic War

Revised Edition, with Indicated Quantities, Notes, Vocabulary, Illustrations, and Maps. Edited by Professor F. W. KELSEY, University of Michigan. 12mo, half leather, 584 pages. Price, \$1.25.

**T**HIS is without question the handsomest and best equipped edition of the Gallic War now on the market. Among its many features may be mentioned :—

1. The colored plates illustrating the art of war in Cæsar's time, and the colored maps of every campaign.
2. The text with its large type and marked quantities.
3. The tables of idioms and phrases, and of the English pronunciation of Latin proper names.
4. The full introduction, describing Cæsar as Statesman, General, and Man of Letters, and explaining the art of war in his time.
5. The notes, which aim less to display erudition than to give the young pupil assistance at the difficult passages. Book II as well as Book I is annotated for beginners.
6. The mechanical excellence in paper, press-work, and binding.

References are to the latest editions of all the standard grammars.

Two editions of the text only have been prepared, one with and one without marked quantities. Either of these is furnished free when ordered in connection with the complete book.

### First Latin Book

Designed as a Manual of Progressive Exercises and Systematic Drill in the Elements of Latin, and Introductory to Cæsar's Commentaries on the Gallic War. By D. Y. COMSTOCK, of the B. M. C. Durfee High School, Fall River, Mass. 12mo, cloth, 320 pages. Price, \$1.00.

### Topical Outline of Latin Literature

By Professor FRANCIS W. KELSEY, University of Michigan. 12mo, paper, 51 pages. Price, 40 cents.

## **A Junior Latin Book**

With Notes, Exercises, and Vocabulary, by Professors JOHN C. ROLFE, University of Pennsylvania, and WALTER DENNISON, Swarthmore College. Revised edition. 12mo, half leather, 566 pages. Price, \$1.25.

**T**HIS book will appeal to teachers who believe in reading a book of selections in the second year instead of the ordinary course in Cæsar.

The Contents are:—

Three Pages of Fables.

Selections based on Eutropius, covering Roman History to the time of Cicero.

Viri Romæ—The Lives of Cæsar, Cicero, and Augustus.

Nepos—The Lives of Miltiades, Themistocles, Pausanias, Epaminondas, Hamilcar, Hannibal, and Cato.

Cæsar's Gallic War, Books I and II.

Cæsar's Civil War, Selections from Books I, II, III.

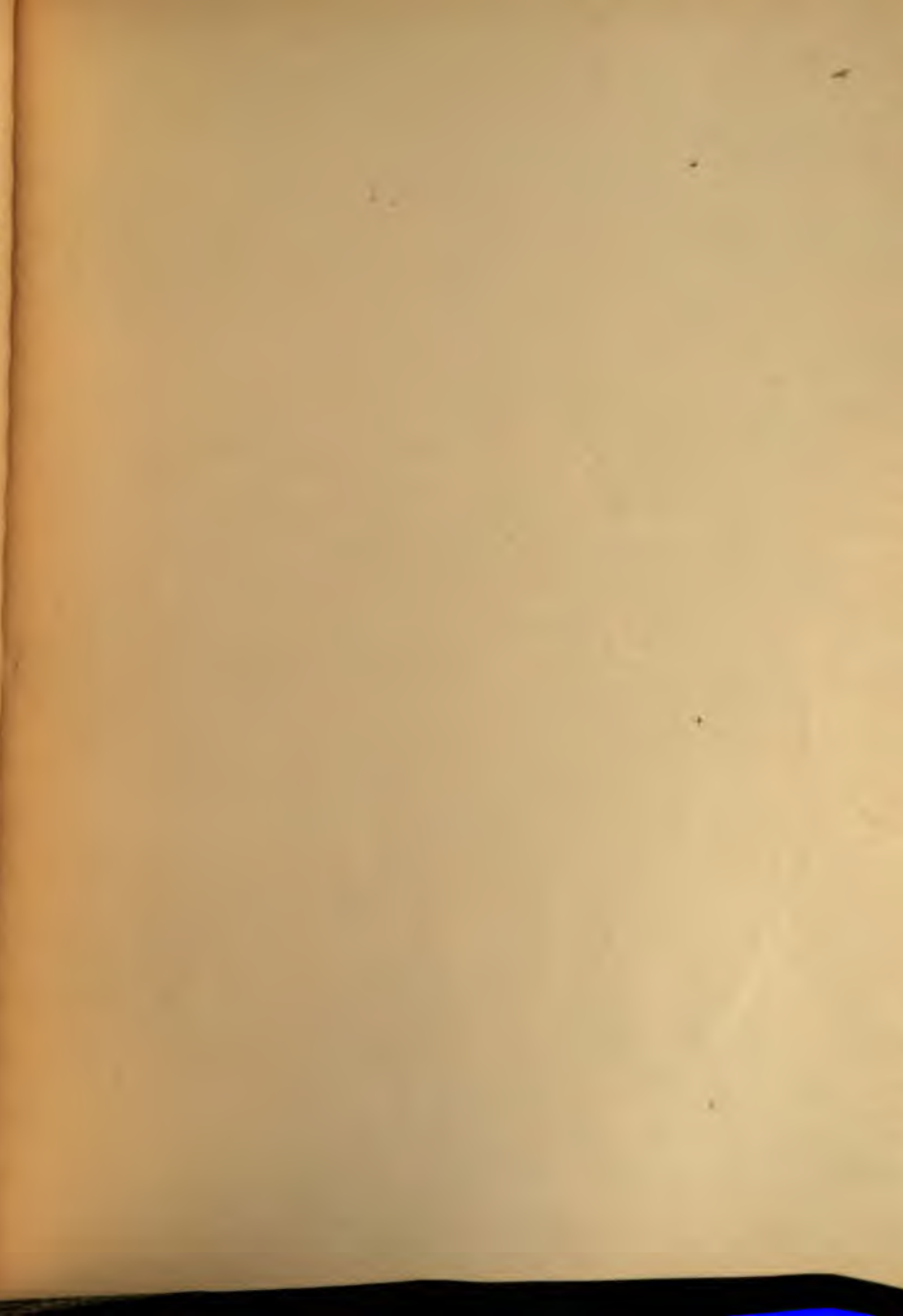
The book contains exercises in Latin Composition based on the first and second books of Cæsar, also an English-Latin vocabulary, and maps of Ancient Italy, Rome and Environs, Greece and the Ægean Sea, Asia Minor, Gaul, the Roman Empire, and six colored maps and plans to illustrate the battles of Cæsar. There are also six full-page colored plates, giving a vivid and accurate picture of the costumes, equipment, weapons, and standards of the Roman army.

## **Gradatim**

An Easy Latin Translation Book for Beginners. By H. R. HEATLEY and H. N. KINGDON. Revised by J. W. SCUDDER, Latin Master in the Albany Academy. 16mo, cloth, 230 pages. Price, 50 cents.

**G**RADATIM offers an excellent selection of easy reading-matter which will serve to arouse the interest of the pupil in his early study of Latin. It may be used either for lessons to be regularly prepared by classes just beginning the subject, or for sight-reading by more advanced students. The special excellence of Gradatim lies in the intrinsic interest of the stories.







This book should be returned to the Library on or before the last date stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred by retaining it beyond the specified time.

Please return promptly.

~~DUE DEC -1 '36~~

~~DUE NOV 15 '37~~

~~DUE FEB 24 '41~~

